I hereby give notice that an ordinary meeting of the Waitematā Local Board will be held on:

**Date:** Tuesday, 20 August 2019  
**Time:** 2:00pm  
**Meeting Room:** Waitematā Local Board Office  
**Venue:** Ground Floor  
52 Swanson Street  
Auckland

---

**Waitematā Local Board**  
**OPEN AGENDA**

---

**MEMBERSHIP**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chair</td>
<td>Pippa Coom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deputy Chair</td>
<td>Shale Chambers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Members</td>
<td>Adriana Avendaño Christie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Richard Northey, ONZM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Denise Roche</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vernon Tava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rob Thomas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Quorum 4 members)

---

Liz Clemm  
Democracy Advisor – Waitematā Local Board

15 August 2019

Contact Telephone: (09) 353 9654  
Email liz.clemm@aucklandcouncil.govt.nz  
Website: www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz

---

**Note:** The reports contained within this agenda are for consideration and should not be construed as Council policy unless and until adopted. Should Members require further information relating to any reports, please contact the relevant manager, Chairperson or Deputy Chairperson.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>TABLE OF CONTENTS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Welcome</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Apologies</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Declaration of Interest</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Confirmation of Minutes</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Leave of Absence</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Petitions</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.1 Petition from Western Springs College re Meola Road crossing</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Deputations</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.1 Judges Bay Beach – Sand Top-up and other maintenance matters</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.2 Proposal for an additional targeted rate for Newmarket</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.3 An update on progress with the City Fringe Identity Web App project</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.4 To discuss opportunities to support the K'Road Chronicle, a not-for-profit organisation</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.5 Management of feral geese at Western Springs Te Wai Ōrea Lakeside Park</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Public Forum</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.1 Gael Baldock regarding Park Management</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.2 Boopsie Maran regarding the process for street closures</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Extraordinary Business</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Councillor's report</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Proposal to start the Waitematā Local Board meeting to be held on 17 September 2019 at the earlier time of 1.00pm</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Development Plan</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Auckland Transport August 2019 Update</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Auckland Film Protocol consultation feedback and recommended changes</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Options to investigate improving west Waitematā community facilities</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>New community lease to Basement Theatre Trust at 313 Queen Street</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Temporary Alcohol Ban Request for Western Springs Stadium</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>ATEED six-monthly report to the Waitematā Local Board</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Auckland Council's Year End and Quarterly Performance Report:</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Local Board Annual Report 2018/2019</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback on Productivity Commission</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>inquiry into local government funding and financing draft report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback on Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board feedback on the proposed Auckland Council Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback to Auckland Council’s submission on the Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities Bill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback to Auckland Council’s submission on proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Chair’s Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Board member reports</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Governance Forward Work Calendar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board Workshop Records</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Consideration of Extraordinary Items</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Procedural Motion to Exclude the Public</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 20 | Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitematā Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019  
B. Waitematā Financial Performance Report |
| 21 | Local Board Annual Report 2018/2019  
A. Draft 2018/2019 Waitematā Local Board Annual Report |
1 Welcome

2 Apologies

At the close of the agenda no apologies had been received.

3 Declaration of Interest

Members are reminded of the need to be vigilant to stand aside from decision making when a conflict arises between their role as a member and any private or other external interest they might have.

4 Confirmation of Minutes

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) confirm the ordinary minutes of its meeting, held on Tuesday, 16 July 2019, as true and correct.

5 Leave of Absence

At the close of the agenda no requests for leave of absence had been received.

6 Acknowledgements

At the close of the agenda no requests for acknowledgements had been received.

7 Petitions

7.1 Petition from Western Springs College re Meola Road crossing

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report

1. To present a petition requesting a pedestrian crossing on Meola Road by the MOTAT bus stop (Stop 1051) to ensure students can be safe when crossing the busy road.

2. The petition can be accessed online at this link https://www.toko.org.nz/petitions/make-meola-road-safe-new-zebra-crossing.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) thank Harrison Cooke of Western Springs School Travel-wise for the presentation and attendance at the meeting.
8 Deputations

Standing Order 7.7 provides for deputations. Those applying for deputations are required to give seven working days notice of subject matter and applications are approved by the Chairperson of the Waitematā Local Board. This means that details relating to deputations can be included in the published agenda. Total speaking time per deputation is ten minutes or as resolved by the meeting.

8.1 Judges Bay Beach – Sand Top-up and other maintenance matters

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To propose re-sanding of Judges Bay.
2. To present additional items that require maintenance.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) thank Luke Niue and Mike Blackburn of Parnell Community Committee Inc., for the presentation and attendance at the business meeting.

Attachments
A Presentation to Judges Bay Beach - Sand Top-up ................................................. 351

8.2 Proposal for an additional targeted rate for Newmarket

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. The Newmarket Business Association Board have approved in principle the further exploration of Newmarket implementing an additional targeted rate with the primary purpose of the completion of the Waitematā Local Board’s Newmarket Laneways Plan.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) thank Mark Knoff-Thomas of Newmarket Business Association for the presentation and attendance at the business meeting.

8.3 An update on progress with the City Fringe Identity Web App project

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To provide an update on progress of the City Fringe Identity Web App project.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) thank Cheryl Adamson of Parnell Business Association and Mark Knoff-Thomas of Newmarket Business Association, for the presentation and attendance at the business meeting.
8.4 To discuss opportunities to support the K’Road Chronicle, a not-for-profit organisation

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To introduce the K’Road Chronical publication and the K’Rd Chronicles series.
2. To discuss opportunities for the local board to support this organisation.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation
That the Waitematā Local Board:
  a) thank Six for the presentation and attendance at the business meeting.

8.5 Management of feral geese at Western Springs Te Wai Ōrea Lakeside Park

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To present a recommendation that Auckland Council ban the feeding of birds at Western Springs, both on the grass and in the water.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation
That the Waitematā Local Board:
  a) thank Ian McLean of Birds New Zealand (Auckland Regional Representative) for the presentation and attendance at the business meeting.

9 Public Forum
A period of time (approximately 30 minutes) is set aside for members of the public to address the meeting on matters within its delegated authority. A maximum of 3 minutes per item is allowed, following which there may be questions from members.

9.1 Gael Baldock regarding Park Management

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To discuss park management.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:
  a) thank Gael Baldock for the presentation and attendance at the meeting.
9.2 Boopsie Maran regarding the process for street closures

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To provide an update on discussions with New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA), Auckland Transport (AT), and Auckland Council (AC) regarding the process for street closures for community events.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:
a) thank Boopsie Maran for the presentation and attendance at the meeting.

10 Extraordinary Business

Section 46A(7) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 (as amended) states:

"An item that is not on the agenda for a meeting may be dealt with at that meeting if-

(a) The local authority by resolution so decides; and

(b) The presiding member explains at the meeting, at a time when it is open to the public,-

(i) The reason why the item is not on the agenda; and

(ii) The reason why the discussion of the item cannot be delayed until a subsequent meeting."

Section 46A(7A) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 (as amended) states:

"Where an item is not on the agenda for a meeting,-

(a) That item may be discussed at that meeting if-

(i) That item is a minor matter relating to the general business of the local authority; and

(ii) the presiding member explains at the beginning of the meeting, at a time when it is open to the public, that the item will be discussed at the meeting; but

(b) no resolution, decision or recommendation may be made in respect of that item except to refer that item to a subsequent meeting of the local authority for further discussion."
Councillor's report

File No.: CP2018/18673

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report

1. To provide Waitematā and Gulf Ward Councillor Mike Lee with an opportunity to update the Waitematā Local Board on regional issues.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) receive the verbal update from the Waitematā and Gulf Ward Councillor, Mike Lee.

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

There are no attachments for this report.

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Mike Lee - Waitematā and Gulf Ward Councillor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Proposal to start the Waitematā Local Board meeting to be held on 17 September 2019 at the earlier time of 1.00pm

File No.: CP2019/14516

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To seek approval to start the 17 September 2019 Waitematā Local Board meeting at the earlier time of 1.00pm instead of the usual business meeting start time of 2.00pm.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. At its meeting on 22 November 2016 the Waitematā Local Board adopted the Waitematā Local Board Meeting Schedule for the 2016-2019 Triennium (WTM/2016/180 a)) and agreed to commence business meetings at 2.00pm (WTM/2016/180 b)).

Adoption of the Waitematā Local Board Meeting Schedule for the 2016-2019 Triennium

Resolution number WTM/2016/180

MOVED by Chairperson P Coom, seconded by Member R Northey:

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) adopt its meeting schedule for the period December 2016 – September 2019 as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>13 December</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board office, 52 Swanson Street, Auckland Central.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>21 February</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board office, 52 Swanson Street, Auckland Central.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 March</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 April</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16 May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 June</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18 July</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15 August</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 September</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17 October</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 November</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 December</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>20 February</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board office, 52 Swanson Street, Auckland Central.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 March</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17 April</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15 May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 June</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17 July</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 August</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18 September</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16 October</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 November</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 December</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>19 February</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 March</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16 April</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Waitematā Local Board
20 August 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21 May</td>
<td>Auckland Central.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 June</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 July</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 August</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) agree to commence business meetings at 2.00pm. Public forum and deputations will be scheduled in the early part of the business meeting, to enable the democratic process.

c) note that dates and times for meetings, public engagement and any hearings and deliberations for local board plans and local board agreements are yet to be finalised.

d) agree that the start time of 2.00pm for the business meeting is on a trial basis and subject to review by mid-2017.

CARRIED

3. The 17 September 2019 meeting will be the final meeting of the 2016-2019 triennium for the local board.

4. Starting the meeting one hour earlier would ensure adequate time is available to meet the anticipated increase in public forum attendance and provide an opportunity for local board members to provide valedictory speeches.

5. A public notice will be published confirming the date and time of the September business meeting and the Auckland Council website will be updated to reflect any change to the start time.

Ngā tūtohunga

Recommendation/s

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) approve the start time of 1.00pm for the Waitematā Local Board meeting to be held on 17 September 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga

Attachments

There are no attachments for this report.

Ngā kaihaina

Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Liz Clemm - Democracy Advisor - Waitematā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Development Plan
File No.: CP2019/00526

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report

1. To seek adoption of the draft Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Park Development Plan (August 2019).

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary

2. The Waitematā Local Board requested staff to prepare a development plan for Western Springs Lakeside in the financial year 2017-2018 work programme.

3. The direction for the plan was to provide a clear design framework to guide how Western Springs Lakeside and its interface with surrounding reserves and facilities should be improved over the short, medium and long term.

4. The development of the draft plan involved consultation with the Waitematā Local Board, mana whenua, stakeholders and council staff to set key themes and desired outcomes for the park. These outcomes have shaped the key objectives in the draft development plan which focuses on improving the existing values of the reserve rather than seeking significant change.

5. Public consultation was carried out in July and August 2018 and there was generally a high level of satisfaction with the way the plan aims to improve key service outcomes. These outcomes include water quality, connectivity, celebration of the site’s history, creating a ‘refuge away from the city’ and provision for events. Ecological and water quality improvements were identified as the highest priority outcomes desired by users.

6. The results from the survey and the final approved plan will help the local board align renewals, transport capital funds and local board budgets with outcomes that are needed and supported by the users of the park.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) adopt the draft Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Development Plan August 2019 (Attachment A to the agenda report)

b) utilise future renewals and LDI discretionary budgets to deliver outcomes identified in the Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Development Plan August 2019.

Horopaki
Context

7. Western Springs Lakeside is a popular 26 hectare destination park that is enjoyed by visitors from across the Auckland Region and beyond. It is highly valued as a site that provides for walking, refuge from the city, children's activities, events and a place where people can connect with nature.
8. The intent of the plan is to provide a clear design framework that will guide how Western Springs Lakeside and its interface with surrounding reserves and facilities will be improved over the short, medium and long-term.

Consultation

9. The draft plan was consulted on in two phases.

10. The first phase of pre-design consultation was undertaken with project partners to identify what was valued about the park and needed to be retained and what were the key issues and ambitions that would guide improvements to Western Springs Lakeside.

11. This has resulted in the plan focusing on the following vision objectives that look to improve existing values at the site without major change to the park’s current layout:
   - water quality
   - refuge
   - connectivity
   - events
   - interpretation of the site’s history.

12. The draft plan was reviewed by the Waitematā Local Board, mana whenua, stakeholders and council staff to ensure that improvements appropriately addressed key concerns and ambitions for Western Springs Lakeside. Feedback from this process included:
   - support for the plan, with only minor amendments suggested
   - enthusiasm for the water quality improvements.

13. In February 2018 the Waitematā Local Board approved the draft Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Development Plan for public consultation (resolution WTM/2018/12) which marked the second phase of consultation with the wider public and users of the park.

14. The consultation period ran from 30 July to 27 August 2018 and involved making the plan, plus questionnaire, available online. The process was widely advertised by:
   - presenting information on the local board’s website and Auckland Council’s ‘have your say’ page
   - notifying all relevant stakeholders
   - distributing 1300 flyers to local residents located beside the site
   - erecting signs on site
   - holding one ‘drop in day’ on site (18 August 2018).

15. People’s views were sought by means of a questionnaire, with 198 questionnaire responses received. Seven submissions were also submitted including those from Auckland Zoo, the Museum of Transport and Technology (MOTAT), the Friends of Mangawhau, St Lukes Environmental Protection Society (STEPS) and New Zealand Heritage.

16. The questionnaire asked people to rate the effectiveness of the design solutions identified in the plan with the following question and feedback given as an example.

   How would you rate the development plan’s proposals for providing and upgrading the facilities listed (bench seats, picnic tables, picnic toilets, pathways and walkways, signage, rubbish bins, bbq)?
17. The final question in the survey asked respondents to select the three most important high-level objectives identified in the plan. Responses were weighted, with the highest priority outcomes given an increased score. Total scores were then combined to provide the following priority rating:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Objective</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ecology</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water quality</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connectivity</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other park facilities</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signage</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Events</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18. Additional community feedback on the draft plan was presented at public forum during the March 2019 local board’s business meeting. In response the local board resolved the following (WTM/2019/26).

a) thank Wendy Gray for the presentation about the Western Springs Lakeside Development Plan and attendance at the meeting
b) refer the presentation to Parks, Sports and Recreation for consideration in finalising the Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Development Plan.

Tātaritanga me nga tohutohu
Analysis and advice

19. Feedback to the survey indicated that ecological and water quality improvements were regarded as high priority areas that future investment should focus on.

20. Improving connectivity, park assets (toilets and drinking fountains), the playground and interpretive signage were viewed as medium priorities.

21. Provision for events was considered the lowest priority.

22. There was a high level of satisfaction with how the plan aims to improve service outcomes such as water quality, connectivity, celebration of the site’s history and provision for events.

23. Comments via submissions were made by Auckland Zoo, Motat, the Friends of Maungawhau, STEPS and New Zealand Heritage. These included references to:

- a lack of focus on the volcanically formed lava rock forest and wetland area (STEPS / Friends of Maungawhau / Zoo)
- concern around intent to lower water levels which could negatively impact on the wetland ecology and impact on the Zoo’s ability to divert water at current consented levels
a considered approach is required to providing bird and eel feeding areas, particularly in the context that this action could have further significant detrimental impact on water quality (Zoo)

need for a wildlife management plan and restoration plan (Zoo)

need for wayfinding / design features on footpath connecting Zoo with bus stop on Great North and Motions Road to promote Zoo activities (Zoo).

24. These comments along with additional consultation feedback and submissions made at the local board’s March 2019 business meeting have resulted in the following changes / modifications being made to the plan:

- Greater recognition of, and protection for, the lava rock forest plus wetland area and additional references to a restoration plan focusing on emergent planting around the lake edge and the wetland.
- A greater focus on the site’s ecological importance both in a local and regional context.
- Recognition that planting undertaken in and around the lake edge, wetland, rock lava forest and pine stand (defined as ‘natural’ areas within the plan) will all be with native species. The majority of planting undertaken in the parkland and quarry areas will also be with native species but noting that in some instances, exotics will be used (e.g. beside the playground and Fukuoka Garden).
- Minor amendment to greenways route around the playground and extending playground footpath to Zoo kiosk.
- Reduction in extent of cherry tree stand beside the Fukuoka Gardens.
- Removal of the bird feeding platforms and design features that would accommodate and promote the feeding of eels from the ‘eel themed’ bridge.

25. The decision to remove the bird feeding platforms has been carefully considered. Bird feeding has historically been a popular activity enjoyed by many and the feeding platforms were a design feature that would have allowed visitors to feed birds out of the water and thereby limit negative impacts on water quality. However, feeding artificially raises the park’s bird population and results in the following outcomes that significantly impact on park amenity, recreation and ecological values:

- **An unhealthy bird population** - despite education and signage there remains a risk that the wrong kind of foods, including bread, are given to birds. A poor diet reduces body condition and makes the birds more vulnerable to parasites and diseases.
- **Changing natural behaviour** - feeding the birds changes their natural behaviours and makes them aggressive to both people and other birds.
- **Water and landscape pollution** - the unnaturally high level of bird droppings foul the footpath and grass areas and negatively impact water quality.
- **Reduction of native bird numbers** - at Western Springs Lakeside the birds that benefit from feeding are generally those that are already abundant and largely exotic (i.e. feral geese, mallard ducks, feral pigeon, Black Backed Gulls) at the expense of native species.

26. These negative impacts are considered to outweigh the amenity benefits associated with bird feeding and for this reason the feeding platforms have been removed from the plan.
Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views

27. The plan has been compiled with input from the following key departments/units:
   - Parks, Sports and Recreation
   - Community Facilities
   - Environmental Services
   - Healthy Waters.

28. The draft plan has also been shared with Auckland Transport, Regional Facilities Auckland and Watercare and it is considered that the plan generally aligns with aspirations and outcomes sought by the range of council departments working in, or close to, the Western Springs precinct area.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

29. Local board workshops, at which the development plan was discussed, were held in October 2018, February and August 2019. The following local board feedback was given on the draft plan:
   - develop a project implementation plan
   - align budgets with the Timeframes and Priorities table (page 87 of draft plan)
   - commit to planting native species
   - support an eco-themed playground
   - ensure popular play experiences provided at the current playground are carried over to the new playground (i.e. spinning rides that cater for a number of children at any one time)
   - reduce content of the plan
   - remove photos that don’t have relevance to site
   - remove the bird feeding platforms.

30. The draft plan has been amended accordingly and aligns with outcome 2 in the Waitematā Local Board Plan 2017, which aims to deliver ‘attractive and versatile public places that meet our communities’ needs’. The development plan provides a clear strategic framework to guide future development at Western Springs Te Wai Ōrea in order to successfully deliver on this local board objective.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

31. The plan was developed with input from mana whenua to address impacts on Māori and engagement was undertaken at key points throughout the plan’s preparation to enable mana whenua to shape and influence the content of the plan.
   - 30 August 2017: staff undertook pre-design engagement with mana whenua. Feedback included:
     - the water quality of the park needs to be looked at as the priority for the plan
     - mana whenua would like to provide input to the design of the playground when it is renewed - natural play options are preferred
     - given the declining condition of the pine trees north of the lake, consideration needs to be given to indigenous revegetation of the area
   - 25 October 2017: staff workshopped the water quality issues with mana whenua.
32. After each workshop, appropriate changes were made to the plan’s scope and drafting process to take account of impacts on Māori.

33. Waitematā Local Board representatives also met with Te Ākitai Waiohua (Adrian Lee Pettit) and Ngaati Whanaunga (Martin Te Moni) in July 2019 to review the draft plan. Mana whenua endorsed the water quality, plus other plan objectives and requested that:
   - events at the park are ‘zero waste’ based
   - council continues to work towards wider water catchment improvements
   - references to Māori history are consolidated on page 30 of the plan
   - a series of cultural indicators be allowed for within the delivery of some of the plan outcomes, particularly those related to water quality.

### Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea

#### Financial implications

34. To date budget has only been allocated to the renewal of the playground and a draft lakeside and wetland restoration plan.

35. All other projects are currently unfunded but will be delivered through a combination of renewals, discretionary LDI capex/opex and with partners such as MOTAT.

36. Community Facilities and Community Services have worked on the programming of all projects by splitting them into short (1-3yrs), medium (4-6yrs) and long term (7-10yrs) priorities as set out on page 87 of the draft plan.

### Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga

#### Risks and mitigations

37. The main risks that apply to the plan and associated projects are that:
   - the content of the draft plan does not align with wider public desires
   - the proposed lowering of the lake water levels to allow for emergent lakeside planting has a negative impact on the quality of the wetland area
   - that there are insufficient funds to deliver all aspects of the plan.

38. Given the level of public consultation undertaken, the likelihood of the draft plan failing to align with wider public desires is considered low.

39. Thorough investigation work regarding suitable lake water levels will ensure the quality of the wetland is not threatened by any future works. While the optimal lake level for establishing vigorous emergent planting, and at the same time protecting wetland ecology, has yet to be quantified, the level changes will be minor rather than major.

40. Because of the aspirational nature of the plan, it’s possible that sufficient funds are not available to deliver all the identified outcomes in the ten-year time-frame anticipated. However, it is considered preferable to extend the delivery period rather than trim some aspects of the plan.

### Ngā koringa ā-muri

#### Next steps

41. Once the development plan is adopted by the Waitematā Local Board, it is intended that funding will be allocated to projects as per the Timeframes and Priorities table (p 87 of the plan) over a ten-year time frame.
### Ngā tāpirihanga

**Attachments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea Park development plan <em>(Under Separate Cover)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ngā kaihaina

**Signatories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David Barker - Parks &amp; Places Team Leader</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hayley Dauben - Parks &amp; Places Specialist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authorisers</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mace Ward - General Manager Parks, Sports and Recreation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To provide an update to the Waitematā Local Board on transport related matters in their area including the Local Board Transport Capital Fund (LBTCF) and to seek direction on projects which could be funded by the local board’s Community Safety Fund.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. This report covers:
   - A summary of Auckland Transport projects and operations in the local board area.
   - A summary of the board’s Transport Capital Fund and Community Safety Fund.
   - A summary of general information items sent to the board.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) receive the Auckland Transport August 2019 report.

b) approve the allocation of $615,000 from the Community Safety Fund for the delivery of the project “Safe Schools Toolbox - Newton Central School.”

c) approve the allocation of $300,000 from the Community Safety Fund for the delivery of a pedestrian Crossings on West End Road / Fife Street by the bus stops next to the Westend tennis club.

d) subject to confirmation by the Domain Committee, approve the allocation of $75,000 from the Community Safety Fund for formalising the pedestrian crossings on Lower Domain Drive at Lovers Lane and at Domain Drive.

e) approve the allocation of $260,000 from the Community Safety Fund for the delivery of a pedestrian crossing outside ACG Campus on Davis Cres to Olympic Reserve.

f) approve the allocation of $200,000 from the Community Safety Fund for the delivery of improvements on Hopetoun Street.

g) agree that any funds underspent on the Community Safety Fund be allocated as additional funds to the project “Safe Schools Toolbox - Newton Central School.”

h) approve the allocation of $100,000 from the Local Board Transport Capital Fund as a contribution to the MOTAT 2 project (connection between Motions Road and Meola Road) for additional improvements such as planting or lighting.

i) approve the allocation of $200,000 from the Local Board Transport Capital Fund as additional funding to fully fund the Motion Road cycleway connection to a total of $690,000, which will complete the greenway connection from Meola Road to Great North Road as per the local boards Greenways Plan.

j) approve the allocation of $50,000 from the Local Board Transport Capital Fund towards the Newmarket Wayfinding and Signage Enhancements.

k) approve the allocation of $80,000 from the Local Board Transport Capital Fund towards a Wayfinding Signage Project that identifies and delivers wayfinding improvements across the Waitematā Local Board area.
Horopaki

Context

3. AT is responsible for all of Auckland’s transport services, excluding state highways. As set out in our Local Board Engagement Plan, we report on a monthly basis to local boards. This monthly reporting commitment acknowledges the important engagement role local boards play within the governance of Auckland on behalf of their local communities.

4. This report updates the Waitematā Local Board on Auckland Transport (AT) projects and operations in the local board area, it updates the local board on their advocacy and consultations and includes information on the status of the Local Board Transport Capital Fund and Community Safety Fund.

5. The Local Board Transport Capital Fund is a capital budget provided to all local boards by Auckland Council and delivered by Auckland Transport. Local boards can use this fund to deliver transport infrastructure projects that they believe are important but are not part of Auckland Transport’s work programme.

The Community Safety Fund is a capital budget established by Auckland Transport for use by local boards to fund local road safety initiatives. The purpose of this fund is to allow elected members to address long-standing local road safety issues that are not regional priorities and are therefore not being addressed by the Auckland Transport programme.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu

Analysis and advice

Auckland Transport projects and operations in the local board area

6. The table below has a general summary of projects and activities of interest to the board with their current status. Please note that all timings are indicative and are subject to change:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Update</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Great North Rd (Previously route 4 of Waitematā Safe Routes)</td>
<td>The business case and design process are being developed. The Connected Communities Team intend to re-engage with the Local Board in February 2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook Street &amp; Union Street</td>
<td>The Project team is unable to secure any funding for this project at this stage. This project cannot be prioritised for delivery under AT’s Road Safety Community programme, which is focused on high risk locations. This project will be on hold until funding is identified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parnell cycleway – proposed cycleway through Parnell</td>
<td>AT will soon be organising a fourth community liaison group meeting to provide a project update to stakeholders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wellesley Street Bus Improvement Project (formerly Midtown bus route)</td>
<td>The project team has been asked to do further work on the emerging preferred design for the Wellesley Street bus improvements project. This work is still in progress. The outcome will be brought back to the Waitematā Local Board ahead of public consultation with an update of the timeline for delivery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Westhaven to City Cycleway - The purpose of the project is to deliver a commuter cycling facility linking Westhaven Drive with Quay Street. | The project budget has been approved for delivering the cycleway with some streetscape enhancements. Concept design commenced in June 2019. Public consultation is planned in Sept/ Oct 2019. We are developing two new design options on Market Pl and Customer St West:  
- Base cycleway design with some streetscape enhancement (updated from the scheme design been consulted in 2017)  
- Integrated cycleway and streetscape design (uni – directional cycleway). |
| Pt Chev to Westmere cycleway - A dedicated cycle route along Pt Chevalier Road and Meola Road ending near the Westmere Shops | The project is moving into detailed design and once the engagement with the CLG and Local Board’s is complete, the design will go out for consultation. It is hoped that the consultation will take place in 2019. The project team is scheduled to present to the local board in September. |
| Waitematā Safe Routes project, the two routes open for feedback are Route 1: Surrey Crescent to Garnet Road and Route 2: Richmond Road. | The public feedback report has been published. Regarding remedial works in West Lynn village, AT is collating the feedback on concept drawings to address the drainage and pedestrian crossing gradient issues. |
| Herne Bay cycling and walking improvements – proposed changes to encourage slower driving speeds and improve routes for people walking and cycling. | No update this month, previous update:  
The detailed design is progressing well. The team expect to present to the local board with an update on the design upon receiving the Road Safety Audit. |
| Victoria Street East-West cycleway - dedicated cycle route along Victoria Street West, from the Beaumont Street intersection to the Hobson Street intersection. | No update this month, previous update:  
The detailed design is progressing. The team presented to the local board at workshop on 2 July with an update on the design. |
| Federal Street Walking and Cycling Improvements (proposed for Federal Street linking Fanshawe Street to Victoria Street until the full Federal Street Upgrade occurs.) | No update this month, previous update:  
The report on public feedback into the project has been published on the AT website. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Update</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tamaki Drive cycle route (Quay Street to Ngapipi Bridge)</td>
<td>The project team, along with AT’s senior managers, are working with the Port in the hope that the project can proceed while we continue to work toward a resolution on Solent Street.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grafton Road – clearway</td>
<td>No update this month, previous update:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Georges Bay Rd - pedestrian crossing facility.</td>
<td>Delivery of the project has been moved to 2019/2020 financial year. We have also identified an opportunity to coordinate with maintenance renewal work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newmarket &amp; Remuera Residential Parking Zone - proposed permit scheme for residents and businesses</td>
<td>AT has surveyed some residential streets in these areas and is now commencing discussions with the relevant stakeholders, including the local boards, to come up with a final proposal to be consulted with residents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn &amp; Arch Hills parking scheme - proposed permit scheme for residents and businesses</td>
<td>The Residential Parking zones were implemented in December 2018. Feedback so far has been positive. In line with a resolution passed by the local board, we are re-assessing the parking situation in the remaining streets now the parking patterns have normalised. Occupancy surveys are expected to take place in August. A proposal will be developed for public engagement should the surveys show high occupancy levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parnell East Residential Parking Zone – project to install a residential parking zone and safety improvements on St Stephens Ave, Lichfield and Crescent Road.</td>
<td>Public consultation underway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wellesley St &amp; Sale Street – new intersection signals</td>
<td>No update this month, previous update:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grafton Road – midblock pedestrian signal outside of University of Auckland.</td>
<td>Consultation is likely to start late August 2019. We are aiming to build the project before University of Auckland semester one 2020 begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Princes St &amp; Eden Cr Intersection - upgrade including raised zebra crossings</td>
<td>No update this month, previous update:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We are expecting to start construction by late August or early September.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Karangahape Road Enhancements Project – streetscape upgrade

**Update**

Construction has begun, on the first section from Symonds Street past the cemetery to Upper Queen Street. The works include closing the left turn from Symonds on to Karangahape Road. The next section from Ponsonby Road to Howe Street will begin soon.

### Wynyard Quarter street and park upgrades – central construction package

**Update**

Work on Daldy Street continues, footpath and carriageway works are well advanced. Boardwalk and paving around pump station nearing completion. Tree planting will start during August.

Work has commenced on Gaunt Street. Gaunt Street will be reduced to a single lane and one way traffic movement from east to west towards the end of August. The project team has been working with businesses on Gaunt Street.

A memo will be provided to the board mid-August. The memo will include more detailed information about the detours and traffic movement, and an overview of communications activity being undertaken to keep people informed.

### Great North Road Shared path – shared path, new paired crossings at slip lanes and Western Springs Rd, shared path crossing with cycle lights, raised tables and kerb realignments.

**Update**

Construction is expected to be complete in August.

### Parnell Station – Installing ticket gates

**Update**

Complete.

### Downtown Infrastructure Improvement Programme

#### 7. This includes:

- Quay Street Strengthening
- Quay Street Enhancement
- Britomart East
- Lower Albert
- Downtown Ferry
- Waterfront Park
- Mooring dolphin

#### 8. As part of the Quay Street enhancements programme construction sites were established through early July on the Southern side of the footpath (lower Hobson to Lower Albert, Lower Albert to Lower Queen and lower Queen to Customs Street). The streetscape works on the southern side are expected to be complete early 2020 and will progress towards the northern side, targeting completion late 2020.
9. To accommodate these works, traffic lanes have shifted to the northern edge of Quay Street between Lower Hobson Street and Commerce Street. The shift has progressed smoothly with little impact on traffic flows. We will continue to monitor and manage traffic on an ongoing basis.

10. As part of this, the Quay Street bus stop 1346 was relocated temporarily 150m west to outside MSocial Hotel. Access to the bus stop is from the eastern side only. This affects services 95B, 95C, 95G, 97B, 97R, 97V. There is substantial use of wayfinding, ambassadors and traffic controllers to ensure commuters can locate the new bus stop with ease.

11. Preparatory works for the Seawall Strengthening on the northern side of Quay Street between Queens Wharf and Marsden Wharf were completed in early July.

12. The large piling rig has been installed on site and constructing a new Palisade Wall to strengthen the existing seawall between Queens Wharf and Marsden Wharf. The Palisade Wall piling began on 1 August with the first pile located just outside Captain Cook Wharf. Piling will progress east towards Marsden Wharf then move back to Captain Cook Wharf and progress west towards Queens Wharf. Different methodologies will be used at other locations along Quay Street (i.e. Jet Group piling at very eastern end of Quay Street), based on location, ground conditions and design.

13. Construction of the new raingardens as part of the Quay Street Enhancements is well underway. There will be sixteen rain gardens in total along the southern side of Quay Street, each will be approximately 8.5m long by 3m wide and 2m deep. The Gardens will be temporarily capped to allow for upcoming traffic shifts during ongoing streetscape works. New trees and the vacationing Pohutakawa will move into their new homes next year.

14. Work is also underway for the Ferry Basin Redevelopment on the western side of Queens Wharf. Two cranes have been installed on site and will install 253 new piles as part of the construction of the new breakwater wall and canopies. Piling began late July and will continue for approximately six months.

15. Maintenance underneath Pier 2 is on-going and will continue to late August.

16. Consent updates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project Consent</th>
<th>Consent Status</th>
<th>Next steps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ferry Basin Redevelopment - Stage 1</td>
<td>Approved</td>
<td>Commence construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queens Wharf Mooring Dolphin</td>
<td>Approved – appealed through the Environment Court</td>
<td>Mediation 6 Aug 2019, Hearing date still TBC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downtown Public Space – Stage 1</td>
<td>Lodged, notified</td>
<td>Submission period closed, Council hearing late Sep/early Oct 2019, decision expected early Nov 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quay St Enhancement</td>
<td>Approved</td>
<td>Commence construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quay St Strengthening - Princes Wharf</td>
<td>Approved</td>
<td>Commence construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quay St Strengthening - Ferry Basin</td>
<td>Approved</td>
<td>Commence construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quay St Strengthening - Ferry Building</td>
<td>Lodged, notified</td>
<td>Currently in notification period, Council hearing Oct 2019, decision expected late Nov 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quay St Strengthening - Queens to Marsden</td>
<td>Approved</td>
<td>Commence construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galway St Enhancement – central block</td>
<td>Lodged, non-notified</td>
<td>Non-notified resource consent– decision expected late-Aug 2019</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Traffic Control Committee resolutions
17. Please see Attachment A which outlines decisions made in the Waitematā Local Board area in June and July 2019. Auckland Transport's resolution and approval process ensures the most appropriate controls and restrictions are put in place and can be legally enforced.

Community Transport quarterly report
18. Please see Attachment B which outlines activities undertaken by the Community Transport team in schools in Waitematā Local Board area.

Local Board Transport Capital Fund
19. The allocation to the board is $3,073,725 in total for this electoral period. From this sum the board has approved:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project Name</th>
<th>Allocation</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additional funds for the Ponsonby Road pedestrian improvement project</td>
<td>$221,000</td>
<td>Complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streetscape enhancement incorporating tree planting on St Marys Road.</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
<td>Being delivered by Auckland Council arborists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenway connection through Cox's Bay Reserve to Wharf Road via Bayfield Park</td>
<td>$825,000</td>
<td>Being delivered by Community Facilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upgrading the footpath along the western side of Bourke Street, Newmarket</td>
<td>$18,500</td>
<td>Complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install two sets of bollards in St Patricks Square</td>
<td>$41,000</td>
<td>In delivery phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Springs Greenway Projects, Motions Road: Option 2 with the understanding that Waitematā Local Board will approach the Albert-Eden Local Board for the remaining $200,000 for the section in their Local Board area.</td>
<td>$490,000</td>
<td>Seeking full funding from Waitematā Local Board.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auckland Domain - connection from the Titoki Street carpark to Football Road footpath.</td>
<td>$198,275</td>
<td>Being delivered by Community Facilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auckland Domain - connection from the corner of the Winter Garden through to The Crescent.</td>
<td>$160,485</td>
<td>Being delivered by Community Facilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auckland Domain - connection from Centennial Path to Grafton Mews.</td>
<td>$88,484</td>
<td>Being delivered by Community Facilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auckland Domain - connection from Parnell Station to Lovers Lane.</td>
<td>$518,215</td>
<td>Being delivered by Community Facilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting the Victoria Park Greenway project</td>
<td>$76,800</td>
<td>Being delivered by Community Facilities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20. The local board currently has $430,966 uncommitted.

21. At a workshop with the Local Board on the 7 of August the following options for the allocation of the remaining funds was discussed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project name</th>
<th>Rough order of cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support for MOTAT 2</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional funding to fully fund Motion Road to $690,000</td>
<td>$200,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newmarket Wayfinding and Signage Enhancements</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wayfinding Signage Project</td>
<td>$80,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>$430,000</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22. This is on the basis that:

- The local board recognises that MOTAT is funded to build the connection between Motions Road and Meola Road however, the local board may wish to allocate $100,000 for additional improvement, such as additional planting or lighting.

- That the Albert-Eden Local Board was not able to contribute funding to the Motions Road greenway connection. If the local board wished to deliver this greenway the Waitematā Local Board will need to commit a further $200,000 to fully fund the connection to a total of $690,000. This will complete the greenway connection from Meola Road to Great North Road as per the local boards Greenways plan. Auckland Transport’s Parking Design team have advised that any parking removal required as part of the Motions Road project would be manageable within the proposed Precinct Parking Plan being developed by Regional Facilities and Auckland Transport.

- The commitment to the Newmarket Wayfinding and Signage Enhancements would potentially leverage significant funding from other parties.

- Auckland Transport has confirmed that there is a significant quantity of wayfinding improvements that could be made in the Waitematā Local Board area. Allocation of funding towards a general Wayfinding Signage Improvement project would include setting up a project which identifies and delivers these improvements.

- The Great North Road pedestrian crossing project would be best funded by the Albert-Eden Local Board.

23. Resolutions to this effect can be found in the recommendations of this report.

Community Safety Fund

24. Waitematā Local Board’s allocation is $1,450,216.

25. This list was presented for discussion at a workshop on the 4 June and confirmed with resolution number WTM/2019/115

26. Auckland Transport has developed the following rough order of cost:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project</th>
<th>Rough order of cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Safe Schools Toolbox - Newton Central School</td>
<td>$615,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedestrian Crossings - on West End Road / Fife St by the bus stops next to the Westend tennis club</td>
<td>$300,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedestrian crossings formalised on Lower Domain Drive at Lovers Lane and at Domain Drive</td>
<td>$75,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedestrian crossing at the entrance to the Domain across Park Road to give access to the Domain from Grafton and pedestrian prioritisation on the raised table on Domain Drive</td>
<td>Did not qualify for the fund this time due to other AT projects in this area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedestrian crossing outside ACG Campus on Davis Cres to Olympic Reserve</td>
<td>$260,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook Street Project - Area 5: Shared Path/Cycleway</td>
<td>Not meeting AT’s prioritisation for a joint project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hopetoun Street Improvements</td>
<td>$200,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27. The total rough cost for qualifying projects is $1,450,000.

28. Given that the local board’s agreed prioritised projects meet the value of the fund It is recommended that the local board approve these projects for delivery.
29. Auckland Transport recommends that if any of the projects are delivered under budget then the remaining funds could be reallocated to the Newton Central School project. This project can be easily expanded to accommodate any additional funding.

30. Resolutions to this effect can be found in the recommendations of this report.

**Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera**

**Council group impacts and views**

31. The impact of the information in this report is confined to Auckland Transport and does not impact on other parts of the Council group. Any engagement with other parts of the Council group will be carried out on an individual project basis.

**Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe**

**Local impacts and local board views**

32. The proposed decision of receiving the report has no local, sub-regional or regional impacts.

**Local Board Workshops**

33. Auckland Transport attended workshops on 6 August 2019 with information on the proposed Newmarket and Remuera residential parking zones, Newmarket Westfield development and a discussion of the local boards transport funds.

**General information items sent to the board:**

34. Please see below for a summary of items sent to the board for their information or feedback:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Date sent to Board</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outcome: Ronayne Street, Parnell - P5 Loading Zone</td>
<td>08/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update: Nelson St</td>
<td>08/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FYI: Parnell East Residential Parking Zone and safety improvements consultation</td>
<td>09/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update: Marmion Street- Footpath</td>
<td>10/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FYI: Downtown Programme Video - Caring for our pohutukawa</td>
<td>16/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FYI: Waitematā Safe Routes - public feedback report</td>
<td>16/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update: Karangahape Road Enhancements project starting Monday</td>
<td>25/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consultation: Churton Street - Road Marking Changes</td>
<td>30/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FYI: Quay Street Changes - Campaign Informer</td>
<td>30/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FYI: Parnell - ticket gates opening</td>
<td>31/07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feedback: Beaumont Road bus stop relocation</td>
<td>02/08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori**

**Māori impact statement**

35. The proposed decision of receiving the report has no impacts or opportunities for Māori. Any engagement with Māori, or consideration of impacts and opportunities, will be carried out on an individual project basis.

**Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea**

**Financial implications**

36. The proposed decision of receiving this report has financial implications as outlined in the resolutions, analysis and advice.

**Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga**

**Risks and mitigations**

37. The proposed decision of receiving the report has no risks
Ngā koringa ā-muri

Next steps
38. Auckland Transport will provide another update report to the local board next month.

Ngā tāpirihanga

Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Traffic Control Committee resolutions June/July 2019</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Activities undertaken by the Community Transport team in schools in Waitematā Local Board area</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina

Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Ben Halliwell - Elected Member Relationship Manager</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Jonathan Anyon - Team Leader Elected Member Relationship Managers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### June 2019 - Traffic Control Committee Decisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local Board</th>
<th>Street Name</th>
<th>Suburb</th>
<th>Type of Report</th>
<th>Nature Of Restriction</th>
<th>Committee Decision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Parnell Road / Broadway / Domain Drive / Ayr Street / Birdwood Crescent / George Street / Sarawia Street / Maunsell Road / Cowie Street / Claybrook Road / Cathedral Place</td>
<td>Newmarket</td>
<td>Amended Permanent Traffic and Parking changes</td>
<td>Lane Arrow Markings, Bus Lane, Ambulance Lane, Cycle Lane, No Stopping At All Times, Clearway, Time-Restricted parking, Bus Stop, Bus Shelter, Traffic Island, Pedestrian Signal, Traffic Signal, Stop control, Give-Way control, Flush Median, Keep Clear zone</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Queens Wharf</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, Car Share parking, Time-Restricted parking, Pick-Up/Drop-Off parking, Mobility parking, Small PSV parking, Loading Zone</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Wolfe Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Works)</td>
<td>Lane Arrow Markings, No Stopping At All Times, Mobility parking, Prohibited Right Turn, Give-Way control</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Federal Street / Fanshawe Street / Wolfe Street / Wyndham Street / Kingston Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Amended Permanent Traffic and Parking changes</td>
<td>One-Way Road, Contra-Flow Cycle Lane, No Stopping At All Times, Cycle Path, Loading Zone, Car Share parking, Prison Escort Vehicle parking, Police Vehicle parking, Bicycle parking, Mobility parking, Traffic Island, Pedestrian Crossing, Stop control, Sharrow markings, Road Markings for Speed Management and Guiding Pedestrians, Shared Zone, Delineators, No Stopping At All Times, P30 parking, Loading Zone, Stop control, Traffic Island, Flush Median, Edge Line</td>
<td>Approved with Conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Williamson Avenue / Scanlan Street / Mackelvie Street</td>
<td>Grey Lynn</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td></td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Mahuhu Crescent / Tapera Street / Te Taiou Crescent / Quay Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Event)</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking restrictions</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Princes Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Event)</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking restrictions</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>Hamer Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, P120 Parking, Bus Parking, Traffic Island, Give-Way Control, Shoulder Marking, Edge Line, Carriageway</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### July 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local Board</th>
<th>Street Name</th>
<th>Suburb</th>
<th>Type of Report</th>
<th>Nature Of Restriction</th>
<th>Committee Decision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Middleton Road, Ada Street</td>
<td>Remuera</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, SSP Restriction, P120 Resident Exempt Parking, Stop Control, One Way Give-Way Slow Point, Traffic Islands</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Customs Street West</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes</td>
<td>Car Share Parking</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Burton Street, Grafton Road</td>
<td>Grafton</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, Clearway, Lane Arrow Markings, Traffic Islands, Give-Way Control, Edge Line, Flush Median</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Sale Street, Wellesley Street West</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, Bus Only Parking, Traffic Island, Road Hump, Footpath, Give-Way Control, Delineators, Edge Lines, Road Markings for Speed Management</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Beach Road</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>Shared Vehicle parking</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Federal Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, Shared Vehicle parking, Stop control</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Lion Place</td>
<td>Epsom</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, P120 Time-Restricted parking, Loading Zone, Give-Way control</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Old Mill Road</td>
<td>Western Springs</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, Angle parking, Loading Zone, Road Hump, No Passing</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Princes Street</td>
<td>Grafton</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>Shared Vehicle parking, Angle parking, No Stopping At All Times, Mobility parking, Pedestrian Crossing, Traffic Island, Flush Median</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere</td>
<td>Union Street, Drake Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>Shared Vehicle parking, No Right Turn, One-Way Road, Lane Arrow markings, Road Hump, Traffic Island, Edge Line</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Board</td>
<td>Street Name</td>
<td>Suburb</td>
<td>Type of Report</td>
<td>Nature Of Restriction</td>
<td>Committee Decision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitemata</td>
<td>Whitaker Place</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Permanent Traffic and Parking changes Combined</td>
<td>No Stopping At All Times, PS Time-Restricted parking, Road Hump</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitemata</td>
<td>Princes Street, Symonds Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Event)</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking restrictions</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitemata</td>
<td>St Paul Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Event)</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking restrictions</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitemata</td>
<td>Mahuhu Crescent, Taipora Street, Te Taou Crescent, Quay Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Event)</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking restrictions</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitemata</td>
<td>Mahuhu Crescent, Taipora Street, Te Taou Crescent, Quay Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Event)</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking restrictions</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitemata</td>
<td>Mahuhu Crescent, Taipora Street, Te Taou Crescent, Quay Street</td>
<td>Auckland Central</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking changes (Event)</td>
<td>Temporary Traffic and Parking restrictions</td>
<td>Carried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School</td>
<td>Travelwise status (i.e. active, inactive)</td>
<td>Total WSB routes</td>
<td>WSB event/audit</td>
<td>Active mode promotion events (e.g. cycle follow up, WOW event, park and ride, walking promotion)</td>
<td>Speed event (e.g. SDAS, back to school)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bayfield School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freemans Bay School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kadamah School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marist Catholic School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newmarket School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment B</td>
<td>Item 14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C = Completed (i.e. active, inactive)</th>
<th>Total WSB routes</th>
<th>WSB event/ route audit</th>
<th>Active mode promotion events (e.g. cycle follow up, WOW event, park and ride, walking promotion)</th>
<th>Speed event</th>
<th>Young drivers event</th>
<th>Safety at the school gate</th>
<th>Other safety promotion event (e.g. key crossing, crossing training, roadside, ball talks)</th>
<th>PT promotion event (e.g. rail safe week)</th>
<th>Meetings/ workshops (e.g. lead teacher, students, WSB volunteer)</th>
<th>Engineering info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Newton Central School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>P C C C C C</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Proposed changes to infrastructure to the North Western shared path to go through public consultation soon.</td>
<td>P P C</td>
<td>(where relevant)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richmond Road School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td>P P P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Peter’s College</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ponsonby Primary</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Springs College</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td>P C</td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td>P C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Westmere School</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>P C</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td>P P</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Auckland Film Protocol consultation feedback and recommended changes

File No.: CP2019/14435

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To receive a summary of consultation feedback on the draft Auckland Film Protocol, and to provide feedback on the recommended changes to the document.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. Auckland Council is currently reviewing the Auckland Film Protocol. The Auckland Film Protocol sets out:
   - the commitment of the council group to support filming in Auckland;
   - expectations and rules that filmmakers must abide by when filming in Auckland; and
   - provides guidance for filmmakers on the process for approval to film in Auckland.
3. The purpose of the review was to ensure that the Auckland Film Protocol is up-to-date and identify emerging trends, issues or opportunities that should be addressed. Content of the Auckland Film Protocol was reviewed against legislation referenced in the document and against policies and plans of the Auckland Council group to identify areas where the Auckland Film Protocol should be updated. Engagement with staff involved in the process of assessing and approving film permit applications, from across the council group, was undertaken to inform the review and proposed amendments to the Protocol.
4. A revised draft of the Auckland Film Protocol was reported to the Environment and Community Committee in June 2019 for consideration and was approved for public consultation (resolution number ENV/2019/73).
5. The following is a summary of the key changes made to the Auckland Film Protocol before public consultation was undertaken:
   - **Native species**: new content added stating that Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits to protect native species
   - **Kauri dieback**: new content added providing information about kauri dieback and stating that filmmakers will be required to clean equipment to council specifications when filming in areas where kauri are present.
   - **Drones**: new content added stating that a film permit is required for commercial filming and requiring filmmakers to comply with Civil Aviation rules, Auckland Council bylaws and conditions.
   - **Historic heritage**: new content added stating that filming in proximity to historic (including cultural) heritage will be subject to conditions to protect these sites.
   - **Health and safety**: new content added to reflect the new Health and Safety at work Act 2015 and requirements to prepare a site specific health and safety plan.
   - Content of the Auckland Film Protocol was updated to reflect current policy, plans and bylaws of Auckland Council. Some structural and editorial amendments were also made to improve the logic, flow and readability of the document.
6. Public consultation was undertaken over a three week period between 21 June and 12 July 2019.
7. A total of 74 submissions were received during the public consultation period. Waitematā Local Board residents provided a total of eight submissions on the draft Auckland Film Protocol, representing 10.8 percent of all submissions. The views of Waitematā Local Board submitters were similar to regional views. Staff are proposing some changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol to address submitter concerns; the proposed changes to the draft Auckland Film protocol are shown in track changes in Attachment B.

8. This report provides a summary of public feedback and of proposed changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol to address feedback. The following is a high-level summary of the key changes proposed to the Auckland Film Protocol in response to public consultation:

- **Natural environment**: include stronger messaging about the importance of respecting Auckland’s natural environment, that film permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.

- **Native species**: include stronger messages around the potential impact of filming on native species, such as birds and that filming permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.

- **Kauri dieback**: amend to ensure that conditions may be placed on film permits in any public open space (controlled by Auckland Council) where kauri are present.

- **Drones**: include additional guidance on the use of drones around native birds and in proximity to other users of public open space and adjoining private properties.

- **Impact on access to public open space**: include stronger messages around the need for filmmakers to be respectful of other users of public open space and state that film permits give limited permission to occupy public open space.

- **Compliance and enforcement**: include stronger messages around the requirement for filmmakers to comply with the Auckland Council policies, plans, bylaws and the terms and conditions of their film permit.

9. Submission themes and proposed changes are summarised in Attachment A.

**Ngā tūtohunga**

**Recommendation/s**

That the Waitematā Local Board:

- receive a summary of consultation feedback on the draft Auckland Film Protocol
- provide feedback on the recommended changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol
- note that local board feedback will be included in a report to the Environment and Community Committee in September 2019, seeking approval for the proposed changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol.

**Horopaki Context**

10. The first version of the Auckland Film Protocol (the protocol) was adopted by the Regional Development and Operations Committee (resolution number RDO/2013/27) on 14 March 2013. A review of fees for filming in the Auckland Region was undertaken in 2014 and a new set of region-wide charges was recommended; providing a simplified and harmonised range of charges. The Governing Body adopted a region-wide schedule of film fees and revised Auckland Film Protocol on 28 May 2015 (resolution number GB/2015/36).
11. Since the Protocol was adopted in 2015 there have been a number of changes to legislation and to Auckland Council’s policy and planning framework. The purpose of the review of the Protocol was to:
   • ensure that the Protocol is up-to-date; and
   • identify emerging trends, issues or opportunities to be addressed in the Protocol.

12. Content of the Protocol was reviewed against legislation referenced in the document and against policies and plans of the Auckland Council group to identify areas where the Protocol should be updated. Engagement with staff involved in the process of assessing and approving film permit applications, from across the Council group, was undertaken to inform the review and proposed amendments to the Protocol.

13. Workshops were held in September and October 2018 to engage with local boards that experience a high volume of filming.

14. Engagement to inform the preparation of the revised draft Protocol was also undertaken with:
   • mana whenua: mana whenua interests are represented by 19 iwi (tribal) authorities in Tāmaki Makaurau, Auckland. The 19 iwi authorities were invited, in writing, to inform the review of the Protocol.
   • staff of the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority to inform the review.
   • screen sector: the screen sector was invited to participate in a survey in April 2019 to inform the review. The survey asked a series of general questions about the Protocol and experiences of filming in public open space in Auckland.
   • public: the People’s Panel in September 2018; a total of 4,762 responses were received. The survey asked a series of questions on views on and experiences of filming in Auckland.

A high-level summary of feedback (including local board feedback) is provided in Attachment C.

15. The review recommended that a range of changes be made to the Auckland Film Protocol, the following is a summary of the key changes proposed to the Environment and Community Committee:
   • **Native species**: include new content stating that Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits to protect native species
   • **Kauri dieback**: include new content providing information about kauri dieback and stating that filmmakers will be required to clean equipment to council specifications when filming in areas where kauri are present.
   • **Drones**: include new content stating that a film permit is required for commercial filming and requiring filmmakers to comply with Civil Aviation rules, Auckland Council bylaws and conditions.
   • **Historic heritage**: include new content stating that filming in proximity to historic (including cultural) heritage will be subject to conditions to protect these sites.
   • **Health and safety**: include new content to reflect the new Health and Safety at work Act 2015 and requirements to prepare a site specific health and safety plan.
   • **Filming on Tūpuna Maunga**: update content to reflect that applications to film on Tūpuna Maunga are assessed by the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority.
   • **Updates to content**: update content to reflect current policy (e.g. smokefree policy), plans (Auckland Unitary Plan) and bylaws of Auckland Council.
   • **Structural and editorial**: amend some parts of the document to improve the logic, flow and readability of the document.
16. The revised draft of the Auckland Film Protocol was approved by the Environment and Community Committee for public consultation in June 2019 (resolution number ENV/2019/73).

Tātāritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

17. Consultation on the revised draft of the Auckland Film Protocol took place from 21 June to 12 July 2019. A total of 74 submissions were received; this represents a substantial increase on the 21 submissions which were received in response to the 2015 review of the Auckland Film Protocol. Of the submissions received, 72 were submitted using the online form and 2 non-form hardcopy submissions were received.

18. Submitters were asked to identify if they worked in the screen sector or not, with:
   - 29 submissions (39%) received from individuals or organisations that identified themselves as working in the screen sector
   - 45 submissions (61%) received from individuals or organisations that do not work in the screen sector.

   The questions included in the online form varied depending on whether the submitter identified themselves as working in the screen industry or not.

19. A breakdown of all submissions received by local board area is shown in Table 1 below. The small number of responses from individual local board areas means that a analysis of views by local board area was not possible for all local board areas.

Table 1: Breakdown of submissions made by local board area.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local Board Area</th>
<th>Number of respondents</th>
<th>Percentage of respondents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waitākere Ranges</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>23.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albert-Eden</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodney</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Harbour</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōrākei</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maungakiekie-Tāmaki</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devonport-Takapuna</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Henderson-Massey</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaipātiki</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Howick</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whau</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māngere-Ōtahuhu</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puketapapa</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hibiscus and Bays</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papakura</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franklin</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Barrier</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōtara-Papatoetoe</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A series of closed questions were asked of non-screen sector individuals and organisations; a summary of the responses to these questions is shown in Table 2 below. Table 2 shows that:

- most respondents are supportive of Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach and that;
- most respondents think that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming has on residents and businesses, on public open space and historic and cultural heritage.

Table 2: Feedback on the Auckland Film Protocols management of the impacts of filming

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
<th>Percentage of regional submissions (number of respondents is shown in brackets)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you support Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>75% (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>20% (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>5% (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you think the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact on residents and businesses?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>56% (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>19% (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>25% (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you think the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming has on our public open space and environment?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>53% (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>33% (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>14% (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you think the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact of filming on our historic and cultural heritage?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>62% (26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Partially</td>
<td>29% (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>10% (4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21. The main reasons given by those who supported Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach are shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Summary of key reasons for supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Economic</td>
<td>• generates employment and economic growth;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• benefits communities and local businesses;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• benefits a broad range of trades and industries;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• attracts investment and businesses to Auckland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultural and creative</td>
<td>• has cultural benefits allowing and supporting the telling of stories visually;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• supports the creative economy and enables people to find a future in the creative industries;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• It’s fun and exciting to see Auckland on the screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22. Table 4 shows the key reasons that respondents gave for partially supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach.

**Table 4: Summary of key reasons given for partially supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access</td>
<td>• the impacts on resident, including parking restrictions, road closures and ability to use public open space while filming is taking place need to be considered and managed;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• need to ensure that film-makers are respectful of other users of public open space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>• there needs to be sufficient notification to ensure that residents and businesses are aware of open space being used for filming and are not inconvenienced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance</td>
<td>• need to consider and manage the impact that filming has on the environment and impacted residents;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• need to balance the cumulative impacts of filming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity</td>
<td>• need to ensure that fees for commercial use of public places are fair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23. The key reasons given for not supporting Auckland Council’s film-friendly approach were:
   • the cost to ratepayers of enabling filming;
   • that there is not enough protection for individuals, businesses and residents affected by filming being carried out on private property.

24. A series of open-ended questions were also included to elicit further information about responses to these questions and about a range of other topics. Staff have worked through submissions to determine any changes to be recommended for the final revised Auckland Film Protocol. Attachment A identifies key themes and submission points along with proposed staff responses.

A summary of the most common submission themes and the proposed staff responses are shown in table 5.

**Table 5: Summary of key submission themes and proposed staff responses.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key themes</th>
<th>Summary of proposed responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of drones for filming</td>
<td>Include additional guidance on the use of drones around native birds and in proximity to other users of public open space and adjoining private properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on natural environment</td>
<td>Include stronger messaging about the importance of respecting Auckland’s natural environment, that film permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kauri dieback</td>
<td>Amend to ensure that conditions may be placed on film permits in any public open space (controlled by Auckland Council) where kauri are present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on native species</td>
<td>Include stronger messages around the potential impact of filming on native species, such as birds and that filming permits may be subject to conditions to manage impacts and/or that filming may be subject to restrictions where these impacts cannot be appropriately managed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Waitematā Local Board  
20 August 2019  

Auckland Film Protocol consultation feedback and recommended changes  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key themes</th>
<th>Summary of proposed responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impact on access to public open space</td>
<td>Include stronger messages around the need for filmmakers to be respectful of other users of public open space and state that film permits give limited permission to occupy public open space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance and enforcement</td>
<td>Include stronger messages around the requirement for filmmakers to comply with Auckland Council policies, plans, bylaws and the terms and conditions of their film permit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health and safety</td>
<td>Amend to enable production companies to arrange alternative timeframes for the submission of a site specific health and safety plan by agreement with Screen Auckland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Screen Auckland to consider operational approaches to achieving wider public notification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on business</td>
<td>No change to the Auckland Film Protocol. The protocol is intended to provide a framework that enables decisions to be made on a case-by-case basis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity</td>
<td>No change to the Auckland Film Protocol. Fees for commercial use of public open space are set under the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015 and amended through the long term plan and annual plan.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25. This report seeks formal feedback from the board at its August 2019 business meeting on the recommended changes to the revised draft Auckland Film Protocol in response to consultation feedback.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera  
Council group impacts and views

26. Engagement with staff involved in the process of assessing and approving film permit applications, from across the Council group, was undertaken to inform the review and proposed amendments to the Protocol. This included engagement with Auckland Transport, Panuku Development Auckland, and with Auckland Council community facilities, region-wide planning, social policy and bylaws, visitor experience and heritage.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe  
Local impacts and local board views

Role of local boards in film permitting

27. Landowner approval is required to film on any public open space in the Auckland region. Local boards are responsible for landowner approvals for local parks and reserves. Engagement with local boards that experience a high volume of applications for film permits was undertaken in September and October 2018 to inform the review of the Auckland Film Protocol. A summary of the key engagement themes is included in Attachment C and was reported to the Environment and Community Committee in July 2019.

28. A key theme from local board engagement was that the film permit timeframes mean that landowner approval timeframes are very tight, particularly when considering complex or contentious applications. It was also noted that the current timeframes do not allow sufficient time to consider applications at full board meetings or to consult key stakeholders. Given this, the following options on film permit timeframes were presented to the Environment and Community Committee at a workshop in May 2019 and at the June 2019 meeting.

Option one: Status Quo
Option two: amend the permit timeframes
• Option 2(a) the permit time frame is amended to be “up to five working days”.
29. Following direction from the Committee, that increasing timeframes could act as a disincentive making Auckland internationally uncompetitive, the status quo option was retained in the draft Auckland Film Protocol.

### Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori

#### Māori impact statement

30. ATEED has an ongoing relationship with several mana whenua and mataawaka groups, across its whole portfolio of activity. To inform the review of the Protocol the 19 Iwi Authorities were invited, in writing, to inform the review. In relation to film permit applications Māori views and input may be obtained in several ways where there is a potential impact on particular land or sites. This is usually coordinated either by the film facilitator, or through the relevant parks manager.

31. Specific processes are in place for the tūpuna maunga, with all commercial filming on the maunga requiring the approval of the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority (Tūpuna Maunga Authority). Screen Auckland facilitates all requests for approval to film on the tūpuna maunga. Approval to film will be subject to conditions and restrictions set by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority. Meetings were held with staff of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority to inform the review and ensure that proposed amendments are consistent with the policy of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority.

### Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea

#### Financial implications

32. The proposed amendments to the Protocol do not impact on existing levels of service and will not impact on operational budgets.

### Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga

#### Risks and mitigations

33. There are no significant risks arising from the board giving feedback on the proposed changes to the revised draft Auckland Film Protocol at this time.

34. If adoption of the revised Auckland Film Protocol is delayed this would impact on council’s ability to implement the proposed changes.

### Ngā koringa ā-muri

#### Next steps

35. Public feedback and proposed amendments to the Auckland Film Protocol will be presented to the Environment and Community Committee for approval.

### Ngā tāpirihanga

#### Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Key submission themes and responses</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Draft 2019 Auckland Film Protocol</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Summary of preconsultation engagement</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ngā kaihaina
Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Marie Jenkins - Screen Facilitation Manager, ATEED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Authorisers | Victoria Villaraza - Acting General Manager, Local Board Services  
Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board |
Attachment A: Key submission themes and recommended amendments to the draft Auckland Film Protocol based on consultation feedback

Staff are working through the detailed submissions received to determine and recommend changes to the draft Auckland Film Protocol. Table 1 shows key submission themes where change to the Auckland Film Protocol was suggested. For each key submission point a proposed staff response and recommended amendments to the Auckland Film Protocol are shown. Table 2 shows minor changes suggested to the Auckland Film Protocol by submitters where staff recommend that these changes be made for clarity. Table 3 shows a summary of themes where submissions indicated a broad level of support for the inclusion of these topics in the Auckland Film Protocol.

All recommended amendments to the Auckland Film protocol are shown in track changes in Attachment B.

### Table 1: Key submission themes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of drones</td>
<td>Drones can be harmful to native birds, disrupting nesting and feeding. The potential negative effects, particularly on endangered native species, need to be prevented. Need to consider restricting or prohibiting filming in some locations at some times of the year.</td>
<td>The use of drones is regulated by the Civil Aviation Authority. Auckland Council as a landowner has put in place a Code of Conduct to regulate the use of drones in public open space. The draft Auckland Film Protocol includes a new section on the use of drones for commercial filming and requires film makers to apply for a permit to film and to comply with the Auckland Council Code of Conduct and bylaws. As the use of drones for both commercial and recreational purposes has increased concerns about drone may be the result of both recreational and commercial use and the Protocol only manages use for the purpose of commercial filming. The Auckland Council Code of Conduct does restrict the use of drones around birds, to some extent, however, this was not restated in the draft Protocol. It is recommended that a summary of key provisions from the Code of Conduct is included in Section 4.3.11 of the draft Protocol. It is also recommended that Section 3.4.11 be amended to note that filming in some locations may be restricted or subject to additional conditions to avoid harm to native birds and to include additional guidance on drone use where native birds are present at a film location and reference to the protection of native species under the Wildlife Act 1953.</td>
<td>Amend Sections 2.3, 4.3.11 and Key New Zealand Legislation section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drones can spook livestock and horses, in some areas where horse riding is a common</td>
<td>The Auckland Council Code of does restrict drone use in proximity to livestock, however, this was not restated in the draft Protocol.</td>
<td>Amend section 4.3.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Summary of key submission points</td>
<td>Proposed staff response</td>
<td>Recommended amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>activity this can result in safety risks for the horse and rider. The impact of drones on livestock and horse riders needs to be managed.</td>
<td>It is recommended that a summary of key provisions from the Code of Conduct is included in Section 4.3.11 of the draft Protocol.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drones can cause concerns for other users and neighbours of public open space. Need to ensure that drone use does not impinge on the privacy of other users and neighbours and that it does not overly impact on other users’ enjoyment of public places.</td>
<td>The Auckland Council Code of does restrict drone use in proximity to other users of parks and over adjoining private properties; however, this was not restated in the draft Protocol. It is recommended that a summary of key provisions from the Code of Conduct is included in Section 4.3.11 of the draft Protocol.</td>
<td>Amend section 4.3.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Screen sector submitters generally supported the need to permit and regulate the use of drones for commercial filming in public open space. Some submitters noted that other commercial uses of drones should also be regulated as it can result in negative public perceptions of drone use.</td>
<td>When a drone is being used for commercial filming purposes over public open space Auckland Council requires drone users to apply for a permit to film. This requirement is stated in the draft Auckland Film Protocol. Regulating the use of drones for other commercial purposes is out of the scope of the Auckland Film Protocol.</td>
<td>No change</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Impact on the natural environment**

Overall most submitters agreed that it was important to ensure that the impact of filming on Auckland’s natural environment is managed and most public submitters felt that the Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming on the environment. However, some submitters felt that the Protocol should contain stronger messaging around the importance of respecting and protecting the natural environment.

The Auckland Film Protocol includes a number of sections which refer to managing the impact of filming on natural environments. To address submitter concerns it is recommended that section 3.9 be amended to include:

- stronger messaging about the importance of respecting and protecting Auckland’s natural environment.
- clarify that film permits may be subject to conditions to manage effects of a film proposal and filming in some locations may be restricted or prohibited where the effects of a film proposal cannot be appropriately managed.

Amend Section 3.9

There is a need to consider the environment impact of filming when assessing permit applications; including the potential impact of special effects on the natural environment.

Assessing the potential impact of filming on a particular natural environment or location requires the consideration of a range of factors, including but not limited to consideration of the nature of the film proposal and scope and scale of filming activity. While one film proposal may be able to appropriately manage the potential impacts on a particular location, another may not be able to do so.

Add a new section to Table One and amend section 4.10
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kauri dieback</td>
<td>Most submitters agreed that it was very important to protect kauri and supported the inclusion of requirements in the draft Protocol. However, it was suggested that the Protocol needs to ensure that these requirements apply to all public open space.</td>
<td>Auckland Council regulates vehicles on beaches in the Auckland Council Public Safety and Nuisance Bylaw and Council must also give effect to Policy 20(1) of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement. This is reflected in section 4.3.6 of the Auckland Film Protocol. To reinforce existing provisions on the use of vehicles on beaches it is recommended that section 4.3.6 is amended to state that vehicle use should where ever possible be avoided of kept to the minimum necessary.</td>
<td>Amend Section 4.3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on native species</td>
<td>Most submitters supported the addition of section 3.12 and noted that it is very important to protect native species. However it was noted that the section largely focuses on biosecurity and suggested that the Protocol should contain more emphasis on protecting native flora and fauna, in particular native birds from the potential impact of filming.</td>
<td>The impact of filming on native flora and fauna is considered in a number of sections of the Auckland Film Protocol. To address submitter concerns it is recommended that section 3.12 be amended to note that the impact of filming on native flora and fauna will be assessed and filming may be subject to conditions and / or restrictions to protect native flora and fauna. Noise and lighting can have a negative impact on native birds. It is recommended that section 3.1.5 be amended to note that in some</td>
<td>Amend Sections 3.1.5 and 3.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is important to manage the potential impact of vehicles on beaches and in coastal areas. Filming should avoid the use of vehicles if possible or use only the minimum number necessary.
### Attachment A

**Item 15**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impact on access to public open space</td>
<td>Overall most submitters felt that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming on public open space. Some submitters noted that while some areas of an open space might be in use for filming there was generally still plenty of space for other users. However, some submitters felt that filming had resulted in significant inconvenience due to restricted access to public spaces such as footpaths, local roads, parks, reserves and beaches.</td>
<td>Under the terms and conditions of a film permit film makers are provided with limited permission to occupy public open space. This means that the public are still able to access public open space, although access to some areas may be restricted for a period of time to avoid interruptions to filming and ensure public health and safety. This condition is not explicitly restated in the Auckland Film Protocol. The draft Protocol requires film makers to ensure (Section 3.1.3), unless expressly permitted, continued public pedestrian access. In addition, film permit terms and conditions require that film makers ensure access for residents, businesses and emergency vehicles are available at all times, that the public is not unduly inconvenienced and that public and private access ways are clear at all times. All part or full road closures, for the purpose of filming, are undertaken in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government Act 1974 and are publicly notified. For avoidance of doubt, it is recommended that sections 2.1 and 3.1 are amended to state that a film permit gives production companies limited permission to occupy and use public open space.</td>
<td>Amend sections 2.1 and 3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>Notification of local residents. Some submitters noted that they or other residents have been inconvenienced due to filming in their local area. Noting that filming may for example, restrict access to parking, footpaths,</td>
<td>Section 3.1.8 sets out minimum requirements for the notification of residents and businesses in the area impacted by filming, including in relation to road closures. Road closures (including closures of footpaths) for the filming are undertaken in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government Act 1974 and must be notified in printed news media.</td>
<td>Amend section 3.1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Summary of key submission points</td>
<td>Proposed staff response</td>
<td>Recommended amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and some parts of a local park or to local roads. In contrast some submitters noted that they experienced filming in their local area and felt that they were well informed.</td>
<td>In addition to this Auckland Transport publishes information about road closures on its website. It is recommended that section 3.1.8 is amended to reference requirements for public notification by print media and that further information about road closures is available on Auckland Transports website.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Wider notification of filming should occur to enable:  
  • Avoidance of areas where filming is taking place. Some submitters noted that residents travel some distance to access public open space for recreational purposes and can be inconvenienced if filming is occurring.  
  • Interested residents of Auckland to watch filming on location. Some submitters noted that they would like to know where filming is occurring so that they have to opportunity to see filming on location. | Notification requirements in the Protocol focus on informing residents and business in the area impacted by filming. Wider notification of filming could reduce the risk of inconvenience to residents who may intend to use public open space but effective notification would be complicated by a range of operational factors including:  
  • the date and / or timing of location filming is subject to change at short notice, as a result of weather and other considerations, and if notifications were not up-to-date it may not effectively inform potential users;  
  • it would be difficult to put in place a single notification platform or media that would reach all potential users of public open space.  
  Pulling in place mechanisms for wider notification does not require an amendment to the Auckland Film Protocol and it is recommended that Screen Auckland consider potential operational approaches to achieving wider notification. | No change  
Screen Auckland to consider operational approaches to achieving wider notification. |                        |
| Compliance and enforcement    | Many submitters noted that while for the most part film makers act responsibly some do not and there needs to be:  
  • a stronger emphasis on compliance in the Protocol;  
  • a stronger focus on enforcement when production companies do not comply with their film permit, rules, regulations or policy of Auckland Council. There should be consequences and / or disincentives for those who do not comply. | The Auckland Film Protocol states in a number of places that film makers are required to comply with Auckland Council policies, plans, bylaws and the terms and conditions of their film permit and that non-compliance may result in enforcement.  
Enforcement is limited to the powers available to Auckland Council under legislation such as the Local Government Act and the Resource Management Act to enforce breaches of bylaws and policies and plans like the Auckland Unitary Plan.  
To address submitters concerns it is recommended that sections 3.2, and 3.3 be amended to increase emphasis on compliance. | Amend Sections 3.2 and 3.3 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Summary of key submission points</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Health and safety</td>
<td>Most submitters generally agreed that health and safety, for screen sector workers and members of the public, is important and supported the addition of section 4.6. However some screen sector submitters noted that it is challenging to meet the timeframes specified for submitting a site specific health and safety plan.</td>
<td>Health and Safety in New Zealand workplaces is regulated by the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015. Section 4.6 was added to draft Auckland Film Protocol to recognise Auckland Councils obligations under the Act when filming is occurring in public open space. It is recommended that section 4.6.1 be amended to enable production companies to arrange an alternative timeframe for the submission of a site specific health and safety plan under some circumstances. It is also recommended that this section be amended to require production companies to provide general crew safety notes which typically specify general health and safety provisions in place for all crew regardless of location.</td>
<td>Amend section 4.6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on business</td>
<td>Overall most submitters felt that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact on businesses who are in areas where filming is taking place. However, some screen sector submitters noted: • that the permitting process can seem overly bureaucratic and conditions and restrictions placed on filming in some locations can have a negative impact on businesses working with the screen sector • the addition of new requirements and conditions was resulting in increased red tape.</td>
<td>The Protocol is intended to create a framework that enables decisions to be made on a case-by-case basis. This will mean that sometimes conditions or restrictions are required to balance potential impacts of filming in a particular location.</td>
<td>No change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equity</td>
<td>The use of public open space needs to consider the cost of providing public open space to ratepayers and ensure that the rates for commercial use of open space are fair and equitable.</td>
<td>Fees for commercial use of public open space including commercial and organised filming are set under the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Places 2015 bylaw and are amended through the long term plan and annual plan process.</td>
<td>No change</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2: Minor changes to the Protocol in response to submitter feedback.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Themes</th>
<th>Submitter suggestion</th>
<th>Proposed staff response</th>
<th>Recommended amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waitakere Ranges Heritage Areas Act</td>
<td>The draft Protocol made a small number of references to the Waitakere Ranges Heritage Areas Act. It was suggested that the Act needs to be referenced in a number of other parts of the document and that more information about the objectives of the Act should be included.</td>
<td>The Waitakere Ranges Heritage Areas Act recognises the national, regional and local significance of the Waitakere Ranges area. It is recommended that sections 2.1 and 4.2 are amended to refer to the Waitakere Ranges Heritage Areas Act and that the Key Legislation section is amended to include reference to the objectives of the Act.</td>
<td>Amend sections 2.1, 4.2 and Key New Zealand Legislation section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen Auckland Reserved Parking document</td>
<td>Section 4.2.1 refers to the Screen Auckland Reserved Parking (SARP) document. It was suggested that this should be defined in the document.</td>
<td>The Auckland Film Protocol refers to the Screen Auckland Reserved Parking Document which outlines operational requirements when reserving parking areas for film activities. It is recommended that a definition be added to the glossary to state this.</td>
<td>Amend glossary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recces</td>
<td>Recces are undertaken to assess the suitability of locations for filming. It was suggested that the Protocol could be clearer that any filming activity undertaken during a recce must be low impact in nature.</td>
<td>Recces are undertaken by screen production companies before a film permit has been granted to assess the suitability of a location for filming. It is recommended that section 2.3 is amended to include a new frequently asked question which clarifies that any recce undertaken must be low impact and production companies must comply with the requirements of the Auckland Film Protocol during recce.</td>
<td>Amend Section 2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attachment A

Table 3: Summary of key support for topics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Submitter views</th>
<th>Recommended response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impact on cultural heritage</td>
<td>Overall most submitters felt that the Auckland Film Protocol does enough to manage the impact that filming has on cultural heritage. Most submitters noted that it was important to ensure cultural heritage sites are treated with respect.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filming on the water</td>
<td>Most submitters supported the addition of section 4.3.7, noting that health and safety considerations on the water are important. Note all those who commented on this matter were individuals or organisations working in the screen sector.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waste and sustainability</td>
<td>Most submitters, including those submitters who work in the screen sector, agreed that it was important to minimise and manage waste to landfill and agreed that it was important for the screen sector to play their part. Many of the screen sector submitters noted that they feel practice in this area is improving and agreed that it should continue to be a focus.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core Commitments</td>
<td>Most submitters were supportive of the streamlined Core Commitments section, although some submitters noted that it was important to ensure that the process of film permitting is also streamlined.</td>
<td>No change required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ngā Tikanga Hopu Whakaahua i te Rohe o Tāmaki Makaurau

Auckland Film Protocol

Commitments, conditions and guidelines for filming in the Auckland Region
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objectives</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of this document</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section One: Core commitments</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section Two: A quick reference guide to filming in Auckland</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Obtaining consent to film</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Flowchart summarising the filming application process</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Frequently Asked Questions</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Filming impacts and Auckland Council requirements</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Filming fees and associated costs</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section Three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Standard conditions for filming activity in the Auckland Region</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Compliance with relevant plans, policies, bylaws, and rules</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Compliance with the Auckland Film Protocol and film permit conditions</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Filming potentially offensive material</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 Filming on private premises</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6 Using local businesses</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7 Smokefree Areas</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8 Filming in sensitive areas and the management of cumulative effects</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9 Protecting natural environments</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.10 Environmental sustainability</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.11 Protecting Auckland’s historic heritage</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.12 Protecting our native species</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.13 Going the extra mile</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.14 Insurance requirements</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.15 Concerns about filming</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section Four: The approval process in detail</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 Traffic management</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2 Parking essential vehicles</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Section Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Filming on parks, reserves and other public open space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Filming on or in other properties and buildings owned by Auckland Council or Council Controlled Organisations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>Filming on public transport and public transport facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>Health and safety considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>Heritage considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>Resource consent considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>Building consent considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10</td>
<td>Planning for additional requirements – The use of special effects, firearms and stunts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glossary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Related policies, publications and websites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Key New Zealand Legislation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appendix One: Film permit application form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

What Auckland offers
Auckland is now recognised as a world-class screen production destination, providing access to first-rate skills and talent, stunning locations, and exceptional production facilities.

The Auckland screen production industry caters for a wide range of activities, including feature films, television series, documentaries, commercials, photoshoots, animation, post production and visual effects.

How Auckland benefits
The economic importance of the film industry in Auckland has been growing steadily, bringing jobs and opportunity to those directly involved in the industry and positive impacts for the wider economy. This in turn leads to better social outcomes and improved quality of life for all Aucklanders.

Auckland’s growing film industry supports our aspiration, outlined in the Auckland Plan 2050, for Auckland to be prosperous, with many opportunities, delivering better social and economic outcomes for everyone. The Auckland Plan recognises that our economy needs to be innovative and agile and that international connectivity is key to our economic success.

Many jobs in the screen industry, particularly in the post-production sector are high-tech with innovation key to success. Television programmes, feature films and television commercials produced in Auckland are enjoyed by audiences all over the world. Showcasing Auckland to the world, enhancing our reputation, our sense of pride in who we are, encouraging visitors and attracting skills and talent to Auckland.

Being ‘film-friendly’ while balancing the impact on residents and businesses
Many filming projects, particularly television commercials and some television programmes, operate under tight timeframes and require quick decision-making.
Cities that are able to process requests quickly are more attractive to screen production companies, who may only have a very limited amount of time to turn a script into a finished product.

However, filming is a highly controlled activity that relies on the use of public space and there is a need to ensure that local residents, and businesses and the environment are not overly negatively impacted by filming.

**Objectives**

The overall objective of this document is to:

1. **create a film-friendly culture within Auckland Council, Council Controlled Organisations (CCOs) and the Auckland Region in order to attract and retain screen production industry business.**

   Key to this objective being realised is a two way commitment from the wider council organisation and filmmakers to open minded and thorough communication with each other, and an awareness of the needs of local residents and businesses. With this in mind, the other objectives of this document are to:

2. **deliver a cohesive, efficient and customer driven service that provides certainty to filmmakers in a globally competitive market.**

3. **enable public goodwill towards the film industry by making explicit the required conduct of film crews when filming in public spaces, or anywhere that members of the public, local businesses, iwi or the environment are likely to be impacted on.**

Screen Auckland is the film office for the Auckland Region and is responsible for the permitting of filming on public open space in the Auckland Region. To enable the achievement of these objectives - contributing to an Auckland which is prosperous with many opportunities and to a sustainable screen industry - Screen Auckland’s strategic priorities are set out in the diagram below.

---

1 The term “wider council organisation” refers to Auckland Council and all Council Controlled Organisations and subsidiary companies.
Structure of this document

This document is structured into four distinct parts.

**Section one** - outlines commitments made by Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation on how they will support the work of the film industry.

**Section two** - provides a quick reference guide for filmmakers on processes and costs related to filming in Auckland.

**Section three** - outlines a code of conduct for filmmakers when filming on public space, or anywhere where members of the public or local businesses are likely to be impacted on. The code of conduct consists of rules filmmakers must abide by when undertaking filming in Auckland, and also provides suggestions on how production companies can go the extra mile when working with local communities.

**Section four** - provides further detail on the approval processes associated with filming as they relate to the different functions of the wider council organisation.

**Attention film makers**

This document is designed for filmmakers considering filming in Auckland. It signifies Council’s commitment to the screen production industry, and outlines what filmmakers can expect, and what is expected of them, when filming in, on or around public places in Auckland.

Other parties who may find this document of interest include:

- elected members of the governing body and local boards;
- staff within the wider council organisation who are unfamiliar with Auckland’s film friendly commitments, protocols and guidelines;
- residents, businesses or community organisations who would like information on best practice and filming processes in Auckland or are impacted on by filming;
- Mana Whenua;
- other local authorities or film offices.
1 Section One: Core commitments

Our commitment to the screen industry

1.1 Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation will say yes to the screen production industry unless there are good reasons not to.

1.2 In instances where there are difficulties with a proposed shoot, Auckland Council will listen to and consider all possibilities for mitigation put forward by the screen production industry and others.

1.3 In instances where it is not possible to say yes, this decision will be made promptly and transparently, and Screen Auckland along with relevant members of the wider council organisation will work with the screen production industry to identify alternative options.

1.4 Screen Auckland, with support from relevant officers within the wider council organisation, will make it as easy as possible for the screen production industry to submit a thorough and complete application form. This will reduce the likelihood of delays due to the need to obtain more information later in the process, and unanticipated complications with the filming activity.

1.5 Screen Auckland’s objective is to deliver a customer-driven and efficient service to the screen industry. To achieve this Screen Auckland will constantly seek to identify opportunities to improve the service given to the screen industry, and will work with members of the wider council organisation to achieve this.

Our commitment to Auckland

1.6 Screen Auckland will consider the potential positive and negative impacts of filming on Auckland’s communities and environment and the needs of all impacted communities, partners and stakeholders when facilitating filming applications.

1.7 Screen Auckland, with support from relevant officers within the wider council organisation and local boards, will work with the screen production industry on an ongoing basis to mitigate any negative effects caused by filming and capitalise on opportunities for filming to contribute to Auckland’s social, economic and environmental outcomes.

1.8 Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation have a cooperative partnership with mana whenua and ensure the screen production industry will follow cultural practices in areas of cultural significance, and protect and use sensitive information as communicated.
Our commitment to fostering collaborative working relationships

1.9 Successful filmmaking and realising the potential benefits of filming for Auckland requires effective collaboration - between the screen industry, Auckland Council and members of the wider council organisation, the local community, local businesses, and stakeholders. Screen Auckland undertakes to:

- foster cooperative and collaborative relationships between all parties;
- build awareness and foster mutual understanding between the respective parties.

Our expectations of the screen industry

1.10 Auckland Council’s support of the screen production industry is based on the expectation that:

- Screen Auckland have received all relevant information concerning proposed shoots;
- the screen industry will maintain their side of the relationship by filming responsibly, within the limits of their film permit, and pursuant to this document.

Should a production company fail to do so, the film permit will become null and void in relation to that particular film shoot.
2 Section Two: A quick reference guide to filming in Auckland

The purpose of this section is to provide filmmakers with a quick overview of the processes and costs associated with filming in public spaces in the Auckland Region. Further detail relating to potential approval requirements can be found in Section Four of this document.

2.1 Obtaining consent to film

If you are filming in, on, or around public open space, public transport or roads you:

- are likely to need a film permit and / or a parking permit;
- will need a copy of the Auckland Film Protocol, and;
- need to be aware of your requirements as outlined in the Auckland Film Protocol.

A film permit gives production companies limited permission to occupy and use public open space and must ensure that the public are not overly inconvenienced.

Screen Auckland should be the first port of call for production companies seeking to film in Auckland. They act as a one stop shop for all filming enquiries, by seeking the necessary approvals on your behalf and acting as a “go between” for production companies and the required authorities. Screen Auckland will work to make sure that the film permit application process is as streamlined as possible.

Film permits are issued pursuant to Auckland’s plans, policies and bylaws and pending approval of relevant owners, managers and / or leaseholders of the proposed location such as Auckland Council, council controlled organisations and iwi. For example, all filming activities within the road corridor or public transport facilities require formal approval from Auckland Transport, a council controlled organisation of Auckland Council. In some areas there are other plans and rules in place that need to be considered. In the Wāitākere Ranges Heritage Area, the Wāitākere Ranges Heritage Area Act 2008 (WRHAA) will need to be taken into account when planning for and undertaking filming.

If you are filming on private property, you may still require parking permits for vehicles on the street or have other regulatory requirements that need to be met. The combination of the planned filming and the proposed location will determine what approvals are needed and the time it will take to obtain these.

Auckland’s volcanic cones (tūpuna maunga) come under the administration of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority (Tūpuna Maunga Authority). The Authority is independent of Auckland Council. A permit is required for any filming or commercial still photography on the maunga regardless of its nature or scale.

To ensure there is sufficient time for your application to film to be assessed by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority, contact Screen Auckland to discuss your project.
Screen Auckland provides the following facilitation services:

- issues film permits on behalf of Auckland Council once necessary approvals have been received;
- a coordinating role by acting on behalf of production companies to gain the necessary approvals and/or information from relevant members of the wider council organisation (including local boards) and impacted stakeholders;
- information and assistance relating to filming in Auckland;
- booking of locations and outdoor venues;
- quick turnaround for approvals;
- an advocacy service for the screen production industry;
- contacts and liaison with a range of services.

Before submitting an application, call the Screen Auckland film facilitation team to discuss your plans, our contact details can be found at [www.aucklandnz.com/film](http://www.aucklandnz.com/film). For larger or more complex shoots, it is often useful to have a pre-application meeting, **early on in the process**, to assess timeframes, likely regulatory requirements and the early identification of any potential problems.
2.2 Flowchart summarising the filming application process

1. Initial Enquiry
- Contact Screen Auckland – a Film Facilitator (FF) will assess the feasibility based on possible locations, dates and description of action.
- During pre-production or early feasibility stages, large or complex productions should arrange a meeting with Screen Auckland to discuss requirements.
- FF liaises with relevant council officers and authorities and advises of any known or foreseeable concerns.

2. Application
- A location manager or other relevant production staff applies to Screen Auckland for a permit to film and is required to complete an application form which can be found at www.aucklandnz.com/screen.
- Once the application form is completed and submitted along with the required supporting documentation, a FF acknowledges receipt of application within one working day and provides an early estimate of timeframes.
- FF to advise if any site or planning meetings need to take place prior to a decision being made.

3. Processing Applications
- FF issues the Initial Activity Proposal document, summarising the information supplied by the filmmaker to the appropriate council departments, local boards and external stakeholders for consideration.
- Relevant authorities and interested parties provide feedback / comments to FF.
- FF gives a cost estimate of additional services to the filmmakers and advises if a bond is required.
- FF liaises with filmmakers if it is envisaged that conditions need to be imposed on the film permit or amendments made to filming proposal.
- FF to advise filmmaker of outcome as soon as possible to allow time for mitigation or possible changes to proposed filming.

4. Issuing Permits
- FF advises filmmaker of approval as soon as possible and will supply written confirmation via email.
- Permit contains terms and conditions of approval such as filming dates and activities, approved parking arrangement and traffic management plans, and consultation requirements.

5. Shoot Day and Debrief
- The FF or council officers may undertake a site inspection.
- Location manager or production manager to have a copy of the permit to film and Auckland Film Protocol on site.
- Production to report a debrief of the shoot, including public reaction or if any damage of the location has occurred.
- The filmmaker, in consultation with FF, performs site remediation if required.
- If a portion of the bond is to be retained to repair damage the FF must advise the filmmakers of the reasons.
- If a bond was supplied and there is no damage, the FF must refund the bond.
2.3 Frequently Asked Questions

How do I get a permit to film?

You can find an application for a permit to film on the Screen Auckland website, www.aucklandnz.com/screen, or you can contact the Screen Auckland office to speak to a film facilitator first. You can also find a copy of the film permit application in Appendix one.

How long does it take to receive a permit?

Many of the film shoots can receive a permit within 3-5 working days from receipt of a complete application, depending on the impact and sensitivity of the location. Major impact filming can take significantly longer and so can getting permission to film in sensitive places or areas of public space that are run privately or through trusts.

Why are the time frames for filming so short?

Filming activities are often fast turnaround from concept to delivery. To keep filming in Auckland, in a competitive international market, film crews often have to work within short timeframes.

For very high impact shoots, such as those that require resource consents or road closures, timeframes are necessarily impacted on due to regulatory requirements. These are discussed in more detail in section 4 of this document.

What is public open space?

Any road, footpath, public square, grass verge, berm, public garden, reserve, park, beach, wharf, breakwater, ramp or pontoon, foreshore, dunes, access way, recreational ground or sports field that is owned or operated by Auckland Council.

What is Screen Auckland?

Screen Auckland is part of Auckland Tourism Events and Economic Development Limited (ATEED), which is a (Council Controlled Organisation) CCO of Auckland Council. Screen Auckland have delegated authority to issue permits to film on public open spaces throughout the Auckland Region once necessary approvals have been gained from relevant owners, managers and / or leaseholders of the proposed location. Screen Auckland is also an advocate for filming in Auckland and promotes the region as a filming location to the international market.

If I’m filming on private property do I need to tell Screen Auckland?

Yes we want to hear from you. As an advocate for the local film industry we need to ensure that impacts on communities are managed appropriately, and we can also let you know of other activity in the area that may affect your shoot; see section 3.5 for more information. Please note, if you require parking for technical vehicles a parking permit may be required.
Do the standard conditions for filming in Auckland apply to me if my shoot is low impact and doesn't require a film permit?
Yes, if you are filming in public open space you must comply with the standard conditions for filming in Auckland, even if your shoot is low impact and does not need a permit or has been granted a fee discount or waiver. These conditions help to limit inconvenience to neighbouring businesses and residents; helping to ensure the sustainability of filming in public spaces. See section 3, Screen Industry Code of Conduct, for more information.

I'm undertaking a recce, does the Auckland Film Protocol apply to me?
If you are undertaking a recce to assess the suitability of a location you must ensure that any activity associated with the recce is low impact. You must also ensure that you comply with Section three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct of the Auckland Film Protocol.

I'm planning a shoot for a school or university project, do I need to contact Screen Auckland?
Yes, if you are planning to film in a public place it's always best to give us a call beforehand to double check. If your equipment is hand-held only, the crew is small (fewer than nine) and you won't impede public access, at many locations you may not need a film permit. You will still need to comply with the Screen Industry Code of Conduct; see section 3 for more information.

What happens if I film without a permit or are in breach of permit conditions?
Filming in public places in Auckland is controlled under the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw. The size, impact and location of your shoot determines whether you need a permit to film, as set out in section 2.4 of this document. If a production is filming without a permit when it should have one, or is in breach of its permit, the shoot will be shut down and the production could be blacklisted from future filming in public spaces. The production could be charged a location fee after the shoot takes place, and may not be covered by any insurance that they have. In some cases Auckland Council may also use its powers under the Local Government Act 2002 to seize equipment or fine production companies for breaching permits, for more information see section 3.2 of this document.

If you are planning to film in a public place, contact Screen Auckland to discuss whether you require a permit.

When do I need a traffic management plan for filming?
A traffic management plan (TMP) is needed for any activity that inhibits the regular flow of traffic or involves filming within the road reserve. Your TMP must be drawn up by a certified traffic management company and approved by the Road Controlling Authority. Filming on footpaths and berms does not always need a TMP, this will depend on how filming impacts on safety and public access. Contact Screen Auckland for advice. If you are filming with a vehicle or wish to rig equipment to a
vehicle speak to a film facilitator who will be able to advise you of the best way to manage your shoot safely.

Why do I have to engage in consultation?
Filming can impact the day to day activities of businesses and residents and because public open space is for everyone, we need to ensure that you have properly informed those who may be affected.

It is in the interests of all parties that businesses and residents are treated with respect in order to ensure that filming in public spaces is sustainable for future shoots.

What if my shoot involves animals?
Production companies wishing to film animals in public places must comply with the Animal Management Act 1999 and need to be aware of the:

- Dog Management Bylaw which sets out rules around dogs in public places. For example, filming a dog off leash in some areas will require special permission or a temporary change to the bylaw, which can take time.
- Animal Management Bylaw which sets out rules around other animals in public place.

More information on bylaws can be found in section 3.3 of this document or on Auckland Council’s website.

How do I pay for my filming?
You will receive an invoice which can be paid via bank transfer. You will be notified if payment is to be made elsewhere.

How do I get a fee reduction?
Fees are assessed on a case-by-case basis. Talk to your film facilitator if your project is not-for-profit, or if it is charity or community based.

Can I remove street furniture for my shoot?
The removal of street furniture, including signs and the adjustment of street lighting, is permissible on a case-by-case basis. Any arrangement for this work must be made through Screen Auckland and all costs, including damage or reinstatement costs, have to be met by the production company.

How come someone else filmed here and I can’t?
Shoots are assessed on a case-by-case basis and Auckland is a living, breathing, changing environment. Many factors come into play when assessing feasibility of a location; these include impact, time of day, day of week, frequency of other activities in the area, civil works or other filming activity already taking place in the area.

What if my shoot involves stunts, firearms or special effects?
You are likely to be subject to additional levels of scrutiny, as described in section 4.9 of this document. You must ensure these risks are described and planned for in your application and safety documentation for the shoot. Note, filming involving stunts,

2 Go to www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz click on “Plans, policies, bylaws reports and projects”, click on “Our bylaws” then click on “Current bylaws”
firearms or fireworks are not likely to be approved for applications to film on the tūpuna maunga.

**What are the boundaries of the Auckland Region?**

The Auckland Region spans from Wellsford in the north to Pukekohe in the south. For a map of the Auckland Region go to the Auckland Council website www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz, click on “GeoMaps (GIS viewer)” in the “get it done online section”.

**Why have the production chosen a particular location?**

There are many variables as to why a location has been chosen. Briefs can be very specific and the requirements for the location have to balance the creative needs of the brief and the logistics of getting crew and equipment into the location.

Sometimes we deliver to an international market which requires specific looks to be believable for the viewer. For example, High St has a universal look that translates to a European/British/period cityscape. Bethells Beach has a unique look that cannot be found anywhere else in the world.

**What if my shoot involves a drone?**

If you plan to use a drone for commercial or organised filming in a public space you will need a film permit, even if you believe you are a low impact crew. If your shoot is going to make use of a camera on a drone alongside your other filming, make sure planned drone operations are included in your planning and application.

Depending on your location there may be additional requirements to work through to manage the use of the drone, which may include a requirement to use a spotter, traffic management plans and, or in some areas the drone operator will have to be required to have part 102 certification from the Civil Aviation Authority. In some locations the use of a drone may need to consider and manage the potential impact of drones on native species such as birds.

To get a permit to film using a drone, your public liability certificate must show that you have insurance for the use of a drone – this means you need aviation cover.

**What should I do if I have an enquiry about filming in my neighbourhood?**

If you have an enquiry about any aspect of filming activity in your neighbourhood please contact the Auckland Council Call Centre on 09 301 0101 – and ask to speak to a film facilitator or send an email to screen@aucklandnz.com and one of our film facilitators will get back to you.
2.4 Filming impacts and Auckland Council requirements

Table one provides an overall indication of council requirements as they relate to the scale of production. However, as each film shoot is assessed on a case-by-case basis, and acknowledging that what may be considered medium impact in one location could be deemed high impact in another; Table one should be read as a guide only.

All productions filming in public open space must comply with Section three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct, even if they are low impact and do not need a permit, or have been granted a fee waiver or are undertaking a recc.

Determination of impact is based on the total impact that the proposed shoots will have on a place and on public access to a place, which can differ based on the location chosen. The types of factors considered when determining impact include, but are not exclusive to:

- the number of people involved in the shoot;
- the location, including (but not exclusive to) whether it is an operational site, a sensitive natural environment, a site of significance to mana whenua, is on or near a heritage place, access to the site is difficult or the site is subject to specific controls in Auckland Council plans, policies or bylaws;
- time on site;
- the type of equipment and props being used on site (note any commercial or organised filming using a drone will require a permit to film);
- access requirements and impact on public access to the location;
- vehicles associated with filming.
### Table 1. Filming impacts - read as a guide only

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact on the public and consultation requirements</th>
<th>Low impact</th>
<th>Medium impact</th>
<th>High impact</th>
<th>Major impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No disruption is caused to council stakeholders, businesses, residents, motorists or other events in the vicinity. Immediate area consultation may be required.</td>
<td>Permit may be required</td>
<td>Permit required</td>
<td>Permit required – other consents may be required</td>
<td>Permit required – other consents may be required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic management (footpaths and roads)</td>
<td>No filming on roads or traffic management Footpaths and public walkways unblocked</td>
<td>Minimal traffic management required/ minor roads</td>
<td>Traffic management required, including LV road closures</td>
<td>Significant traffic management required/multiple roads or main roads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental</td>
<td>Assessment of the potential positive and negative impacts of filming on the environment and native species of flora and fauna will be determined depending on the location and a range of factors including, but not limited to, time of year, potential for cumulative effects, nature and scale of the proposed filming activity, time on site, the type of equipment and props being used and ability to mitigate or manage any effects.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

3 The guidelines set out in Table 1 do not apply to the Tūpuna Maunga Authority, separate guidance will be given to applicants upon inquiring about filming on Tūpuna Maunga.

4 Note for the purpose of this table trucks are defined as 3 tonne or over.
2.5 Filming fees and associated costs

The table below outlines the fees required for filming in public space managed by Auckland Council. Fees may be waived or discounts applied to low budget or student films, or for filming carried out for charitable or tourism purposes. Fees and other council charges are also subject to change.

Table 2. Fees for filming in public space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Low Impact</th>
<th>Medium Impact</th>
<th>High Impact</th>
<th>Major Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$0 - $50</td>
<td>$200 - $400</td>
<td>$400 - $800</td>
<td>$800 - $1600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Fees are shown in NZ$ and Inclusive of 15% GST)

There are likely to be other council charges relating to filming in Auckland’s public space. These charges may include, but are not necessarily limited to, costs related to resource consents and building compliance fees, parking permits, road closures and the hire of Council managed facilities. Bonds may also be required to cover any environmental or property damage with the costs dependent on the impact and location of the shoot.

Production companies will also be responsible for any costs associated with public notices, if required, engaging private companies for traffic management, resource consent applications or any other required service.

---

5 The fee structure outlined in Table 2 does not apply to filming on the Tūpuna maunga. The Tūpuna Maunga Authority have their own fee structure and discussion about fees will take place upon inquiry about filming on tūpuna maunga.
3 Section Three: Screen Industry Code of Conduct

Screen Auckland endorses this Auckland Council screen industry code of conduct. To ensure Auckland is a film friendly city in the long-term, it is essential to manage the impact of filming on our environment, local residents, businesses and commuters. Filming can create vibrancy in communities where locals are informed, engaged and sometimes even involved.

Locals that have had positive experiences of filming are much more likely to welcome screen production companies into their neighbourhood in the future. Conversely, a negative experience of filming can make it very difficult for production companies to gain the cooperation of locals in the future.

3.1 Standard conditions for filming activity in the Auckland Region
A film permit gives screen production companies limited permission to occupy and use public open space. Screen production companies must seek to limit inconvenience to neighbouring businesses and residents to ensure the sustainability of filming in public spaces. Screen Auckland’s permitting process seeks to ensure that this happens through the conditions of the film permit which incorporate standard conditions as outlined below, and any site specific conditions that are developed on a case by case basis.

The location manager, production manager, producer, or organiser, as appropriate, must have a copy of the permit to film on site along with the Auckland Film Protocol and be familiar with the requirements of the protocol.

Outlined below are standard conditions for filming activity in the Auckland Region. Please note that these conditions apply to recce’s as well as film shoots.

An overview of the standard conditions for the use of Auckland Council Parks, Reserves, Squares, Streets or Facilities may also apply and can be found in section 4.3 of this document.

3.4.23.1.1 Hours and days of filming
Filming activity that generates any kind of noise or light disturbance will need to comply with the standards set out in the Auckland Unitary Plan or Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan, as discussed in sections 3.1.5 and 4.7.3 of this document. In consideration of affected stakeholders and landholders, the following provisions also relate to the hours and days of filming:

- **In City centre retail areas** – Where possible, filming to occur in the weekend and ideally before 10am and after 5pm on Saturday or before 11am and after 4pm on Sunday. In the four weeks preceding Christmas, filming will be restricted to before 10am and after 5pm on Saturdays and before 11am and after 4pm on Sundays only. Exceptions may be made for productions that can wait for longer than the standard 3-5 working days for a decision on their application, but this will be determined in consultation with the relevant business association.
- **In retail areas outside of the City centre** – Where possible, filming is to occur outside of business hours OR at traditionally quiet times as determined in consultation with the local businesses association. Film facilitators can assist making the appropriate contacts.

- **In all retail areas** – Filming to avoid key retail areas on the week preceding Christmas, and to refrain from filming on Mother’s Day and Father’s Day as determined in consultation with without the express consent of the local business association or the local board should no local business association exist.

- **In all business areas** – Where possible, filming to avoid times of high pedestrian and commuter traffic i.e. the beginning and end of the working day. These times may vary depending on the nature of the local business.

- **In high use parks and reserves** – Filming is typically restricted to weekdays, apart from quiet times of the year as agreed with the parks department.

- **In residential areas and places of accommodation businesses** – Filming activity that generates any kind of lighting or noise disturbance must comply with noise and lighting standards set out in the Auckland Unitary Plan or Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan and should set up no earlier than 6.00am on a weekday and 7.00am on a weekend, and finish no later than 10pm on a weekday or 11pm on the weekend.

- **Night shoots** – If you are planning a night shoot, please contact Screen Auckland to discuss options such as pre-setting, appropriate locations and approvals.

### Parking and loading

Unless expressly permitted otherwise, parking and loading arrangements for filming are as follows:

- **Minimise on street parking** – On street parking should be minimised as much as possible and access maintained for crucial residential and business deliveries. Screen Auckland will assess approve the final numbers on a case by case basis.

- **Essential vehicles** – Essential vehicles (i.e. equipment and/or large vehicles) to be parked legally and with the relevant permits. Where possible, essential vehicles to be parked in front of buildings that are either vacant or closed during the hours of filming activity.

- **Crew and cast vehicles** – Crew and cast vehicles and other non-essential vehicles are prohibited from car park spaces required for retail customers or users of other neighbouring facilities such as community centres, libraries, sports facilities, schools etc.

- **All vehicles to be parked legally** – All vehicles associated with the filming activity must be parked legally e.g. facing the correct way, not on yellow lines etc.

- **Maintaining access to loading zones** – Access to loading zones for the purposes of servicing and delivering goods to and from local businesses must be maintained.

- **Use of loading zones** – During restricted times, production companies to use loading zones for the purposes of delivering or collecting goods for no longer than the times specified on signage (generally no longer than 5 minutes).

Production companies seeking to reserve specific parking areas for essential vehicles are likely to require film parking permits, see sections 4.2.1 and 4.2.2 for further information.

---

6 Unless expressly permitted otherwise refers to express permissions granted by affected stakeholders. Just who those stakeholders are depends on the location and impacts of the film shoot. Screen Auckland can advise.
3.4.43.1.3 Public pedestrian access
Unless expressly permitted otherwise, pedestrian arrangements for filming are required as follows:

- **Use of location / production assistants** – Location Assistants to be used to keep the public informed of the filming activity and escort them through the filming area.

- **Maintenance of pedestrian passage** – Pedestrian passage to be maintained through the public space the filming activity is occurring on and crew and cast to keep a low profile. On occasion productions can ask pedestrians to hold from walking through a shot for a maximum of two – five minutes depending on the location and the accessibility to alternative routes. Locations with high pedestrian traffic are likely to be restricted.

- **Modification of pedestrian passage** – Minor modifications to pedestrian passage to be developed in conjunction with Screen Auckland and affected stakeholders if required. In the case of a footpath closure or detour route, a TMP drawn up by a certified traffic management company must be supplied.

- **Access to doorways** – Unrestricted access to doorways to be maintained.

- **Wheelchair access** – The filming activity allows for the needs of wheelchair users to move through the public space and/or safely access an appropriate detour.

3.4.53.1.4 Filming activity on roads
Any filming-related activity that changes or is likely to change the normal use of a road will require a TMP which must be drawn up by a certified traffic management company and must be approved by Auckland Transport. A TMP must ensure the following:

- **Traffic Impacts** – The operation and safety of the transport network is maintained.

- **Maintaining vehicle access** – Access to residences, businesses and recreational areas are maintained.

- **Business deliveries and servicing** – Crucial deliveries and business servicing can occur.

- Filming on any of Auckland's cycle-ways may not require a TMP, but specific health and safety precautions will be required.

3.4.63.1.5 Noise and lighting
The Auckland Unitary Plan and the Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan include noise and lighting provisions designed to manage their effects. Noise and lighting should be kept to a minimum before 7am and after 10pm Monday to Saturday and before 9am and after 6pm on a Sunday. Production companies must comply with Auckland Unitary Plan noise levels and with the requirements of the Resource Management Act 1991.

In some locations production companies will also need to consider the impact that noise and lighting may have on wildlife such as native birds. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on in the process if this is likely to be a requirement of their desired location and:

- will work with the production company and appropriate stakeholders to plan for and manage these effects;
• or to identify an alternative location if the effects cannot be appropriately managed.

Production companies are also required to use blimped generators in locations when noise is likely to impact on adjacent parties e.g. cafes with outdoor seating. Screen Auckland will be able to advise.

3.4.73.1.6 Health and safety responsibilities

Health and Safety in New Zealand workplaces is regulated by the Health & Safety at Work Act 2015, which promotes health and safety management in the workplace and focuses on the prevention of harm to employees at work.

Film crews must comply with:

- the requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015
- the ScreenSafe Health and Safety Guidelines
- guidance on best-practice processes for the engagement of crew in the New Zealand screen production industry as outlined in the 2017 Blue Book
- any specific health and safety requirements or instructions set out in, or issued in conjunction with, your film permit.

It is the responsibility of production companies to ensure that public safety is not compromised as a result of their filming activity. As part of your application for a film permit you will be required to provide a site specific Health and Safety Plan, see section 4.6.1 for more information.

3.4.83.1.7 Removal of rubbish and returning a site to its original condition

It is the responsibility of production companies to ensure that any area associated with the filming activity is returned to its original condition, including the removal of all signs and waste. The removal and disposal of all rubbish must take place immediately after the filming activity.

Auckland has set a goal of being zero waste by 2040 and we expect film crews to play their part by minimising waste and using zero waste practices. It is encouraged that all filming activities provide the necessary waste facilities for separation of waste streams (organic, recyclables, landfill and paper/card); with clear and appropriate signage and that relevant service providers are used to ensure maximum diversion of waste from landfill. To minimize waste accumulation, consider the productions procurement for example, avoiding single serve items when catering (such as plates and cutlery). More detail can be found in section 3.9 of this document. Where electrical or hazardous materials are used, these items are to be disposed of responsibly through facilities that divert waste streams from landfill.

For more information on how to dispose of a range of items and materials responsibly please use Auckland Council’s online Recycling Search Tool.

---

7 http://screensafe.co.nz/guidelines/
9 Go to https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz click on “rubbish and recycling”, then click on “how to get rid of unwanted items.”
3.4.93.18 Communication and consultation

Production companies carrying out filming activity must communicate with residents, businesses and any other parties affected by the activity. What this communication involves depends on the scale and location of the filming activity as outlined below:

- **Minimum requirements** – As a minimum requirement, production companies should deliver a flyer to each residence or business in the affected area. The flyer should contain the following information and be approved by a Screen Auckland Film Facilitator prior to its distribution:
  - the name of the activity;
  - the name of the organiser;
  - the general nature of the activity;
  - the duration of the activity including set up and pack down periods;
  - the location managers contact details before and on the day of the event - including mobile phone numbers;
  - Auckland Council’s contact centre phone number: 09 301 0101;
  - in some cases a parking plan or site map might be required.

- **Notice required for medium impact shoots** – Medium impact film shoots must give affected residents at least 48 hours’ notice and businesses at least two working days.

- **Notice required for high to major impact shoots** – High and major impact film shoots must give affected residents at least 48 hours’ notice, unless access to their properties will be affected in which case 5 days is required. Affected businesses require 5 working days’ notice and their feedback must be sought.

- **Road closures** – There is a legislative process that needs to be followed for a road closure which involves two public notices, as discussed in section 4.1.2 of this document, in printed news media to inform the public about the road closure. This needs to be actioned at least 12 working days before the proposed date of the road closure, and the production company are responsible for notifying affected businesses and residents at this time also. Longer lead times are recommended for traditionally busy periods such as Easter, Anzac Day and Christmas. Information about planned road closures is also available on Auckland Transport’s website [https://at.govt.nz/road-works-disruptions](https://at.govt.nz/road-works-disruptions).

- **In City centre retail areas** – Face to face consultation with businesses is required for medium to major impact filming in City centre retail areas. This must be carried out at least 5 working days prior to the filming activity and involve delivering flyers to the business in person, recording the name of individuals and businesses consulted with, and recording their initial feedback. Productions are requested to incorporate feedback from businesses wherever possible, and supply this to Screen Auckland.

3.2 Compliance with relevant plans, policies, bylaws, and rules

Production companies must comply with Auckland Council. There are a number of plans, policies, bylaws, and rules in relation to conduct in public open space that production companies, like everybody else, are required to adhere to. These include, but are not limited to, alcohol bans, animal control, vehicles on beaches, signage rules and smokefree areas.

Maintaining responsible and positive behaviour when filming in public open space is important to ensure ongoing access to these locations.
Production companies planning to use signage, including directional signage such as location arrows, should also make themselves aware of the Signage Bylaw in place throughout the region, and any relevant Unitary Plan rules relating to signage. Up-to-date information concerning council plans, policies and bylaws can be found on Auckland Council’s website\(^{10}\) and on the Auckland Transport website\(^{11}\), or Screen Auckland can advise.

3.3 Compliance with the Auckland Film Protocol and film permit conditions

Full compliance with the Auckland Film Protocol and the conditions of the film permit is expected. If a production company fails to comply with Auckland Council policy, plans or bylaws, with the Auckland Film Protocol or the conditions of a film permit:

- the shoot will be shut down and the production could be blacklisted from future filming in public spaces in Auckland for a period of up to three months;
- the production company could be charged a location fee after the shoot takes place;
- the production may not be covered by any insurance that they have;
- equipment could be seized\(^{12}\);
- the production company could be fined up to $20,000\(^{13}\).

Production companies must ensure that they understand permit conditions and that all filming activities are conducted in accordance with these conditions. Auckland Council will monitor filming activity at its discretion, particularly for filming in sensitive areas and those considered to have a high or major impact. Production companies must follow any directions given by staff of Auckland Council or staff of the wider council organisation.

3.4 Filming potentially offensive material

The filming of content injurious to the public good may be subject to additional levels of scrutiny to ensure consistency with council’s legal and policy obligations. Production companies filming content for television commercials that may be considered socially or environmentally irresponsible should consult the Advertising Standards Authorities website\(^{14}\).

3.5 Filming on private premises

Production companies using private businesses or residences for film shoots should be aware of the Auckland Film Protocol, the requirements of the Auckland Unitary Plan and the need to be respectful of adjacent businesses and residents, particularly with regards to on-street parking, lighting, noise and the use of public open space. When filming on private premises, it is recommended that the production company

---

\(^{10}\) Go to [www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz) click on “Plans, policies bylaws, reports and projects”

\(^{11}\) Go to [www.at.govt.nz](http://www.at.govt.nz) click on “about us” then click on “bylaws”

\(^{12}\) Council may seize or impound equipment under section 164 of the Local Government Act 2002

\(^{13}\) Council may prosecute breaches of a film permit under section 242 of the Local Government Act 2002

\(^{14}\) [http://www.asa.co.nz/](http://www.asa.co.nz/)
speaks to Screen Auckland first as they may be aware of activities and issues in the public spaces immediately adjacent to the premises that can assist with the planning of the filming activity.

Other things for production companies to keep in mind:

- that the managing agent or the owner of the premise agrees to the filming;
- the degree to which the premise has been used for filming in the past, the potential impact on neighbours due to the high use of technical vehicles in the vicinity, and how best to mitigate this;
- that all parking requirements are able to be met (remembering that Auckland Transport is the only agency entitled to issue parking permits);
- that electric power can be supplied or there is a possibility of connection to existing networks.

Screen Auckland welcomes discussions with private property owners on how they can work together in the best interests of production companies and local communities.

3.6 Using local businesses

Productions are urged to use local businesses for catering and supply. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the necessary contacts for the local business association.

3.7 Smokefree Areas

In accordance with the Auckland Council Smokefree Policy, many public places in Auckland, including parks and reserves, plazas and squares, public beaches and public transport facilities are designated as smokefree areas. Up-to-date information on which public places are now smokefree can be found on Auckland Council’s website.15

3.8 Filming in sensitive areas and the management of cumulative effects

Depending on the impact and the nature of the film shoot, some communities may be particularly sensitive to filming impacts. This could be due to the cumulative effects of frequent filming and/or events in the area, bad experiences with film crews or concerns about a community’s media image and how they have been portrayed in the past. Screen Auckland will inform production companies if this is the case for their desired location as soon as possible, and will work with production companies to identify ways of addressing local concerns or accessing alternative sites.

3.9 Protecting sensitive natural environments

Auckland’s natural environment provides stunning locations and is a key reason for filming here. The many different natural environments across Auckland - our harbours, beaches and islands, our maunga, forests, streams and parks - are places

15 Go to www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz, click on "Plans, policies, bylaws, reports and projects" then click on "Our policies" and then click on "Smokefree policy"
of importance to Aucklanders. It’s important to Aucklanders that Auckland’s natural environment is treated with respect.

The film permit process will need to consider and plan for the potential impact on natural environments. This will take into account a range of factors including, but not limited to, location, the time of year, nature and scale of the proposed filming activity, time on site, the type of equipment and props being used, potential for cumulative effects, and ability to mitigate and or manage any effects.

Some parts of the Auckland Region contain sensitive natural environments which may be more easily damaged by external factors. In some areas roadways, parking and formed paths are restricted and production crews will need to take care to avoid damage to native flora and natural features. When filming in sensitive natural environments, such as around sensitive dune systems or wetland areas, it is essential that film crews work in a manner that protects such environments. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on in the process if their desired location is considered sensitive and will facilitate discussions with appropriate stakeholders and the production company on what can be done to protect these environments. Further information on filming on beaches and in the coastal marine area is provided in section 4.3.6.

3.10 Environmental sustainability

To protect the local environment it is necessary for production companies to minimise the environmental impacts of filming operations and preserve local biodiversity.

Consider how crew and cast can travel to and from the film location and whether public transport, buses/shuttles and or ridesharing can be utilised and promoted. Look for opportunities to reduce greenhouse gas emissions by effective fleet management and energy efficient electrical equipment.

One way to minimise your impact on the environment is to reduce the amount of waste produced during filming. Auckland has set a goal of being zero waste by 2040 and we expect film crews to play their part by minimising waste and using zero waste practices. Make decisions about set design, wardrobe and make-up that incorporates a sustainable approach. Look for opportunities to reuse, repurpose or recycle materials, such as props and costumes used during the production. Prevent unnecessary water usage and minimise any noise and air pollution.

Minimise and manage waste to reduce waste to landfill. Look for opportunities to reduce waste from the outset – consider if it is possible to substitute something that causes waste with something that doesn’t. For example, can single use disposables like plastic water bottles and plastic cups be replaced with reusable alternatives? If not, are there recyclable or compostable options that would avoid items being sent to landfill. Set up waste systems to separate different waste streams (organic, recyclable, landfill, paper and card); to manage and reduce the amount of waste going to landfill.

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
### 3.11 Protecting Auckland's historic heritage

When filming on or near historic heritage places, such as an archaeological site or historic building, it is essential that film crews work in a manner that protects these places. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on if their desired location is on or near a historic heritage place and will facilitate discussions with appropriate stakeholders and the production company on what can be done to protect these places and mitigate any risks to historic heritage.

Consultation with mana whenua and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga may be required.

### 3.12 Protecting our native species

New Zealand’s geographic isolation means we have many unique native plants, birds and animals some of which are classified as endangered species. Filming in some location will need to consider, plan for, and manage the negative effects that filming may have on our native species. Depending on the proposed filming activities, filming may be restricted in some locations at some times of year, such as breeding and nesting periods. Filming in some locations will be subject to conditions to ensure film activity does not negatively impact on native species. Screen Auckland will inform production companies early on in the process if this is likely to be a consideration at their desired location and:

- will work with the production company and appropriate stakeholders to plan for and manage these effects;
- or to identify an alternative location if the effects cannot be appropriately managed.

Introduced weeds, pests and pathogens, like kauri dieback and myrtle rust, pose a threat to our native species. To manage the spread of pests and protect our native species Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits, in accordance with the Regional Pest Management Plan or in response to emerging threats. Production companies must comply with any conditions, guidelines, or approved procedures set out in or issued in conjunction with your film permit.

### 3.13 Going the extra mile

To maintain a sustainable industry, it is important that local residents, communities, iwi and businesses have a positive experience of filming. For example, for businesses this could be increased custom through production companies using their products or services, or promotion of their business in the film shoot or credits. For local residents this could be through giving back to the community by providing entertainment in the local park. Engaging with the community and iwi is also a good way to understand the local environment and community dynamics you have chosen to film in and can add value to your filming project.

Some other ideas on how screen production companies could ‘give back’ to communities they are filming in are listed below:
• communities often like to see their local area represented on film. If the film project is something that will be screened in New Zealand, inform local residents and businesses of this and consider ways of letting people know when and where it will be screening. Alternatively, send them a copy of the finished product;
• acknowledging local communities and organisations in the credits;
• donate to local schools or community organisations;
• carry out promotional filming for affected areas (for example conservation or heritage areas);
• consider how local iwi can benefit and be recognised such as opportunities to refer to the history of an area, provide employment, use correct Māori names for sites and acknowledge these in the credits;
• invite locals to work as extras;
• consider the possibility of work experience opportunities.

3.14 Insurance requirements
Those undertaking filming activity on Auckland’s open spaces will likely require public liability insurance to cover any damages done to council property, private property or serious accidents caused by the filming activity. If you will be using a drone during filming, your public liability insurance will need to include an aviation clause and you will need to list the pilot and aircraft details. Please contact Screen Auckland for further information.

3.15 Concerns about filming
If you wish to make an enquiry about any aspect of filming activity in your neighbourhood please contact the Auckland Council Call Centre on 09 301 0101 – and ask to speak to a film facilitator or send an email to screen@aucklandnz.com and one of our film facilitators will get back to you.
4 Section Four: The approval process in detail

The fourth section of this document provides further detail on the approval processes associated with filming as they relate to the different functions of the wider council organisation. This includes:

- traffic management;
- parking essential vehicles;
- filming on parks and reserves;
- filming on other properties owned by Auckland Council or Council Controlled Organisations;
- filming on public transport or public transport facilities;
- health and safety considerations;
- heritage considerations;
- resource consent considerations;
- building consent considerations;
- special effects, stunts and firearms.

4.1 Traffic management

Any filming-related activity that changes or is likely to change the normal use of a road will require a TMP to be prepared by a certified traffic management company and approved by the road controlling authority. Depending on the impact filming has on the normal use of the road you may also need to apply for a temporary road closure.

Costs of traffic management planning and implementation, including the cost of public notices, if required, are the responsibility of the production.

In most cases in Auckland the road controlling authority will be Auckland Transport, a council controlled organisation of Auckland Council. Auckland Transport is responsible for all of Auckland’s public roads (except motorways and state highways), footpaths and parking.

4.1.1 Roads controlled by the New Zealand Transport Agency

In some cases the road controlling authority will be the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZ Transport Agency). The NZ Transport Agency is responsible for the management of all motorways, state highways, over-bridges, on-ramps and off-ramps in Auckland. Screen Auckland can assist with identifying the appropriate contacts in the NZ Transport Agency.
4.1.2 Applying for a temporary road closure
If you need to close part or all of a road, you will need to apply for permission from Auckland Transport and there is legal requirement\(^\text{16}\) for two public notices to be placed in printed news media to inform the public about the road closure.

Screen Auckland needs at least 12 working days’ notice to book the two required public notices in the printed news media. Longer lead times are recommended for traditionally busy periods such as Easter, Anzac Day and Christmas. At the time of writing, the cost for the two public notices came to approximately NZ$1000. The costs associated with public notices are the responsibility of the production.

4.1.3 Developing a traffic management plan
Auckland Transport can provide guidance as to the level of TMP required for filming in different road environments, however it is the responsibility of the production company to source the necessary assistance to develop one.

Traffic management equipment (cones, barriers, signs etc.) can only be deployed by a suitably qualified person. In most cases this will be a Site Traffic Management Supervisor level 1 (STMS LV 1) or STMS LV2/3 for level 2 roads which carry 10,000 vehicles per day or higher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3. Traffic management plan approval timeframes for suburban streets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Suburban streets</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Low impact (e.g. footpath closure)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision reached within 3-5 working days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medium impact (e.g. lane closure)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision reached within 3-5 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>High impact (e.g. road closure)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision reached within 12 working days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.4 Cost of developing a traffic management plan
The cost of developing traffic management plans and their implementation during filming can vary considerably and escalate quickly depending on the complexities of the proposed location and the filming scenario. To ensure a good outcome, anyone considering filming on main roads must establish if the location is feasible in the early stages of location scouting. Contact Screen Auckland for preliminary advice on the proposed location and approach a qualified traffic management provider for an early indication of costs.

\(^{16}\) Under the Local Government Act 1974

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
4.2 Parking essential vehicles

A screen production company parking essential vehicles in the street should send a parking plan to Screen Auckland for them to assess and advise on where best to park these vehicles. As part of the assessment, Screen Auckland will consider how much pressure has been placed on parking in the proposed area, and alternatives that may have less impact on any affected businesses or local residents. Parking plans will receive a response within 1-2 working days.

4.2.1 Film parking permits (non-enforceable)

Production companies seeking to reserve specific parking areas for essential vehicles are likely to require film parking permits. These allow permit trucks essential vehicles to park on a defined part of a road when necessary.

Film parking permits allow a production to place cones within the road reserve to temporarily reserve an area prior to vehicles arriving onsite, but do not give permit holders the power to tow other vehicles parked in the permit area. As a courtesy, permit holders should notify businesses and residents in the immediate area via a letter drop or door knocking at least 48 hours in advance. Production companies may also want to consider having a marshal on site to politely advise people of the permitted parking area. Film parking permits take around 2-3 working days to be approved and additional charges for use of parking spaces may apply in some areas.

Please note these permits may not be used for crew or cast vehicles.

Film parking permits are not available for use in loading zones, bus stops or in public time restricted parking areas where parking is restricted to 30 minutes or less.

As the process of reserving parking spaces involves working within the road corridor, it is a health and safety requirement that any staff undertaking this activity have been briefed on the operational requirements of the Screen Auckland Reserved Parking document (SARP) and the applicant has signed the SARP TMP.

Screen Auckland can assist film production companies to apply for film parking permits.

4.2.2 Temporary parking resolutions (enforceable)

Temporary parking resolutions are a short-term legal designation to change existing parking restrictions in a specified area. Temporary parking resolutions should only be considered where the public needs to be excluded from an area for safety or signe lines or there is genuinely no alternative parking available for essential vehicles. Timeframes associated with temporary parking resolutions are generally not as favourable as those for film parking permits. Vehicles can legally be towed from the areas designated by temporary parking resolutions, however this should be a last resort as the standard notification procedures of letter drops and door knocking in adjacent buildings should have alerted most people to moving their vehicles.
The Traffic Control Committee has delegation for the approval of parking resolutions. The Traffic Control Committee meets every second Friday to consider applications. Applications must be submitted at least 12 working days before each meeting.  

4.2.3 Parking essential vehicles legally
It is a legal requirement that vehicles are parked facing the right way (i.e. not facing oncoming traffic), and are not parked over driveways, footpaths or berms.

4.3 Filming on parks, reserves and other public open space
Auckland Council manages more than 4000 parks and reserves. These parks vary from small local neighbourhood open spaces and sports parks, to iconic premier parks like Auckland Domain (Pukekawa), and conservation areas such as the Wāitakere Ranges. They may be coastal reserves, volcanic cones or homes to popular playgrounds. Information concerning parks and reserves can be found on Auckland Council’s website, and Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist with finding suitable parks, reserves and other public open space (such as squares and plazas) for filming.

Landowner approval is required to film on any park or reserve, and permission will depend on natural, cultural, landscape and recreational values being adequately protected. In the Wāitakere Ranges Heritage Area, the Wāitakere Ranges Heritage Area Act 2008 will need to be taken into account by landowners when considering filming applications. Production companies granted permission to film in the Wāitakere Ranges Heritage Area will need to ensure that filming activities comply with the requirements of the WRHA. Further information about the WRHA is included in the Key New Zealand Legislation section of this document. A number of plans exist in relation to public spaces within Auckland, such as the Tūpuna Maunga Integrated Management Plan and park specific management plans like the Auckland Domain Masterplan, and the Tāmaki Drive Masterplan, and these will be taken into account by landowners when considering filming applications. Filming in high use parks and reserves is typically restricted to weekdays, apart from quiet times of year.

Iwi are key landholders of Auckland’s parks and reserves and council recognises that Māori have a special cultural and spiritual relationship with the land.

4.3.1 Filming on Auckland’s tūpuna maunga (volcanic cones)
In July 2014, Government passed legislation to provide Treaty of Waitangi redress for the shared interests of 13 Auckland iwi and hapū in relation to 14 tūpuna maunga (ancestral mountains, also referred to as Auckland’s volcanic cones), motu (islands) and land within Tāmaki Makaurau (Auckland).

Auckland’s volcanic cones (tūpuna maunga) come under the administration of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority (Tūpuna Maunga Authority). The Authority is independent of Auckland Council.

\footnote{The 12 days allows Auckland Transport staff to draft the appropriate resolutions and place the application on the agenda.}
Under the terms of the settlement, the tūpuna maunga are vested in mana whenua, public access is maintained, each maunga will remain a reserve, and the council will continue to be responsible for the routine management of the maunga, under the direction of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority.

The tūpuna maunga sites, and in particular the tihi (summit), are considered tapu (sacred) and regard is given to this when considering applications to film on the tūpuna maunga. All commercial filming on the maunga requires the approval of the Tūpuna Maunga Authority. Screen Auckland facilitates all requests for approval to film on the tūpuna maunga. Each application is assessed on a case-by-case basis in relation to the objectives and policies that apply to the tūpuna maunga and proposed content. Approval to film will be subject to conditions and restrictions set by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority.

Application costs, timeframes, approval processes and location fees for filming on maunga vary depending on the scale and impact of filming. Locations which are in higher demand will be subject to higher location fees. A bond may be required; the bond is fully refundable on confirmation that all conditions associated with the approval have been satisfactorily met.

Screen Auckland can provide further information and advice around requests for approval to film on maunga, including timeframes and fees. To ensure you have sufficient time for your application to film to be assessed by the Tūpuna Maunga Authority, contact Screen Auckland to discuss your project. More information on the Tūpuna Maunga Authority can be found at www.maunga.nz.

4.3.2 Regional parks
There are 27 regional parks in the Auckland Region with beautiful beaches, bush, wildlife and recreational opportunities galore. Responsible filming activity on regional parks is welcome, however due to the unique and sensitive nature of regional parks, contact Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team who can assist with the feasibility of using regional parks for your filming activity.

4.3.3 Parks and reserves not managed by Auckland Council
The Department of Conservation (DOC) are responsible for the management of some parks and reserves, such as Rangitoto Island and Cornwall Park is managed by the Cornwall Park Trust Board. These parties have different processes, fees and requirements. In cases where Screen Auckland does not issue film permits for a particular park, the film facilitation team can assist applicants with making the appropriate contacts within these organisations.

Watercare is a Council Controlled Organisation that provides water and wastewater services to the Auckland Region and is responsible for a number of dams, waterways and treatment plants dotted throughout Auckland’s parks. Screen Auckland will be able to advise if your proposed shoot encroaches on Watercare property. Further

---

19 For more information about the Tūpuna Maunga Authority, and to read the Tūpuna Maunga Integrated Management Plan, go to www.maunga.nz.
information on filming on Watercare property can be found in section 4.4.3 of this document.

4.3.4 Kauri dieback
Kauri are a native tree and are considered a national treasure; a Jurassic age species they can grow to more than 50 metres tall and can live for well over a thousand years.

Kauri dieback disease is killing kauri trees in the Auckland Region and threatens kauri with extinction. The kauri dieback disease is caused by a soilborne pathogen that is long-lived, invisible to the eye and can be spread by as little as a pinhead of infected soil or mud being tracked from one area to another. There is currently no cure for kauri dieback.

If you are granted a permit to film in a regional park where kauri are present your conditions of consent will require you to follow approved hygiene procedures, including a requirement to clean gear, tyres and footwear before and after filming on a reserve or a park. These requirements are to help prevent the spread of the disease.

More information on kauri dieback and on how to avoid spreading the disease can be found on the Auckland Council website10 or at www.kauridieback.co.nz.

Some areas managed by Auckland Council, including at the time of writing, the forested area of the Waitākere Ranges and some parts of the Hunua Ranges Regional Park, have been closed to prevent further spread of kauri dieback and protect kauri. Up-to-date information on local and regional parks, reserves and public tracks areas which have been closed can be found on Auckland Council’s website19.

Screen Auckland can also provide you with further guidance about areas which are closed and will work with production companies to identify an alternative site if your preferred location has been closed to protect kauri.

4.3.5 Managing the risk of damage to parks
Conditions may be imposed on any parkland use agreement to protect the park environment, for the health, safety and wellbeing of the visitor, or to facilitate park operations. In general conditions relate to:

- the location of the activity;
- the duration of the activity;
- the time of day and year the activity may be undertaken;
- the number of people who may participate;
- the use of park facilities and services;
- measures for mitigating adverse effects on the environment, natural and heritage resources, existing users and the general public;
- health and safety factors;
- reinstatement requirements;
- measures for monitoring the effects of the activity;

10 Go to http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz then click on “environment”, then “plants and animals”, then “pests and weeds”, then “protect our kauri trees”
any modifications / alterations to the proposed activity and associated infrastructure;

the review of the approval and/or any conditions imposed.

Bonds are often required when filming on parks and reserves, and council strongly recommends that production companies have contingency plans as it is possible that a park may become unavailable due to wet ground conditions.

4.3.6 Filming on beaches and in the coastal marine area

Due to the unique and sensitive nature of Auckland's coastal environment proposals for filming activity on beaches and in the coastal marine area are subject to higher degrees of scrutiny which are likely to impact on filming timeframes.

Any impacts caused by filming on beaches must be adequately mitigated.

All filming activity on the foreshore or on the water is subject to compliance with the Auckland Unitary Plan and the relevant bylaws as discussed in section 3.2 and 4.8 of this document.

Council must also give effect to Policy 20(1) of the New Zealand Coastal Policy statement that relates to vehicles on beaches. This policy states:

(1) Control use of vehicles, apart from emergency vehicles, on beaches, foreshore, seabed and adjacent public land where:

(a) damage to dune or other geological systems and processes; or

(b) harm to ecological systems or to indigenous flora and fauna, for example marine mammal and bird habitats or breeding areas and shellfish beds; or

(c) danger to other beach users; or

(d) disturbance of the peaceful enjoyment of the beach environment; or

(e) damage to historic heritage; or

(f) damage to the habitats of fisheries resources of significance to customary, commercial or recreational users; or

(g) damage to sites of significance to tangata whenua; might result.

Council regulates vehicles on beaches to ensure legitimate and necessary access is identified and protected but unnecessary, damaging and dangerous use is prevented. If you intend to use vehicles on a beach you will need written permission from Auckland Council. If granted permission to use vehicles on a beach, production companies must only use designated access ways to the beach and may not access the foredune area or top of the dune. Successful filming proposals that involve the use of vehicles on beaches will be subject to extra conditions to ensure that:

- where possible the use of vehicles is avoided;
- the number of vehicles allowed under the permit conditions is the minimum necessary;
- vehicle use is highly controlled so as to prevent environmental damage and to protect public safety;
- all additional health and safety obligations are met;

---

20 Auckland Council Public Safety and Nuisance Bylaw

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
members of the public who are witness to the film shoot are made aware, that a permit is required, of the conditions of the shoot and the controls placed upon it.

Screen Auckland, through regular communication with council’s parks team and with respect to Policy 20(1), can advise which beaches are most suitable to accommodate each filming proposal’s particular requirements.

4.3.7 Filming on the water
The Auckland Harbormaster’s office, a unit of Auckland Transport, is responsible for ensuring maritime safety on all navigable waters within the Auckland Region.

If you plan to film on or in the water, you must inform Screen Auckland. If filming affects the normal operation of other recreational or commercial vessels or water users in an area where you plan to film the Harbormaster will need to be notified and, depending on the level of disruption, the approval of the Harbormaster may be required.

Filming which takes place on navigable waters within Auckland, including rivers, streams, lakes and harbours, must comply with Maritime rules and Auckland Council navigation safety bylaws. If proposed filming does not comply with a navigational bylaw you may apply to the Harbormaster for an uplift of a bylaw or apply to temporarily reserve water space for an activity. Exemptions will be determined on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the effects on navigation safety with respect to the activity.

4.3.8 Filming on other council owned open space
Typical conditions for filming on public open space that are not parks include:

- no vehicles are permitted to drive or park on grass or pedestrian areas without prior written approval from council;
- nothing may be fixed or attached to trees or heritage items without prior written approval from council;
- structures generally need to be freestanding;
- earthworks are not permitted without prior written approval from council;
- all equipment must be stored tidily and cable ramps must be used for pedestrian safety when cables cross footpaths and pedestrian use areas.

4.3.9 Timeframes for filming on parks and other council owned open space
Depending on impact, most applications can be turned around within 3 to 5 working days. This may be slightly longer for film shoots on regional parks or high impact shoots in high use areas. Major impact filming can take significantly longer as it is likely to require pre-application meetings, site visits and extensive consultation. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.
4.3.10 Helicopters

If you plan to use a helicopter when filming you will need to obtain permission, except in an emergency, to pick up or drop-off an item or person and to land or take-off from a public place (including parks and beaches21).

You will also need to comply with New Zealand civil aviation rules, the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 and with the Auckland Unitary Plan and Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan. Under some circumstances you may require a resource consent, for example, if you exceed noise levels in the Auckland Unitary Plan when landing or taking-off. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.

4.3.11 Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (drones)

If you plan to use a remotely piloted aircraft system (RPAS), also known as, unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs), unmanned aircraft systems (UAS) or as drones, when filming anywhere in Auckland you must comply with New Zealand civil aviation rules and you must advise Screen Auckland.

New Zealand civil aviation rules require you to obtain the approval of a landowner, including private landowners, to operate a drone over their land. You will need permission to use a drone over public space, maunga, roads or footpaths, or over any property or building owned or managed by Auckland Council or a Council Controlled Organisation, for commercial purposes such as filming. If you intend to use a drone for commercial or organised filming in a public open space you will need a permit and as part of the permit process Screen Auckland can assist with obtaining landowner permission to use a drone for commercial purposes.

Using drones for commercial and organised filming can pose a risk to our native species and other animals and can result in risks to or concern from other users of public open space and neighbouring properties. Production companies must ensure that drones are used safely and must be respectful of wildlife, members of the public, and other users of the open space when using a drone.

In some locations and or during some times of year the use of drones may be restricted to avoid harm to native species such as birds.

Please note: Auckland Council Regional Parks, Auckland Transport and Panuku Development Auckland22 only grant permission to film, over or around properties that they manage, for commercial purposes to operators of drones with Part 102 certification from the Civil Aviation Authority. Part 102 certification may be required in local parks and other areas of public open space.

Once permission to use a drone for commercial or organised filming in a public open space has been obtained, you must be aware of and must:

- comply with all New Zealand civil aviation rules and requirements regarding the use of drones. Further information on New Zealand civil aviation rules can be found at https://www.caa.govt.nz/rpas/. Note that some areas in Auckland are “controlled

---

21 Auckland Council Public Safety and Nuisance Bylaw
22 If granted permission to use a drone for filming over a property managed by Panuku Development Auckland you may be required to use an approved drone operator
airspace" and specific restrictions apply to these areas. For further information on controlled airspace see https://www.airshare.co.nz/maps.

- be courteous to and respect the privacy of other users, comply with Auckland Council bylaws and with any other conditions or guidelines issued by Auckland Council or a Council Controlled Organisation in relation to the use of a drone.

- comply with Auckland Council’s Code of conduct for use of drones and UAVs. The requirements of the Code of conduct include, but are not limited to, drones must not:
  - operate within 20 metres of or be flown over other users of the park;
  - fly over or within 50 metres of livestock on parks, sensitive wildlife habitats such as wetlands, or nesting or roosting birds;
  - fly over adjoining private properties.

A full copy of the Code of conduct for use of drones and UAVs can be found at https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/code-of-conduct-use-drones-uavs.aspx.

Where native birds are present at a film location, permission to film may be subject to additional conditions to ensure the potential impact of drone use is managed and production companies should:

- abandon contact at the first sign of any bird being disturbed;
- land drones at a safe distance away if a bird circles or otherwise interacts with a drone in flight;
- be aware that it is an offence under the Wildlife Act 1953 to disturb or harm protected birds.

### 4.4 Filming on or in other properties and buildings owned by Auckland Council or Council Controlled Organisations

Auckland Council, either directly or through Council Controlled Organisations, own and/or manage a number of properties and buildings that may at times be of interest to the screen production industry. Properties directly owned and managed by Auckland Council include a number of community centres, halls, swimming pools and libraries.

Other spaces are managed by council controlled organisations, for example spaces such as stadiums, and MOTAT are managed by Regional Facilities Auckland while the waterfront and a number of commercial properties are managed by Panuku Development Auckland. These assets are subject to a variety of different governance structures and as such have different processes, timeframes and prices relating to filming. However, as the Auckland Council film protocol is a council-wide protocol, there is an expectation that all areas of the wider council organisation adhere to the film-friendly objectives and core commitments of this document, and will cooperate with filming requests whenever possible.

If you are unsure who manages the property you are interested in filming on, or want to film on properties directly managed by Auckland Council, Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist with applying to film in or on all these facilities.

---

For a list of the properties managed by Regional Facilities Auckland, go to Regional Facilities Auckland’s website [http://www.rfa.co.nz](http://www.rfa.co.nz) click on “Information, then on “RFA Facilities”.

---

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
4.4.1 Filming on the city waterfront and other properties managed by Panuku Development Auckland

Much of the land on Auckland’s city based waterfront is owned and managed by Panuku Development Auckland, a council controlled organisation. Panuku Development Auckland welcomes filming and has experience working with Screen Auckland and the screen production industry, however, due to local industry operating in the area, filming may not always be possible on some sites. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.

Panuku Development Auckland also manages a range of other properties across Auckland and applications to film on these properties will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

Depending on impact, applications for filming on Panuku Development Auckland can usually be turned around in 3 to 5 working days. However, in the case of high impact film shoots, timeframes can be significantly longer.

Additional charges will apply for filming on property that isn’t openly accessible to the public, contact Screen Auckland for further information.

4.4.2 Ports of Auckland

Ports of Auckland are part of a Council Controlled Organisation and own and operate out of a number of sites on Auckland’s waterfront including Princes, Marsden and Captain Cook Wharves.

Ports of Auckland may consider are open to filming requests but there are significant operational and safety issues that need to be considered. Anyone wishing to film should contact the Port to discuss their project at an early stage, and each proposal will be considered on a case by case basis. Charges for filming will vary according to the scale and nature of the project. Further information can be found on the Ports of Auckland website.

4.4.3 Watercare

Watercare is a Council Controlled Organisation that provides water and wastewater services to the Auckland Region, and is responsible for a number of dams, waterways and treatment plants dotted throughout Auckland. Some of these areas are open to the public, and others are subject to high degrees of security.

Watercare are open to filming requests and are committed to a co-operative working relationship with Screen Auckland, but have significant health and safety and liability concerns that need to be satisfied in order for filming to go ahead on their property.

Production companies are encouraged to approach Screen Auckland in the first instance, who may be able to use their experience to assist with making an approach to Watercare that addresses these concerns. In instances where Watercare is

24 http://pouli.co.nz/media/filming-permit

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
unable to accommodate a request for filming, Screen Auckland will work with production companies to identify an alternative site.

Depending on impact, applications for filming on Watercare property will normally be turned around in 10 working days. In the case of high to major impact film shoots, this can be significantly longer. Charges for filming on Watercare property will be confirmed on application.

4.5 Filming on public transport and public transport facilities

Auckland Transport has experience working with screen production companies and Screen Auckland, and can assist with filming in or on buses, bus stops, trains and train stations. Any filming activity at a public transport facility or on public transport infrastructure such as trains, buses, ferries, rail stations, bus terminals, bus stops and wharves will require formal approval from Auckland Transport. Many Aucklanders rely on public transport to get to and from work and school and to travel around Auckland; making reliable public transport services critical. Normal public transport operations and customer movements should not be interrupted by filming activity.

There are many potential hazards when filming in and around public transport and specific permits are required that identify these health and safety considerations.

4.5.1 Filming on buses

The procedure and timeframes for filming on buses varies depending on type and impact. For media style minor impact filming on scheduled urban services, production companies can contact the media liaison team within Auckland Transport and sometimes approval can be turned around within one working day.

Scheduled filming activity of a low, medium or high impact will need to occur on hired buses and production companies should contact the bus company directly to arrange this; contact details are available on the Auckland Transport website.25 Unless the filming activity occurring on the bus is carried out entirely on private land, the production company will need to talk to Screen Auckland about film permitting requirements including traffic management. If filming is carried out entirely on public land, film permits can generally be turned around within 3 to 5 working days. However, screen production companies should give two weeks’ notice to allow for liaison between bus operators and Auckland Transport.

Filming activity that will disrupt the public transport network can take up to one month to allow for planning meetings, site visits and passenger communication.

4.5.2 Filming on trains

Screen production companies seeking to film on trains should contact Screen Auckland in the first instance. Screen Auckland will work with Auckland Transport to consider filming requests.

Depending on impact and associated health and safety issues, lead in time for filming on trains can vary dramatically. To film on trains screen production companies will require permits from Auckland Transport and Transdev26; for this reason three weeks are required to process applications. Filming proposals that require a large crew or will have a high impact on regular train operations will take longer to process. Screen Auckland will do their best to signal to production companies how long their application will take to process at the outset.

4.5.3 Filming in public transport facilities
Any filming in a bus or train station, ferry terminal or on footpaths in or around bus stops train stations or ferry terminals requires a film permit and will incur costs. In these areas, safety considerations are paramount and production companies can expect conditions that reflect this (such as crew having to wear high visibility vests). You should allow at least 10 working days for your application to be processed.

4.5.4 Costs
Auckland Transport may seek reimbursement for direct costs, related to disruptions to the public transport network and access to public transport facilities. For example, for costs associated with Transport Ambassadors, where major bus stop relocations are required, and security staff.

4.6 Health and safety considerations
Health and Safety in New Zealand workplaces is regulated by the Health & Safety at Work Act 2015, which promotes health and safety management in the workplace and focuses on the prevention of harm to employees at work. The Health and Safety at Work Act applies to international productions while they are working in New Zealand.

Everyone has a role to play in making sure New Zealand workplaces are safe and healthy. Your obligations, under the Health and Safety at Work Act, will depend on your role in the production process, including the amount of control and influence you have over any particular aspect of the project. The more senior your role or the more influence you have, the more responsibility you will have for ensuring the safety of yourself and others.

In addition to the requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015, all film crews must comply with the ScreenSafe Health and Safety Guidelines and guidance on best-practice processes for the engagement of crew in the New Zealand screen production industry as outlined in the 2017 Blue Book and Auckland Council bylaws.

You will also be required to comply with any specific health and safety requirements or instructions set out in, or issued in conjunction with, your film permit.

4.6.1 Site specific health and safety plan
As part of your application for a film permit you will be required to provide Screen Auckland with a site specific health and safety plan and general crew safety notes for

---

26 Transdev operate passenger rail services on behalf of Auckland Transport, delivering approximately 3,300 services each week and over 20 million annual passenger journeys.
review. Your site specific health and safety plan should be submitted to Screen Auckland at the same time as your application for a film permit. Where this is not possible you must provide your site specific health and safety plan to Screen Auckland at least 3 working days prior to your intended date of filming. Under some circumstances and only by agreement with Screen Auckland, it may be possible to submit your site specific health and safety plan to Screen Auckland a minimum of 2 working days prior to your intended date of filming.

The level of site specific health and safety plan required and the timeframe for review will vary depending on your activity proposal and proposed location. Some sites, such as closed landfills which are now used as parks, are considered higher risk than other sites. Higher risk sites may be subject to additional conditions and requirements; for example a site induction may also be necessary and this will require additional time. When developing your site specific health and safety plan, you should consider key risk areas such as cabling, structures, towers, stunts and use of hazardous substances.

To ensure you have sufficient time for your site specific health and safety plan to be reviewed contact Screen Auckland for preliminary advice.

A film permit will not be issued without a reviewed site specific health and safety plan.

4.7 Heritage considerations

Historic heritage reinforces our sense of history, belonging, identity and place. Historic heritage places are likely to have specific restrictions on their use that may impact on timeframes and costs. This will be pointed out by Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team at the point of initial inquiry, and assistance will be given to mitigate effects or locate an alternative site if necessary.

Historic heritage places can include historic buildings, archaeological sites, places of significance to Māori and notable trees. Some historic heritage places are protected by legislation27. Some historic heritage places are protected in the Auckland Unitary Plan28.

Depending on the nature of the proposal, resource consent may be required for filming on sites protected in the Auckland Unitary Plan. An Authority from Heritage New Zealand may be required for proposals that take place on archaeological sites. Information on places protected in the Auckland Unitary Plan can be found on the Auckland Council website29. The types of issues for filmmakers to consider in relation to sites that are significant to Māori include, but are not necessarily limited to:

- the use of indigenous knowledge and any reference to iwi;
- misuse or misappropriation of iwi history, stories or legends;

27 All pre-1900 archaeological sites, recorded and unrecorded, are protected by the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.
28 For example, in the Historic Heritage Schedule (Schedule 14.1) and the Sites and Places of Significance to Mana Whenua Schedule (Schedule 12).
29 Go to [www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/heritage](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/heritage)
- inappropriate representation or use of culturally significant images or sites; this can include, but is not limited to, the subject of filming or the depiction of the site (e.g. digitally adapting the appearance of a site in a way that is considered inappropriate).
- use of culturally significant sites including maunga, marae and places included in the Sites and Places of Significance to Mana Whenua schedule in the Auckland Unitary Plan.

### 4.8 Resource consent considerations

Due to the often temporary nature of filming, a resource consent is not usually required to carry out filming within Auckland. However, filming projects involving the long-term use of the same site are much more likely to require a resource consent.

Resource consent criteria are currently determined by the Auckland Unitary Plan and the Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan. Go to the Auckland Council website to view the Auckland Unitary Plan and the Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan maps and other information[^30].

Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist with providing contact details for planning staff who have experience working with the screen production industry.

#### 4.8.1 Filming as a temporary activity

The length of time filming can occur without a resource consent currently varies depending on the area. Please see Table 5 for a summary. Contact Screen Auckland for further information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Areas of the Auckland Region</th>
<th>Length of time filming can occur without a resource consent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auckland Region (except the Hauraki Gulf Islands)</td>
<td>Up to, and including, thirty consecutive days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiheke Island</td>
<td>Up to five days, including the time required for establishing and removing all temporary buildings and structures associated with the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Barrier Island</td>
<td>Up to six days. Temporary buildings and structures associated with filming may not occupy the venue for more than 14 days, including the time required for establishing and removing all temporary buildings and structures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[^30]: Go to [https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz](https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz) click on "Plans, polices, bylaws, reports and projects", then click on either "The Auckland Unitary Plan" or on the "Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan" to read the plans or view the relevant planning maps.
4.8.2 Filming as a permanent activity
In principle, filming is permitted to take place as a permanent activity within some areas of the Auckland Region. It is important to note however, that this is subject to the ability to meet with a range of other requirements in the Auckland Unitary Plan. If you are considering filming on a semi-permanent or permanent basis from a specific site, please contact council at the earliest opportunity to discuss potential constraints and consent requirements. Screen Auckland can assist with putting you in touch with the appropriate contact.

4.8.3 Possible triggers for resource consents
The following site-related issues are likely to trigger the need for a resource consent:
- excessive lighting;
- excessive noise;
- excessive earthworks;
- removal of protected vegetation;
- close proximity to the coast or other waterbodies;
- close proximity to residential zones;
- inadequate carparking capacity;
- absence of a loading bay;
- the amount of traffic generated;
- heritage related issues;
- hours of operation;
- exceeding the days for a temporary activity or other standards that apply to permitted activities.

4.8.4 Timeframe and cost implications for resource consent applications
If an applicant does require a resource consent to film, council advises that they should engage a planning consultant to assist with their application. Having a pre-application meeting with relevant stakeholders is also strongly advised, as this will greatly increase the likelihood of a thorough application being lodged from the outset and being processed as efficiently as possible. Assuming the application is complete, the council undertakes to assess resource consent applications within 20 working days. Council planners will be able to provide a more specific undertaking of processing timeframes and processing costs at a pre-application meeting or at the time of application, once they have become familiar with the proposal.

If the resource consent needs to be notified, the timeframe increases significantly to 70 or more working days.

Non-notified and relatively simple resource consent applications typically cost $4000 to $6000. Note, resource consent charges include GST and are subject to change. This cost represents the council charges relating to the processing of a resource consent. It does not include charges incurred for the use of external planning consultants by applicants or the payment of development contributions, if these are
required. A pre-application meeting is the most efficient way of reducing processing costs. If a resource consent requires notification, this cost can increase significantly.

Visit Auckland Council’s website for application forms and more information on resource consents, including up-to-date information about council charges\(^3\).

4.9 Building consent considerations

Auckland Council recognises the uniqueness of the screen production industry and its building requirements which frequently have an ill fit with the requirements of the Building Act 2004.

In order to assist the screen industry, Auckland Council may, at its discretion and within its statutory powers as defined in schedule 1, clause (2) of the Building Act 2004, exempt particular temporary film sets from requiring building consents.

4.9.1 Definition of temporary film set

For the purposes of this policy, a ‘temporary film set’ is defined as:

> “a building or buildings erected solely to facilitate filming (including but not limited to facades, fences, lean-tos, shed’s, cottages, and other similar building work), that are not intended for permanent use or occupation”.

Any person undertaking building works outside the specific “temporary film set” building works defined in this policy must obtain either an exemption from building consent or a full building consent prior to commencing the works.

4.9.2 Temporary film sets in place for ten days or less

Application for an exemption from building consent is not required for the first ten days of a “temporary film set” being in place (including the commencement of the building work and the deconstruction of the set/wrap out), provided they meet the following criteria:

- the building work meets the definition of “temporary film set” and is on private property; or;
- the building work meets the definition of “temporary film set,” is on public open space and less than five metres in height and secure and isolated from the public during this period.

\(^3\) [http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz](http://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz) click on “building and consents”, then on “The building and consents process”, then on “Apply for a consent”, then either click on “Apply for a building consent” for further information on building consent fees, or on “Apply for a resource consent” for further information on resource consent fees.
4.9.3 All other temporary film sets
All other “temporary film sets” are required to apply to Auckland Council for an
exemption from building consent. Applications for an exemption from building consent
will be processed by Auckland Council as a matter of priority within two to three
working days providing the engineer involved with the project submits a Producer
Statement.

Screen production companies can expect the outcome of the application to be
favourable in the case of temporary film sets that meet the following criteria.

- any building work that meets the definition of “temporary film set” and is on private
  property;
- any building work that meets the definition of “temporary film set,” is on public open
  space, less than five metres in height and secure and isolated from the public.

If Auckland Council refuses to grant an exemption, which will generally be based on
the scale and/or permanence of the building work, the applicant will be required to
obtain building consent and must not commence works until consent has been
granted. Council’s statutory timeframe for processing building consents is 20 working
days.

4.9.4 Multiple temporary film sets built in a secure film studio space
Production companies planning on building multiple temporary film sets in a secure
film studio space should inform council so discussions can be had on how to provide
an efficient service.

4.9.5 Costs
At the time of writing, it costs $453 to apply for a building consent exemption. It costs
between $788 and $6348 to apply for a building consent, depending on the value and
complexity of the building project. Any further charges are based on an hourly rate of
$105 to $198 per hour. Note, building consent fees quoted include GST and are
subject to change. Visit Auckland Council’s website for application forms and more
information on building consents, including up-to-date information about council
charges.

4.9.6 Important notes - Please note:

- For the purposes of this policy, Auckland Council considers that the provisions of the
  Health and Safety at Work Act 2015, and the insurance requirements of each
  individual operator or Film Production Company, are relevant to the extent that they
  require the company to act lawfully.
- A structural engineering overview for the proposed construction is advisable where the
  size or complexity of set construction warrants it.
- Film production companies will still need to seek approval from landowners (public or
  private) to construct film sets on their land. In the case of filming on private property, if
  an application for an exemption or building consent is required only the landowner or
  their agent can be the applicant. In the case of filming in public open space within
  Auckland, this will be managed through Screen Auckland’s film permitting process.
4.10 Planning for additional requirements – The use of special effects, firearms and stunts

Screen production companies intending to use special effects (including weather effects and any type of pyrotechnic) or firearms, or seeking to perform stunts involving vehicles, will be subject to additional levels of scrutiny which has the potential to impact on timeframes. In some instances, further consultation with the fire service and police will be required, as well as a site specific health and safety plan. Screen Auckland will be able to advise in the first instance.

Assessment of permit applications where special effects are planned will also consider the potential impact on the environment and wildlife. This may mean that it is not possible to use special effects in some locations or that usage in some locations may be restricted during certain times of the year.

4.10.1 Pyrotechnics

The New Zealand Fire Service has a number of requirements relating to the use of pyrotechnics and should be contacted by the screen production company as early as possible. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the appropriate contact within the fire service.

4.10.2 Weather effects

Wet downs, rain and snow effects may be carried out with the permission of the landowner. Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team can assist you with seeking landowner permission. Where permission is granted to use these types of special effects, they must be undertaken in a safe and ecologically friendly way to ensure that the environment and wildlife are protected from any harmful effects.

When using these types of special effects production companies must:

- avoid sensitive environmental areas;
- use biodegradable non-toxic products, except by agreement with Screen Auckland;
- consider weather and wind conditions when designing and executing these effects;
- ensure the containment, clean-up and removal of all products used for this purpose.

Auckland Council may place additional conditions on film permits where these types of special effects are being used during filming. Screen Auckland can also work with council to facilitate the responsible use of public water for this purpose.

4.10.3 Firearms

The New Zealand Police has a number of requirements relating to the use of firearms for the purposes of filming, including the use of a certified armourer, and should be contacted by the screen production company as early as possible. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the appropriate contact within the police.
4.10.4 Stunts using vehicles
New Zealand Police has a number of requirements relating to the use of stunt vehicles (such as in car crash scenes), including the use of certified stunt drivers. The screen production company should contact the police as early as possible to discuss planned stunts. Screen Auckland may be able to assist with making the appropriate contact within the police.

4.10.5 Stunts with a “copy cat” risk
In order to avoid people copying stunts carried out for screen production purposes, Screen Auckland’s film facilitation team will be able to assist with identifying locations where the risk of “copy cats” occurring is reduced.
5 Glossary

Building consent - Council permission to carry out building work that it considers will comply with the Building Code provided the work is completed in accordance with the plans and specifications submitted with the building consent application.

Bylaw – A rule made by a local authority that requires people, when in a public place, to either do something (e.g. get permission to film in a public place) or not do something (e.g. recklessly fly a drone).

City Centre – This term refers to the city centre of Auckland (also sometimes referred to as the CBD, Central Business District and Central Area). This is the area that falls within the urban motorway system and the harbour edge.

Council-controlled organisation (CCO) – A CCO is a company or organisation in which one or more local authorities control 50 per cent of more of the directors (or trustees) of the company or organisation.

Hauraki Gulf Islands District Plan – the rulebook for how council manages the use of natural and physical resources of the Hauraki Gulf Islands. The Plan contains policies and rules for activities and development on the islands.

Essential vehicles – vehicles used for the purpose of the filming activity rather than just transport, such as lighting, camera, generator, department trucks, vans and or utes.

Filming - The act or period of photographing moving images, be it digitally, on tape, or on film stock, for broadcast on television, in movie theatres or for internal, corporate, educational or private use.

Film permit/permit – Permission to carry out filming activity within the Auckland Region. Film permits are subject to conditions.

Location Assistants - assistant to the Location Manager, hired to be on-set at all times before, during and after the filming activity takes place. Location assistants are there to liaise with the public, direct the crew where to park and set-up, and ultimately to make sure the crew and cast are making as minimal impact on the location as possible.

Rece - ‘Rece’ is a military term borrowed by the industry to mean a pre-filming visit to a location, to assess the suitability of the location in terms of logistical and technical issues.

Resource consent – Council permission to carry out an activity that is restricted or controlled by the rules set out in the Auckland Unitary Plan and Hauraki Gulf Islands district plan. Resource consents are subject to conditions.

Screen Auckland Reserved Parking document (SARP) - This document outlines the operational requirements for film productions who wish to reserve...
parking areas for film activities within the road corridor across the Auckland region.

**Traffic management plan or TMP** – is a plan for managing temporary changes to traffic (including pedestrian) flows.

**Unitary plan** – The Auckland Unitary Plan is the rulebook for how Auckland’s natural and physical resources are used. The Unitary Plan contains rules around how different areas in Auckland may be used, including what type of activities you can use land or buildings for temporarily or on a permanent basis.
6 Related policies, publications and websites

Economic Development Strategy
Auckland’s economic development strategy sets out a vision for an economy that delivers opportunity and prosperity for all Aucklanders and New Zealand. To deliver this Auckland needs to have an internationally competitive, prosperous economy that all Aucklanders can benefit from and participate in. Auckland’s Economic Development Strategy sets out the tangible steps we will follow to make this happen.


Screen Auckland website
Screen Auckland’s objective is to ensure the screen industry’s production experience in and around the Auckland Region is seamless. They are the first point of contact for the screen production industry, and can assist with identifying locations and tapping into Auckland and New Zealand’s vast network of experienced and innovative Film Industry professionals.

www.aucklandnz.com/screen

New Zealand Film Commission
New Zealand Film Commission is New Zealand’s national film office, providing information, introductions and support to filmmakers, both internationally and nationally.

www.filmnz.com

ScreenSafe
ScreenSafe supports and promotes health and safety in the New Zealand Screen Sector. ScreenSafe is an industry-wide collaborative effort with backing from the New Zealand Film Commission, New Zealand On Air and Screen Production and Development Association along with other guilds, industry bodies and regional film offices.

http://screensafe.co.nz/

WorkSafe
WorkSafe is New Zealand’s primary workplace health and safety regulator. WorkSafe provides a range of information and guidance about health and safety requirements in New Zealand.

https://worksafe.govt.nz/
Civil Aviation Authority
The Civil Aviation Authority regulates civil aviation in New Zealand. If you undertaking aerial filming, then you must comply with CAA regulations. The CAA checks that these rules are being complied with and have the power to take action if they are not. The CAA also monitors safety and security performance throughout the aviation community so that they can direct safety efforts where they are needed most. The CAA also produce safety publications and run safety seminars for the aviation community.

https://www.caa.govt.nz/

The Advertising Standards Authority
The Advertising Standards Authority is an industry funded organisation supporting standards in advertising; it provides a range of guidance notes and codes of practice. Its prime function is to self-regulate advertising in New Zealand.

http://www.asa.co.nz/

The Broadcasting Standards Authority
The Broadcasting Standards Authority is an independent Crown entity responsible for overseeing the broadcasting standards regime in New Zealand. It provides a range of guidance and information about broadcasting standards in New Zealand.

https://bsa.govt.nz/

Department of Conservation – filming on public conservation land
To film anything for commercial purposes on public conservation land you must be granted a concession from the Department of Conservation (DOC). Further information on the concession application process, timeframes, costs and the DOC Code of Practice for film crews undertaking activities on public conservation land is available on the DOC website.


Heritage New Zealand
Heritage New Zealand has responsibilities for archaeological sites under the Heritage NZ Pouhere Taonga Act 2014. Archaeological sites are defined as any place in New Zealand including any building or structure that was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900. Modification of an archaeological site is prohibited, unless permission is obtained from Heritage NZ.

http://www.heritage.org.nz/
7  Key New Zealand Legislation

The New Zealand Legislation website - www.legislation.govt.nz - is the official government website and provides free access to up-to-date electronic versions of New Zealand legislation. Click on the hyperlinks below to directly access an Act, or go to the website and use the easy search engine to find the legislation you are looking for.

The following list sets out key legislation referred to in this document. The list is provided for information only and is not a complete or inclusive list of legislation that you should be aware of when filming in New Zealand.

**Animal Welfare Act 1999** - sets out the obligation of animal owners or people in charge of animals to meet an animal’s physical, health, and behavioural needs, and alleviate pain or distress.

**Building Act 2004** - sets out the rules for the construction, alteration, demolition and maintenance of new and existing buildings and structures in New Zealand.

**Dog Control Act 1996** – provides the framework under which councils regulate the control of dogs in their area including where dogs may be exercised off-leash, where dogs must be kept on a leash and where dogs are prohibited.

**Employment Relations Act 2000** - provides the legal framework for all relationships between employees, employers and unions.

**Health and Safety at Work Act 2015** - is New Zealand’s workplace health and safety law. Breaches of the Health and Safety at Work Act are investigated and enforced by WorkSafe New Zealand.

**Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014** - promotes the identification, protection, preservation, and conservation of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand.

**Local Government Act 2002** - provides the framework and powers under which councils operate; including enabling councils to make and enforce bylaws to protect the public from nuisance, to protect, promote and maintain public health and safety, and to minimise the potential for offensive behaviour in public places.

**Local Government Act 1974** – enables the temporary closure of a road for the purpose of film-making or events.

**Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009** – established Auckland Council and sets out matters, in relation to Auckland Council’s structure, functions, duties and powers, that differ from those which apply generally to councils under the Local Government Act 2002.

**Maritime Transport Act 1994** - sets out the legal framework for maritime safety and protection of the marine environment. Allows councils to regulate, through a bylaw, certain activities for the purpose of ensuring maritime safety.
**Nga Mana Whenua o Tamaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014** – restored ownership of certain maunga and motu of Tamaki Makaurau, as part of a Treaty of Waitangi settlement, to Ngā Mana Whenua o Tamaki Makaurau (the collective group of the 13 iwi and hapū of Auckland). The Act also established the Tūpuna Maunga o Tamaki Makaurau Authority.

**Resource Management Act 1991** – regulates how the environment is managed. As well as managing air, soil, fresh water and coastal marine areas, the RMA regulates how and for what types of activities land may be used.

**Smoke-free Environments Act 1990** – regulates smoking in workplaces, on public transport, in cafes, restaurants and in certain public places. Regulates the marketing, advertising and promotion of tobacco products and the sponsorship by tobacco companies of products services and events.

**Waitākere Ranges Heritage Area Act 2008** - recognises the national, regional and local significance of the Waitākere Ranges Heritage Area and promotes the protection and enhancement of its heritage features for present and future generations. The objectives of the Act include to, but are not limited to:

- protect, restore and enhance the area for its heritage features;
- ensure that impacts on the area as a whole are considered when decisions are made affecting any part of it;
- to adopt a careful approach when considering decisions that threaten serious or irreversible damage to a heritage feature;
- to recognise and avoid adverse potential, or adverse cumulative, effects of activities on the area’s environment (including its amenity) or its heritage features;
- to maintain the quality and diversity of landscape in the area;
- to manage aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems in the area to protect and enhance indigenous habitat values, landscape values, and amenity values;
- to protect in perpetuity the natural and historic resources of the Waitākere Ranges Regional Park for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the people and communities of the Auckland Region and New Zealand.

**Wildlife Act 1953** - outlines the protection and control of wild animals and birds and the management of game.
8 Appendix One: Film permit application form

**Film permit application**

Before you start please make sure you have the following information before proceeding with an application:

- Planned location(s)
- Schedule information, planned filming dates
- Shoot information, a thorough knowledge of action being filmed including equipment to be used, crew and cast sizes
- Production details, on-set contacts, company information
- Supporting information such as traffic management plans, public liability or consultation plans
- During the processing of this application you will also be asked for a health and safety / risk management plan.

**Production title:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Production Type</th>
<th>Commercial</th>
<th>Music video</th>
<th>Online</th>
<th>Travel show</th>
<th>Other (please describe)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Special photography</td>
<td>Feature film</td>
<td>Web series</td>
<td>Short film</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate video</td>
<td>Student</td>
<td>Television series</td>
<td>Documentary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Location(s):**

- Film start date: Bump-in time: Film start time:
- Film finish date: Film finish time: Bump-out time:
- Contingency start date: Contingency finish date:

**Shoot selection (what kind of filming activity is planned):**

- On location filming
- Unit base only

**Description of the action being filmed:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of crew:</th>
<th>No. of talent:</th>
<th>No. of extras:</th>
<th>No. of client/agency:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☐ Yes</td>
<td>☐ No</td>
<td>☐ Yes</td>
<td>☐ No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Are you using any specific filming equipment other than a camera and tripod?

- Dolly and track, slider
- Camera crane
- Lighting e.g. LED, lights on stands
- Flare, sails, reflector boards
- Cherry picker, knuckle boom, scissor lift, crane

Any special effects such as rain, snow, haze, or wet down:

- ☐ Yes | ☐ No

Water access (action in/on sea, harbour or waterway):

- ☐ Yes | ☐ No

Use or appearance of fake weapons and/or violence, depiction of drug use, actor's impersonation of police officers or other emergency services or nudity:

- ☐ Yes | ☐ No

Any animals:

- ☐ Yes | ☐ No

Set dressing scenery of props:

- ☐ Yes | ☐ No

Security company name and contact (if applicable):

- ☐ Yes | ☐ No

Set construction required:

- ☐ Yes | ☐ No

---

Draft Auckland Film Protocol
If yes, please specify:
Fire effects, pyrotechnics, smoke effects, explosions:
- Yes
- No

If yes, please specify:
Use of a drone:
- Yes
- No
What model of drone/total weight if required:
Company/operator name:

Does the drone pilot have a Part 162:
- Yes
- No

If yes, please specify:
Use of aircraft (other than a drone) or helicopter:
- Yes
- No

If yes, please specify:
Music playback or noise disturbance e.g. amplified sound:
- Yes
- No

If yes, please specify:
Do you have a Health and Safety Specialist:
- Yes
- No
If yes, please provide company name, number and email:

If yes, please specify:
Gate or special access. E.g. bollard unlock, facility unlock e.g. toilets (please provide detail and show on your site map):
- Yes
- No

If yes, please specify:
Access start date: Access start time:
Access end date: Access end time:

Activity on the road e.g. tracking vehicles, moving cars, low loaders, picture vehicles:
- Yes
- No

Types and number of vehicles:
- Cars:
- Vans:
- Trucks:
- Buses:
- Utes:
- Portaloo:
- Other (please specify):

Are there any vehicles arriving or departing/other activity on or near the site between the hours of 10pm and 7am:
- Yes
- No

If yes, please specify:
Are there any business or residents nearby to your filming location:
- Yes
- No

If yes, please specify:
How are you planning on notifying affected parties:

Production company name:
Email for invoice:

Production company address:
Location Manager: Number: Email:
Key contact on set: Number: Email:
Producer: Number: Email:
Production Manager: Number: Email:

Please email application to your Film Facilitator or screen@aucklandnz.com along with the following supporting documents:
- Site map
- Parking plan
- Letter drop draft
- Traffic management plan (if applicable)
- Health and safety risk management plan
- Drone operator certifications and variations
- Public liability insurance certificates
Waitematā Local Board
20 August 2019

Small Print Terms & Conditions

9. Indemnity

In consideration of the grant of approval to use Auckland Council’s facilities for the activity, the organiser shall indemnify Auckland Council and its CCOS against all costs, losses, claims, liabilities, proceedings, damages and expenses incurred and any loss or damage suffered by Auckland Council arising by reason of, or in connection with, the organiser’s breach or non-performance of any obligations under any of these conditions, or a statute or regulation.

10. Contacts

Prior to the activity, the organiser shall ensure that they provide to Screen Auckland, the name and mobile phone number of a contact person onsite on the day of the activity.

11. Noise & Lighting

Noise and lighting should be kept to a minimum after 10pm and before 7am and must comply with the Auckland Unitary Plan noise levels and the requirements of the noise provisions of the Resource Management Act 1991. Failure to do so will potentially result in the filming activity being shut down or an infringement fine being issued.

12. Electricity

Where electricity is being used for an activity, the organiser shall utilise the services of a registered electrician to undertake the electrical work. All electrical equipment used must be in good and safe working order.

13. Compliance with Council Rules and Legislation

The film permit provides the organiser with limited permission to occupy public land for the approved purpose. The organiser is responsible for ensuring that all activities comply with the requirements of the Auckland Unitary Plan and various bylaws including, but not limited to the Trading & Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015 and the Public Safety & Residence Bylaw 2013.

14. Compliance with Directions

The organiser shall ensure that all participants immediately comply with any instructions or directions issued by NZ Police, Auckland Transport, Auckland Council officers or Worksafe NZ officers in the execution of their duties.

15. Access to Properties

The organiser shall ensure that access and egress for residents, businesses and emergency vehicles are available at all times, that the public is not unduly inconvenienced, and that public and private access lanes are kept clear at all times.

16. Responsibility for Equipment

All equipment and structures used must be in good, safe working order. Following completion of the approved activity, the organiser shall remove all temporary structures, road markings, signs, rubbish bins, toilets, equipment, props or other structures or devices associated with the activity. Removal of such equipment shall take place immediately after the activity.

17. Responsibility for Clean Up

The organiser shall ensure that any area associated with the activity is left in a clean and tidy condition, including surrounding streets. The removal and disposal of all rubbish shall take place immediately after the activity.

18. No Damage to Property

The organiser shall ensure that all grounds, property, wildlife, stock, vegetation, buildings and other facilities are not damaged or unduly disturbed at any time during the activity or any set up or pack down period associated with it. Rectifying any damage to public property, caused by the approved activity, is payable by the production company. The organiser must employ Council approved contractors to rectify any damage caused and to reinstate any damaged property.

19. No Fixtures

The organiser shall ensure that nothing is fixed, hung or otherwise attached to any features of the Park Reserve, Square, Street or Facility (e.g. trees, street furniture, lamp-posts, etc.) without the prior consent of Auckland Council.

20. Documentation

The organiser shall ensure that a copy of the film permit is available at all times during the activity and any set up or pack down period associated with it.

21. No Identification of Location

The organiser shall ensure that filming within a public open space will not identify any Auckland Council locations, including but not limited to signs or logos, nor any uniquely identifiable physical or landscape aspect of the location.
22. Smoke Free
Auckland Council adopted a smoke-free policy in 2013 aimed at making public outdoor spaces smoke-free across the Auckland region. A smoking-free city is part of the Auckland Plan. It aligns with the government’s goal of becoming a smokefree nation by 2025. Further information can be found at: https://www.auckcouncil.govt.nz/plan-projects/policies-reports-briefs/our-policies-pages/smokefree-policy.aspx

23. Public Artwork
Incidental framing of public artwork is allowed as part of this permit. Interaction with any public art work is not approved with this permit and requires consultation and agreement with the artist.

24. Road Closures or Traffic Control
The organisation should apply for any necessary road closure or traffic control authorities in writing with adequate timetables as required by the relevant transport authorities prior to the activity taking place.

25. Public Transport
If an approved activity involves a Traffic Management Plan and/or the rerouting of buses and/or relocation of bus stops which may affect public transport, the organisation, through Screen Auckland, shall contact and consult with Auckland Transport and any other relevant stakeholders, with adequate timetables as required by the relevant transport authorities prior to the activity taking place.

26. Traffic Management Plan
The organisation shall provide a Traffic Management Plan with adequate timetables prior to the activity. The Traffic Management Plan shall include the location of all relevant structures, equipment, facilities, assembly areas, event or filming areas and other facilities, including (without limitation) CPTPM compliant signs and cones, marshals, vehicles, parking restrictions, road closure details and access for the disabled, emergency vehicles and public transport. Auckland Council, Auckland Transport and the Police may require further details to be included in the Traffic Management Plan. Further details shall be provided as soon as practicable after any such request.

27. Marshals
The organisation shall provide suitably qualified and identifiable marshals to the satisfaction of Police, Auckland Transport and Auckland Council.

28. Compliance with Law and with NZ Police Directions
The organisation shall ensure that all participants comply with all traffic laws, regulations and bylaws at all times during the activity and that all participants comply immediately with any instructions issued by the NZ Police, Auckland Transport or Auckland Council officers in the execution of their duties.

29. Traffic Control Measures
The organisation shall ensure at appropriate barricades, cones and signs are placed in accordance with the Traffic Management Plan. Such barriers, cones and signs shall be removed immediately after the activity.

30. Vehicle Movements
Filming activities fall within the category of specific temporary activities within the Auckland Unitary Plan 2016 Chapter E, rule E40. The organisation shall ensure that all participants comply with this at all times and in particular that (not exclusively) E40.4.1 (A10) & E40.6.2

31. Visibility
All crew to wear high visibility safety vests at all times around the road corridor.

32. Signage
The organisation is granted exemption to the Signage Bylaw 2015 as part of this permit, as per Part 1.7(a). This will allow the use of directional arrows that can be visible from the street, which may only be displayed with the use of pigtail or CPTPM compliant cones. These information arrows may only be placed on the footpath/beam and only used to indicate the direction to your location. This exemption does not permit any attachment of signage to any regulatory signs, nor are the signs to resemble the colour of any regulatory signage. All information arrows are to be no longer than 50cm in length.

33. Charges and Cancellations
The organisation shall pay Auckland Council, for the services of Auckland Tourism Events and Economic Development Limited (ATEED), an activity fee in respect of the activity permit to which these conditions are attached.

34. Other fees and Charges
The organisation shall be responsible for any fees or service and supply charges associated with the activity. These fees are payable in respect of any certificate, authority, approval, consent or service given or inspection made by Auckland Council or any department, service, agent or local authority trading enterprise of Auckland Council.

35. Bond
If required, the organisation shall provide to Screen Auckland, ATEED a bond prior to the activity. The purpose of the bond shall be to cover the potential costs of any breach of these conditions including the cost of repairing any damage and undertaking any clean up work that the organisation has not done. The bond shall be on terms satisfactory to Auckland Council regarding the nature of the activity.

36. Road Closure Advertisements
The organisation shall be liable for the cost of the public notice to advertise any closure of roads associated with the activity.

37. Cancellation Fee
Screen Auckland, ATEED may charge a cancellation fee if the organisation of the activity cancels a booking prior to the commencement of the activity or if the organisation fails to notify Screen Auckland of any cancellation.

38. Late Application Fee
Screen Auckland may charge a late application fee if an application is received within 2 working days of the activity. The organisation shall be advised upon application if this fee is to be applied.

Special Conditions

39. The organisation will be advised of any special conditions associated with the nature of the activity prior to the activity taking place.

40. Drones
Users of UAVs need to follow the Civil Aviation Authority rules on the use of UAVs. UAV Operators must comply with the Auckland Council Public Safety and Hazards Bylaw 2013. In addition to this Bylaw, when flying in a public open space, operators should adhere to the Auckland Council code of conduct which can be found online: http://temp.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/EN/auckland/utilitiesports/recreation/PE_gazetted.aspx

41. Sites of Significance
The organisation, through Screen Auckland, shall contact and consult with relevant stakeholders on behalf of the production with adequate timetables prior to the activity concerning any sites of significance including but not limited to Tupaia Mounga, and sites with historic and archaeological heritage.

42. Closed landfill sites
Auckland Council is responsible for the management of a number of closed landfill and contaminated sites. Legal obligations exist under the Health Act & Local Government Act to minimise the risk to public health & safety. If the filming activity is on one of these sites the organisation shall apply for the necessary authorisations in writing with adequate timetables prior to the activity taking place.

Note

43. Advice to Services
During the consultation process, Screen Auckland will, where applicable, advise the following services: NZ Police, NZ Fire Service, St John Ambulance, relevant transport companies, and Auckland Transport.

44. After Hours Contacts
Should you have any concerns or queries on the day of your activity, please contact your Film Facilitator or Auckland Council after hours, phone 09 301 0101. The Auckland Council Call Centre will forward your query to an appropriate officer.

45. Gardens
Please note that Auckland Council staff are unable to guarantee high-quality bedding displays in garden areas all year round due to seasonal factors and unforeseen circumstances. Please note that many displays (such as those in the Auckland Domain Winter Gardens and Dove Myer Robinson Park) have a strong seasonal component.
Attachment C: Summary of key themes from pre-consultation engagement

High-level summary of feedback provided in local board workshops.

Economic benefits
- Filming has economic benefits for Auckland but the potentially negative impacts of filming must be managed and mitigated.
- It is important to get the criteria for determining when and where filming should or should not take place right.

Landowner approval timeframes
- Landowner approval timeframes are very tight, particularly when considering complex or contentious applications.
- The current timeframes do not allow sufficient time to consider applications at full board meetings or to consult key stakeholders.

Impact on public access
- Need to give greater consideration of the extent to which filming will reduce service levels or restrict access to public open space and community facilities.
- Usage varies at different times of year, for example many places are busier during school and public holidays, and this needs to be taken into account when assessing applications. Should consider restricting filming in public open spaces and community facilities during periods of high demand.

Environmental impacts
- Need to ensure that the potentially negative effects of filming on the environment are managed and mitigated.
- Filming can have a cumulative impact on the environment, particularly in areas of high demand. This needs to be taken into account when assessing applications.

Drones
- The increasing use of drones for filming is resulting in a number of issues which need to be managed. Drones can be harmful to birds, for example by disrupting nesting or interrupting feeding. Negative impacts on birds, particularly endangered native species need to be prevented.
- Drones can also cause concerns for other users and neighbours of public open spaces. Filmmakers need to ensure that their use of drones does not impinge on the privacy of other users or neighbours and that they do not unduly impact on other users’ enjoyment of public places.

Content
- There should be greater scrutiny of applications where content may be offensive or injurious to the public good. Applications where content does not comply with New Zealand law or is inconsistent with Auckland Council’s legal and policy obligations should not be approved.

Notification
- Neighbours, local businesses and affected parties don’t always get sufficient notice of filming and are not always provided enough information about the proposed filming; this impacts on their ability to give feedback.
Other legislative or regulatory matters which should be covered in the protocol

- The Waitakere Ranges Heritage Areas Act 2008 needs to be taken into consideration when assessing applications to film within the area of the Act. This needs to be reflected in the Protocol.
- Reserve Management Plans are site specific plans which set out what types of activities may, or may not, be undertaken in a public open space classified as a reserve under the Reserves Act 1977. Reserve management plans need to be taken into account when assessing an application to film in a reserve; this needs to be reflected in the Film Protocol.
- The Film Protocol must communicate that all filming must comply with New Zealand law. For example, the film sector have a legal obligation, as employers, to provide a smokefree workplace.

High-level summary of feedback from the screen sector

- Auckland is a great place to film because of the variety of great locations within easy reach
- 69% of survey respondents felt that the Protocol was reasonably easy or very easy to understand
- 67% of survey respondents felt that the Protocol provides reasonably clear or very clear guidance on expectations of film makers behavior
- Main challenges to filming in Auckland include:
  - Length of time required to get a permit
  - Uncertainty around whether a permit will be granted
  - Process can be complex, especially when consultation with multiple stakeholders is required

High-level summary of People’s Panel survey

- When asked about professional filming in Auckland:
  - 84% agree or strongly agree that “filming creates job opportunities”
  - 80% agree or strongly agree that “filming is good for tourism”
  - 69% agree or strongly agree that “filming is great for my community”
  - 57% agree or strongly agree that “filming is vital for our economy”
  - 23% agree or strongly agree that “filming has an effect on the environment”
  - 12% agree or strongly agree that “filming is an nuisance or an inconvenience”
- When asked if they would like to see more or less professional filming in Auckland:
  - 70% of survey respondents would like to see more professional filming in Auckland
  - 18% would like to see the same amount of professional filming
  - 2% would like to see less professional filming
- 62% of survey respondents had encountered professional filming in Auckland.
- Those who had encountered filming were asked what impact it had had on them:
  - 44% said that filming had no impact on them
  - 39% said that filming had a slightly positive or very positive impact on them
  - 16% said that filming had a slightly negative or very negative impact on them
Those who were negatively impacted by filming were asked how they were negatively impacted:

- Negative environmental impact (e.g., increased littering, wildlife affected)
- Negative interaction with film crew
- I was worried about my privacy/felt uncomfortable
- Other (please specify)
- Increase in noise
- Impact on my street e.g., I had to move car
- It made me late/I had to wait
- Increase in people around
- Increase in traffic
- Road closures/had to use alternative route
- It blocked parking that could have been used
- Limited my access to a public area

Percentage [%]

Further information on the Peoples Panel survey can be found at: https://aucklandcouncil.uq.co.nz/surveys/reports/xpQ8xLxrokGHyDqWLUzGzg
Options to investigate improving west Waitematā community facilities

File No.: CP2019/11509

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To present the findings from the West Waitematā Current State Analysis of Community Services.
2. To seek approval for the development of indicative business cases for the three recommended options to improve community facilities in west Waitematā.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
3. To help understand library, community centre, and venue for hire services and facilities within west Waitematā (the area west of State Highway One), an assessment of community services was undertaken.
4. As part of the assessment, consideration was given to facility condition and suitability, and whether provision meets the current and future needs of the community and wider network.
5. The investigation concentrated on library, community centre, and venue for hire services at:
   • Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium (in Ponsonby)
   • Grey Lynn Library and Hall
   • Grey Lynn Community Centre.
6. The investigation found that the services provided from the three facilities situated in Ponsonby and Grey Lynn are needed and that more community centre and library services will be required in the future as the population grows.
7. The assessment showed that utilisation rates are generally above the Auckland average, and customers attending programmes are being turned away from Grey Lynn Community Centre and Grey Lynn Library due to capacity constraints.
8. Issues with the buildings themselves were also identified. These included:
   • the small size of both libraries (particularly Grey Lynn),
   • Leys Institute and Grey Lynn Library buildings are earthquake prone
   • Leys Institute and Grey Lynn Library and Hall are listed heritage structures
   • Auckland Council is required to ensure library services are provided, at Leys Institute Library, in perpetuity.
9. These identified issues constrain any significant modification to both library buildings in the future and prevents any repurposing of Leys Institute.
10. Building renewals will assist with keeping the facilities operating for another 10 to 15 years but will not address seismic risk, capacity levels, and long-term building and service requirements.
11. Staff have identified and evaluated options as outlined in Attachment B.
12. It is recommended that a more detailed investigation of the following options is undertaken, and indicative business cases are developed.
13. The indicative business cases of the three options will inform investment decisions to solve the foreseeable, long-term, provision gaps. Consideration of options for optimisation as part of the indicative business cases could also provide potential budget sources.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) receive the West Waitematā Current State Analysis of Community Services findings report (Attachment A)

b) approve the development of indicative business cases to understand service and facility investment options for:

i) option 2: restoration of Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium, including seismic upgrade, and extension of library services into underutilised space

ii) option 5: restoration of Grey Lynn Library and Hall, including seismic upgrade, and extension of library services into the hall

iii) option 9: development of a multi-purpose facility, in Grey Lynn, incorporating the community centre and library.

Horopaki
Context


15. The project also responds to action 107 from the Community Facilities Network Plan (CFNP) action plan (Ponsonby / Grey Lynn - investigate provision of library facilities in this area giving consideration to facility condition and suitability).

16. The facilities in scope for the assessment were Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium, Grey Lynn Library and Hall, and Grey Lynn Community Centre.

17. Seismic assessments for Leys Institute and Grey Lynn Library and Hall identified the buildings are below 34 per cent of new building standard (NBS). This means the buildings are considered earthquake-prone and must be strengthened or removed within 35 years.

18. Grey Lynn Community Centre has some weather-tightness issues which are currently being addressed.

19. The building condition, cost of addressing seismic risk, and expected population growth were triggers to consider if the facilities are fit for purpose and well placed to provide for future generations. This has prompted the development of options for the continued provision of community services in west Waitematā.
20. As outlined in the Community Facilities Network Plan, council is committed to providing community facilities that benefit all Aucklanders. We have an obligation, under the Local Government Act, “to meet current and future needs of communities for good quality local infrastructure in a way that is most cost effective”¹.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

21. We have carried out research to understand more about the facilities in scope within the broader context of community service requirements in west Waitematā (Attachment A).

22. All the facilities have issues that must be addressed to continue the delivery of community services.
   - Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium and Grey Lynn Library and Hall are heritage buildings and earthquake prone
   - Leys Institute Library and Grey Lynn Library staff-spaces do not meet accessibility standards
   - Grey Lynn Community Centre has water-tightness issues to address and work is currently underway that will extend the life of the building for another 10 to 15 years.

23. The population of west Waitematā is expected to increase by approximately 45 per cent over the next 30 years from 35,746 to 51,916.

24. Current levels of library service provision are below the Community Facility Network Plan guidelines, and Grey Lynn Library management report having to turn customers away, wishing to attend programmes and events, due to size constraints.

25. Several factors have implications for how council can create) this library capacity. These include:
   - the requirement that Leys Institute Library continue to offer a library service in perpetuity (as set out in the terms of the 1904 deed of trust)
   - the heritage status of Leys Institute and Grey Lynn Library and Hall
   - low utilisation of Grey Lynn Hall
   - underutilised space in both the basement and upper floor of Leys Institute Library.

26. Grey Lynn Community Centre is very well utilised, and customers are sometimes turned away due to the demand placed on its large meeting space. According to Community Facilities Network Plan guidelines, additional community centre provision will need to be considered in the next 30 years.

27. Leys Institute Gymnasium and Grey Lynn Hall both operate as venues for hire. Utilisation for Leys Institute Gymnasium is average for its size; Grey Lynn Hall utilisation is low. From a provision perspective and considering both council and non-council providers, west Waitematā is well served for venue for hire space now and into the future.

Options Assessment

28. The following high-level options were developed to respond to the findings. When assessed against each facility, nine options were defined (Attachment B). The nine options were presented to the local board for feedback at a workshop on 7 June 2019.

29. Options were evaluated for:
   - opportunity for service enhancement
   - strategic alignment
   - ability to address investigation findings.

30. A summary of the option evaluation can be found in Attachment B.

**Auckland Council’s three-stage process for new investment**

31. Cases for new or changed investment in community services and facilities follow Auckland Council’s three stage process, based on the better business case model developed by the Treasury. The process applies to the recommendations for Ponsonby and Grey Lynn.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Process stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Ponsonby</th>
<th>Grey Lynn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Needs assessment</td>
<td>Analysis of growth, demographics, network provision and gaps</td>
<td>Completed through the current state findings report (Attachment A)</td>
<td>Completed through the current state findings report (Attachment A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative business case</td>
<td>Considers the merits of proposed investment, strategic alignment and economic case that looks at costs and benefits to help ensure a robust case for change</td>
<td>As per recommendation b) i) option 2</td>
<td>As per recommendation b) ii) option 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>As per recommendation b) iii) option 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detailed business case</td>
<td>Builds on the previous stages and identifies preferred options(s) that will deliver community benefit and value for money</td>
<td>To be determined by the indicative business case</td>
<td>To be determined by the indicative business case</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32. The three options recommended for further investigation through development of an indicative business case are:
   - option 2: restoration of Leys Library and Gymnasium including seismic upgrade and extension of library services into underutilised space
   - option 5: restoration of Grey Lynn Library & Hall including seismic work and extension of library service into the hall
33. The following diagram describes what each option investigation would include.

**Ponsonby**

![Diagram of Ponsonby options]

Option 2
Restoration of Leys Library & Gymnasium, including seismic remediation, and extend library service into underutilised space
Enhance service

Seismic upgrade of library and gymnasium. Renew interior. Initiate long-term solution to issues with the library’s rear wall. Renovate interior, extending service areas into underutilised or unutilised spaces. Possibility of providing space for a commercial lease and using the income to offset library operational costs

Option 5
Restoration of Grey Lynn Library & Hall, including seismic remediation, and extend library service into the hall
Enhance service
Phase one of two

Seismic upgrade of library and hall. Interior renewal of library and possibly hall. Extend library service into the hall

Option 9
Develop new multi-purpose facility incorporating community centre and library
Enhance service
Phase two of two

Develop an integrated multi-purpose facility on either the current Grey Lynn Community Centre site or an alternative site. Facility would provide both community centre and library services that are currently offered at Grey Lynn Community Centre and Grey Lynn Library. Grey Lynn Library & Hall facility would be strengthened and repurposed. Possibility of using optimisation as a primary funding source, by establishing a mixed-use community facility and housing development to offset cost

34. The investigation option recommended for Ponsonby offers long-term solutions to the issues caused by facility condition and population growth.
35. The two-phase investigation options recommended for Grey Lynn are interdependent. The work at Grey Lynn Library and Hall and the approved renewal work at Grey Lynn Community Centre are medium-term solutions that provide us with 10 to 15 years to identify funding required for a new multi-purpose facility.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views

36. The findings and options included in this report have been developed with input from a multi-disciplinary team. The project team included members from Libraries and Information, Community Places, Heritage, Service Strategy and Integration, Commercial and Finance, and Community Facilities.

37. Indicative business case development will include the same multi-disciplinary team with support from Panuku and Land Advisory Services.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

38. Grey Lynn Community Centre Board have been informed of the recommendations in this report for staff to investigate the development of a new multi-purpose facility to house both community centre and library services.

39. Investigation findings were presented to the local board at a workshop on 30 April 2019.

40. Options were presented to the local board at a workshop on 7 May 2019. The workshop included information on optimisation and how this offers the opportunity to offset new build costs. The local board requested that a variety of housing options, for delivery with a multi-purpose facility, should be investigated. Staff will work with Panuku, mana whenua, and mataawaka to investigate optimisation options and potential sites as part of the next phase of research.

41. Recommendations in this report would be subject to future decision-making by Governing Body given capital investment would potentially be sought through indicative business cases.

42. Local impacts will be considered through all phases of investigation and business case development. Local board direction will be sought to inform further phases of the project and decision-making around location and services.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

43. Leys Institute stands on Te Rimutahi ridgeline – a traditional transport route from Maungawhau to Te Too, a headland pā site at St Mary’s Bay. Grey Lynn Library and Hall stands on the Karangahape track, now Great North Road, connecting Waitemata moana to Manukau moana. Both routes are acknowledged as significant to mana whenua and to this mahi.

44. Engagement with mana whenua and mataawaka will be included in the next stages of this investigation and be reflected in future recommendations.

45. The Community Facilities Network Plan (2015) emphasises council’s responsibility to deliver outcomes for Māori. The network plan details six actions that will ensure council meets this commitment including active engagement with Māori to factor needs and expectations into decision-making for the planning and operations of facilities and incorporating concerns about wahi tapu.

46. The CFNP states that development of new facilities will involve investigating Māori demographic participation and usage trends, identifying opportunities to increase the attendance and use of facilities by Māori.
47. The recommendations offer the opportunity to engage with mana whenua and mataawaka from facility and service design conception, therefore delivering on the key directions of The Māori Plan for Tāmaki Makaurau 2017. The plan, published by the Independent Māori Statutory Board (IMSB), provides a framework to Auckland Council for implementing desired cultural, economic, environmental and social outcomes for Māori.

48. The following table outlines key directions, of particular cultural relevance, to this mahi.

**Key directions of The Māori Plan for Tāmaki Makaurau 2017**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Whanaungatanga</th>
<th>Develop vibrant communities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Māori communities are culturally vibrant across Tāmaki Makaurau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Accessibility to Māori culture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rangatiratanga</th>
<th>Enhance leadership &amp; participation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Māori are actively participating and demonstrating leadership in the community</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mana Whenua as Treaty partners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mataawaka as Treaty partners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Youth participation and leadership</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manaakitanga</th>
<th>Improve quality of life</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Māori communities are culturally strong and healthy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The use of te reo Māori</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Participation in wānanga, kura, and kōhanga reo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Connection to iwi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wairuatanga</th>
<th>Promote distinctive identity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Māori heritage of Tāmaki Makaurau is valued and protected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Māori cultural values and heritage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sense of pride and belonging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kaitiakitanga</th>
<th>Ensure sustainable futures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Māori cultural wellbeing is future-proofed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Investment in Māori arts and culture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mātauranga Māori and Mātauranga-ā-īwi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

49. New facilities also offer the potential to deliver on Auckland Plan Direction four: ‘Showcase Auckland’s Māori identity and vibrant Māori culture through design and te reo Māori.

50. Mana whenua will be engaged with and provide input for details of the service provision and outcomes required for communities through the design phases of the new facility projects that are progressed following a detailed business case for investment.

**Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea**

**Financial implications**

51. Resource to complete indicative business cases is available through existing operational budgets.

52. Council is operating in a constrained financial environment and the business case process supports consideration of priorities and trade-offs when new funding is required. Funding
requirements identified through the indicative business case will be reported to the local board for feedback in preparation for consideration through the relevant Long-term Plan.

**Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga**  
**Risks and mitigations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk</th>
<th>Mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local board priority changes following the October 2019 local</td>
<td>Present key findings and direction to the new board late 2019 or early 2020. Receive any additional direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>government elections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community perception that services will change without consultation.</td>
<td>Community consultation will be undertaken regarding any significant service changes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

53. Seismic risk is mitigated through council’s compliance with legislation and the development of a seismic policy, currently underway. Water tightness issues with Grey Lynn Community Centre are being remediated by physical works currently underway.

54. A comprehensive risk analysis will be included in future phases of this work.

**Ngā koringa ā-muri**  
**Next steps**

55. Following local board resolution staff will confirm the delivery programme for the indicative business cases.

**Ngā tāpirihanga**  
**Attachments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>West Waitematā Current State Analysis of Community Services Findings Report</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Options analysis table</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ngā kaihaina**  
**Signatories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Hannah Alleyne - Service and Asset Planning Specialist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Lisa Tocker - Head of Service Strategy and Integration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
West Waitematā Current State Analysis of Community Services

Findings report

August 2019
# Table of Contents

1. Executive summary ...................................................... 3
2. Purpose, scope, and drivers for the work ................................ 5
3. Strategic context ................................................................... 8
4. How we got our information ................................................. 11
5. Community profile – now and into the future ............................ 12
7. Understanding how fit for purpose the three buildings are ...................... 19
8. How well are these services performing? .................................... 21
9. Conclusion and recommendations ............................................. 24
1 Executive summary

1.1 Purpose, scope, and approach

This work looks at community services provided from Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium, Grey Lynn Library and Hall, and Grey Lynn Community Centre to understand if substantially changed or new services and facilities are required to provide for both current and future communities. It does so in the context of protected heritage buildings, significant condition issues, ageing facilities, and a growing and changing population.

1.2 What we found out about the facilities in scope and the services they provide

We found that there is a need for the services provided from the three facilities in scope and that more community centre and library services will be required in the future. The exceptions are with venues for hire, as Leys Institute Supper Room has below average utilisation and Grey Lynn Library Hall has below average utilisation for its size. These spaces provide additional capacity for increased use and there is sufficient alternate third-party provision within the catchment. We also found that the services in Ponsonby and Grey Lynn could benefit from different interventions which respond to the unique mix of facility constraints in each location.

Leys Institute Library is well used for its small size and the community is very satisfied with the services that it provides. The gymnasium is also well used as a large bookable space. Above the library, the lecture and supper rooms are not as well used. There is an opportunity to better use the space within Leys Institute to expand the library service and alleviate low levels of library space provision. The buildings are protected heritage facilities and council has an obligation to maintain them for their original purposes which means offering a library service in perpetuity. The main action required to improve the facilities is earthquake strengthening and repairing the rear library wall which has been damaged from ground movement.

Grey Lynn Library is very well used despite being one of the smallest facilities in the network. Its services are well received by the community. In contrast, the adjoining hall is not used to the level expected for a large bookable space. This presents an opportunity to expand the library service into the hall and alleviate low levels of library space provision which constrain service delivery in Grey Lynn. The building is a protected heritage facility which requires earthquake strengthening works to safeguard it as an asset for future generations.

The Grey Lynn Community Centre is similarly experiencing some capacity constraints due its large spaces having very high use, although community centre provision for the area overall is currently considered adequate. This facility has some weather-tightness issues which are being addressed and will extend the life of the building for 10 to 15 years. The need to replace the community centre in the next 10 to 15 years provides an opportunity to
develop an integrated facility which combines community centre and library services for Grey Lynn to provide capacity and flexibility for a rapidly growing population.

1.3 Recommendation

This report recommends a more detailed investigation of the following interventions:

1. restore Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium, and renovate to make better use of space
2. restore Grey Lynn Library and Hall, and extend the library service into the hall
3. renew Grey Lynn Community Centre (underway)
4. develop a multi-purpose facility in Grey Lynn incorporating the community centre and library.

1.4 Contemplating the future of community service and facility provision in Ponsonby and Grey Lynn

The number of people in Ponsonby and Grey Lynn is expected to almost double over the next 30 years, and the wider Waitematā Local Board area is anticipated to have one of the fastest growing populations in the Auckland region.¹ This growth will require that we make the best use of existing facilities by maintaining and improving them, and the services that are delivered from them, to meet new demand. It also means that new facilities should be developed in a way that optimises space to support integrated service delivery in a facility that also has the flexibility to adapt to the changing needs and growth of the community.

¹ Auckland Forecasting Centre and Auckland Council – Land Use Scenario i11

Image 1: The opening of Leys Institute Library 1905
2 Purpose, scope, and drivers for the work

2.1 Purpose

We wanted to understand library, community centre and venue for hire services and facilities within Grey Lynn and Ponsonby. Consideration has been given to facility condition and suitability, and whether provision meets the current and future needs of the community and wider network. This will help to determine the need for new or substantially changed services and facilities.

2.2 Facilities in scope

The facilities in scope are:

- Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium
- Grey Lynn Library and Hall
- Grey Lynn Community Centre.

While investigating these facilities we also took the opportunity to understand other community service provision within the area.

Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium

Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium is located at 20 St Mary’s Bay Road, St Mary’s Bay and has car parking at the rear on Dedwood Terrace. The library was opened in 1905 and the gymnasium in 1906. These facilities were developed for the public by the Leys family.
with council providing the land, although ownership of the buildings transferred to the council in 1964. The buildings are listed as Historic Place Category One and scheduled as Unitary Plan Category A, and the land is within Business – Town Centre Zone.

The library has a floor space of approximately 500 square meters, and both the lecture and supper rooms on the second floor provide another 181 square meters of bookable space to the public. The gymnasium is a large open space covering a total of 420 square meters and is a community-led venue for hire.

**Grey Lynn Library and Hall**

Grey Lynn Library and Hall are located at 474 Great North Road, Grey Lynn and backs onto Arch Hill Scenic Reserve. The facilities were built in 1924 and are protected under Historic Place Category Two and Unitary Plan Category B. The land underneath the footprint of the buildings is zoned under the unitary plan as Open Space – Community, and the remaining land around the buildings is zoned Open Space – Informal Recreation.

The library has a floor space of 264 square metres and delivers core library services within this small footprint. The hall is a large open space incorporating a stage and kitchen at either end, with a total floor area of 280 square metres.
Grey Lynn Community Centre is located at 510 Richmond Road, Grey Lynn, in the heart of the local centre. The facility was built in 1999 and operates as a community-led hub which incorporates services such as the citizens advice bureau, provides a programme of activities and offers a range of bookable spaces. The total floor space of the buildings is 826 square metres and additional to this is a secure outdoor space and playground, and a small amount of car parking. Under the unitary plan this facility is located with the Business – Local Centre zone.

2.3 Key drivers

Building condition is the main driver for this work. Both Grey Lynn and Ponsonby libraries and their adjoining halls have been assessed for seismic risk and found to be below 34 per cent of new building standard. Council has 35 years to complete seismic remediation. Grey Lynn Community Centre has weather-tightness issues affecting components of the facility.

The close proximity of these facilities, and expected population growth, are also drivers for this work. These are both discussed later in this report.
3 Strategic context

3.1 The Auckland Plan 2050

The Auckland Plan 2050 is Auckland’s long term spatial plan that looks ahead 30 years and identifies outcomes which will address the region’s key challenges of high population growth, shared prosperity, and environmental degradation.

The outcomes from the Auckland Plan that are relevant to this work are identified in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participation and belonging</th>
<th>Homes and places</th>
<th>Environmental and cultural heritage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create safe opportunities for people to meet, connect, participate in, and enjoy community and civic life.</td>
<td>Provide sufficient public places and spaces that are inclusive, accessible and contribute to urban living</td>
<td>Ensure Auckland’s natural environment and cultural heritage is valued and cared for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide accessible services and social and cultural infrastructure that are responsive in meeting people’s evolving needs</td>
<td>Create urban places for the future</td>
<td>Protect Auckland’s significant natural environments and cultural heritage from further loss</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1: Relevant Auckland Plan outcomes

3.2 The Waitematā Local Board Plan 2017

The local board plan is a strategic document which reflects the priorities and preferences of the community, and provides direction for local board activity, funding and decision-making over a three-year period. The plan recognises the importance that community spaces play in connecting diverse communities and the need for them to be multi-purpose, accessible and attractive to everyone. It also acknowledges the challenges of accommodating population growth and ensuring that our community spaces are versatile and able to meet the changing needs of residents now and in the future.

The key local board outcomes that give direction to this work are outlined in the table below.
### 3.3 The Ponsonby Road Plan

The Ponsonby Road Plan was adopted by the local board in 2014 and provides a framework for the development of this destination road over the next 30 years. The plan aims to enable an urban realm that meets the aspirations and goals of the community and establishes five desired outcomes for Ponsonby road. The outcomes that are most relevant to this work are:

- recognise Ponsonby Road’s diverse role as a vibrant centre, key entertainment and boutique shopping locality that meets the needs of local residents, businesses, and visitors
- protect, recognise, and interpret the historic and cultural heritage of Ponsonby Road
- ensure sufficient provision of open space and community facilities to meet the needs of the Ponsonby Community both now and in the future.

The plan includes within its scope, the Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium.

### 3.4 The Community Facilities Network Plan

The Community Facilities Network Plan details how council aims to provide community facilities over the next 20 years, including community centres, venues for hire, libraries and leisure centres.

The key drivers for the plan are to:

- ensure existing facilities are fit for purpose
- address gaps or duplication in provision and needs for community facilities
- meet current and future demand arising from population growth and changing user expectations.

The plan envisages council moving away from standalone facilities to multi-purpose and integrated facilities which are strategically placed to be highly visible and accessible to the local community. These facilities will contain multiple and flexibly designed spaces which are able to accommodate different activities within one site.

Provision guidelines and prioritisation criteria included in the plan are used to identify actions which council will focus its energy on. These actions are set out in the Community
Facilities Network Action Plan which was refreshed in April 2019. The scope of the west Waitematā current state analysis is informed by the actions identified in the action plan.

3.5 The Facility Partnership Policy
The Facility Partnership Policy outlines council’s rationale for entering facility partnerships, which includes leveraging off external parties, empowering and enabling communities and optimising space and investment. It also outlines a principles-based approach to investing in partnerships which focuses on community outcomes, equity, value and sustainability.

3.6 Other relevant strategic documents
Several other strategic council documents are relevant to this work as they guide our thinking about how the services and facilities in scope can best respond to the needs of their communities. These include:

- Auckland Libraries: Te Kauroa – Future Directions 2013-2023, aspiring for Auckland libraries to be your place of imagination, learning and connection
- Auckland Libraries: Talanoa – Transforming through shared stories and respect
- Thriving Communities: A Community and Social Development Action Plan that outlines council’s commitment to becoming agile, responsive and flexible partner to communities.
4 How we got our information

4.1 Desktop research

Desktop research was carried out to give us some understanding of residents living in the area, services being provided, building condition and the role of these facilities in the wider network of venue for hire, community centre and library provision. This involved us analysing the following information:

- demographic data from the 2013 Census
- demographic forecasts to 2038 based on the 2013 Census
- population forecasts to 2043 based on the 2013 Census
- population forecasts to 2046 based on the 2017 land use scenario modelling developed by the Auckland Forecasting Centre in conjunction with Auckland Council
- provision approach and identifying gaps for community centres, libraries and venues for hire set out in the Community Facilities Network Plan
- ideal schedule of space for community centres, libraries and venues for hire set out in the Community Facilities Network Plan
- types of programmes, activities and technology offered in the area
- utilisation and satisfaction data held by council for financial year 2017/2018
- building condition information including existing and updated technical advice for seismic, geotechnical and weather tightness issues from council and external specialists
- financial information regarding operational performance and capital investment in the three facilities over the last two financial years
- facility condition reports
- heritage reports
- initial seismic assessments
- facility management plans.

Image 6: Bob Orr’s book launch at Grey Lynn Library. Photo credit Paula Green, NZ Poetry Shelf
5 Community profile – now and into the future

5.1 What do we mean by Ponsonby and Grey Lynn?

The area in scope is the western portion of the Waitematā Local Board area, which includes the suburbs of Grey Lynn and Ponsonby. West Waitematā covers 10 Statistics New Zealand census area units which have been used to collect demographic information:

- St Mary’s Bay
- Freemans Bay
- Arch Hill
- Grey Lynn East
- Grey Lynn West
- Ponsonby East
- Ponsonby West
- Westmere
- Surrey Crescent
- Herne Bay

Map 1: The western portion of the Waitematā Local Board area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>West Waitematā</th>
<th>Auckland</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pakeha</td>
<td>79.4%</td>
<td>55.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Māori</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
<td>10.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary qualification</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>42%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Median household income</td>
<td>$125,150</td>
<td>$76,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to internet</td>
<td>88%</td>
<td>82%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor vehicle ownership</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>92%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3: Selected Census 2013 data
5.2 Anticipated growth and change

Auckland regional transport land use data for 2017 forecasts significant growth in population for Auckland. One of the highest growth areas is Waitematā. During the 30-year period 2016 to 2046, the population of west Waitematā is expected to increase by 17,802 people (or 47 per cent) to reach 51,916.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2016</th>
<th>2046</th>
<th>Per cent increase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>West Waitematā</td>
<td>35,746</td>
<td>51,916</td>
<td>47%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā</td>
<td>92,272</td>
<td>150,739</td>
<td>63%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auckland</td>
<td>1,580,690</td>
<td>2,338,564</td>
<td>48%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4: Selected Land Use Scenario ITI population forecasts

This growth in population will see a decrease in the percentage of Pākehā and an increase in those of Asian ethnicity. The percentage of retirees will significantly increase and the percentage of young people and young families will decrease. This is based on Statistics New Zealand forecasts from the 2013 Census.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Forecast change 2013 to 2038</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pākehā</td>
<td>-13.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asian</td>
<td>4.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young retirees</td>
<td>6.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Older retirees</td>
<td>4.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary school</td>
<td>-3.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young families</td>
<td>-2.2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5: Selected Statistics New Zealand forecasts
5.3 How are the communities of Ponsonby and Grey Lynn different?

For the purposes of this work, Ponsonby is defined as the northern half of west Waitematā and contains five census area units:

- St Mary’s Bay
- Herne Bay
- Ponsonby West
- Ponsonby East
- Freemans Bay.

Grey Lynn is the southern half of west Waitematā and contains five census area units:

- Westmere
- Surrey Crescent
- Grey Lynn West
- Grey Lynn East
- Arch Hill.

Ponsonby has a slightly higher percentage of Pākehā and Grey Lynn has twice the percentage of Pasifika peoples. Ponsonby has a higher percentage of people aged 65 years and over, and Grey Lynn has a higher percentage of people aged less than 25 years. The median household incomes for both communities are similar with Ponsonby at $123,420 and Grey Lynn at $111,920.

Their populations were also roughly the same in 2016 at about 18,000 people, but it is anticipated that over the next 30 years Ponsonby will experience greater population growth. This growth is projected to result in a higher percentage of people of Asian ethnicity in Ponsonby and Grey Lynn, and a higher percentage of Pasifika peoples in Grey Lynn by 2038.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Ponsonby</th>
<th>Grey Lynn</th>
<th>Auckland</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pākehā</td>
<td>81.8%</td>
<td>77.2%</td>
<td>55.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pasifika</td>
<td>5.5%</td>
<td>11.0%</td>
<td>13.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 years and over</td>
<td>9.9%</td>
<td>5.9%</td>
<td>11.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under 25 years</td>
<td>24.7%</td>
<td>31.6%</td>
<td>35.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016-2046 population growth</td>
<td>51.4% (9,168)</td>
<td>39.1% (7,002)</td>
<td>54.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013-2038 change - Asian</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
<td>4.5%</td>
<td>13.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013-2038 change - Pacific</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>2.2%</td>
<td>2.50%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 6: Selected Census 2013 data and Land Use Scenario H11 population forecasts*
6 How do Ponsonby and Grey Lynn sit within a regional network context?

6.1 Catchment information for each of the facilities

Regional provision approaches provide another lens through which to consider local community services and facilities and their role as part of a regional network of services.

Provision approaches relevant to the community facilities in scope are outlined in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Community facilities</th>
<th>Provision approach</th>
<th>Identifying gaps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Libraries</td>
<td>Maintain level of 41m2/1000 population</td>
<td>Capacity testing based on 41m2/1000 of local catchment population, including capacity of neighbouring libraries and maximum distance of 30 minutes travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Leys Institute Library</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Grey Lynn Library</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Centres – small</td>
<td>Located in local neighbourhoods, walking catchment of up to 15 minutes or 30-minute drive of rural and coastal villages</td>
<td>Within 15-minute drive from metropolitan areas, key town centres. Target population of 20,000 plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ponsonby Community Centre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Centres – large</td>
<td>Serves a catchment of up to 15-minute driving time. Located in metropolitan or town centres and satellite towns. Desirably located within the centre of town.</td>
<td>Within 15-minute drive from metropolitan areas, key town centres Target population of 20,000 plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Grey Lynn Community Centre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venues for Hire</td>
<td>• Improve and optimise the current network of venues for hire</td>
<td>Access to bookable space within 15 minutes’ walk from local or town centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- All council bookable spaces in west Waitematā</td>
<td>• No longer build or acquire standalone venues for hire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Include bookable space within integrated and connected community facilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Encourage and support other community providers to share bookable space</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7: Community Facilities Network Plan network provision approaches
Libraries

Given the small size of Grey Lynn and Leys Institute libraries, and the high population in west Waitematā, the provision approach of 1000 people per 41 metres squared of library space means their catchments or areas served are also small. The result is that the two catchments do not fully cover the entire west Waitematā area and gaps are not able to be fully met by the capacity of neighbouring libraries.

The current provision of library space in west Waitematā is below the level specified for the size of its population. Over the next 27 years, the population of west Waitematā is expected to increase by 13,875 people or 36 per cent. Additional library space will be required in the long-term to support this population growth.

Community centres

The catchments for community centres are based on facility size, distance and target population thresholds. Community centres are classified as either large or small, with larger centres having a wider variety of space and functions. Ponsonby Community Centre is small with the ability to serve up to 10,000 people. Grey Lynn Community Centre is large and can serve 20,000 plus people. Between the two facilities there is sufficient community centre capacity for the current population of 38,041.

Consideration will need to be given to the provision of additional space when there is a level of population growth between 10,000 and 20,000 people, consistent with the size of a small or large community centre. It is anticipated that this will be met by 2046 when the population of west Waitematā reaches 51,916.
Venues for hire

Venues for hire should be accessible within a 15-minute walk from local or town centres. Of the local centres identified in west Waitematā, all have at least one council bookable space within a 15-minute walk. There is also significant private bookable space, including some at community rates, which supplements council provision.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local centre</th>
<th>Council bookable venues</th>
<th>Non-council bookable venues</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Herne Bay</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Mary’s Bay</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freemans Bay</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ponsonby</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newton</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Lynn</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Westmere</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8: Venues for hire in west Waitematā
6.2 How is provision different between Ponsonby and Grey Lynn?

Library

Grey Lynn Library and Leys Institute Library are both small libraries compared to the size of other libraries in the network. Grey Lynn Library has about half the floor space of Leys Institute Library. This means that the current provision of library space in west Waitematā, which is below the levels specified by the provision guidelines, is having the greatest impact on the community of Grey Lynn and the users of the Grey Lynn Library.

Grey Lynn Library is well used and there is currently no capacity within the footprint of the library building to expand the library service to serve more people in the community. Leys Institute Library by contrast has average utilisation as well as the capacity to better utilise space in the basement and on the second floor to expand the library service.

Community centre

Grey Lynn Community Centre is a large community centre. It accounts for almost 75 per cent of community centre provision in west Waitematā, with a catchment that extends well beyond Waitematā Local Board boundaries. Ponsonby Community Centre is a small community centre and accounts for around 26 per cent of community centre provision in west Waitematā, serving the immediate neighbourhoods.

The population of Ponsonby is forecast to have 10 per cent more growth than the population of Grey Lynn by 2046. This means that the consideration for additional community centre space to support population growth in west Waitematā over the next 30 years should consider the smaller provision in Ponsonby compared to the size of its community. It should be noted that the actual location of community space to serve the communities of Ponsonby and Grey Lynn is more flexible given the provision approach to distance of travel or catchment.

Venues for hire

There is a similar provision in council and non-council bookable spaces across Ponsonby and Grey Lynn, and provision is enough to meet the needs of both these communities.
7 Understanding how fit for purpose the three buildings are

7.1 What we understand about their condition

The three facilities in scope are in average condition overall for their age but have serious issues which need to be resolved in the short-term.

Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium have seismic ratings below five per cent of new building standard and are considered earthquake prone buildings. Ground movement has resulted in cracking to the rear wall of the library which is currently supported by bracing. It is recommended that seismic remediation, and repairs and strengthening of the rear library wall, are completed in the next five to 10 years.²

Grey Lynn Library and Hall are rated at 10 per cent of new building standard, are considered earthquake prone and will similarly require earthquake strengthening. There has also been some ground movement of the slope behind the hall which will be monitored to detect further activity.

Both Grey Lynn Library and Leys Institute Library have staff rooms which are substandard and would not meet current accessibility standards. These issues are likely to be addressed as part of the compliance requirements triggered by earthquake strengthening works.

Grey Lynn Community Centre is of low seismic risk; however it has weather-tightness issues affecting components of the building. A project for the comprehensive renewal of the facility is on the 2019/2020 work programme. This work will remediate the critical issues, as well as upgrade other areas of the facility, in order to extend the life of the building for another 10 to 15 years.

7.2 Other building related matters

Leys Institute Library must continue to provide library services in perpetuity as set out in the 1904 trust deed between council and the Leys family. Complementary to this, a community service or commercial activity could be run from the building if it was consistent with the charitable purpose of the trust, being the advancement of education.

The terms of the deed also prohibit the sale of the buildings and associated land and require council to maintain these assets for the original purpose of a library and mechanics institute. There is the ability under the deed to replace the buildings with a new facility for the same purpose, but their significant heritage value means that they are protected under the current unitary plan.

² Auckland Council is currently developing a seismic policy. Once the policy is adopted by Governing Body a budget will be allocated to address seismic risk, followed by a scheduled programme of works.
7.3 Site related issues

As mentioned, the ground behind Grey Lynn Hall and Leys Institute Library has experienced some movement. Monitoring of these sites is on-going to assess any further activity.
8 How well are these services performing?

8.1 Utilisation

Grey Lynn and Leys Institute libraries have below average utilisation. Total utilisation includes physical visits, physical issues, PC/Wi-Fi sessions and programme participation. When utilisation is divided by square metre of library floor space, the performance of these libraries increases to be at or above the Auckland average. The utilisation of Grey Lynn Library is particularly significant for its size at almost double the Auckland average or 94 per cent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Physical visits</th>
<th>Physical issues</th>
<th>PC/Wi-Fi sessions</th>
<th>Programme participants</th>
<th>Utilisation total</th>
<th>Utilisation per m²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auckland average</td>
<td>16,232</td>
<td>17,537</td>
<td>9,602</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>44,221</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā average</td>
<td>9,669</td>
<td>11,798</td>
<td>4,572</td>
<td>642</td>
<td>26,671</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn</td>
<td>7,447</td>
<td>12,423</td>
<td>4,325</td>
<td>537</td>
<td>24,731</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leys Institute</td>
<td>9,852</td>
<td>11,529</td>
<td>4,020</td>
<td>789</td>
<td>26,189</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parnell</td>
<td>11,677</td>
<td>11,441</td>
<td>5,373</td>
<td>601</td>
<td>29,092</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• above average utilisation  • average utilisation  • below average utilisation

Table 3: Average utilisation per library per month for 2017/2018

The Grey Lynn Library Hall in comparison has average utilisation amongst the venue for hire portfolio, but below average utilisation for a large space. This goes against the regional trend of large spaces having high utilisation, medium sized spaces having average utilisation, and small spaces having low utilisation.

Leys Institute Gymnasium is a large space and has high utilisation, but the smaller Lecture and Supper rooms have average or below average utilisation. Similarly, the large spaces at Grey Lynn Community Centre have high utilisation and the centre overall has significantly above average utilisation.
### Options to investigate improving west Waitematā community facilities

#### Table 10: Average utilisation per space per month for 2017/2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Attendees</th>
<th>Hours booked</th>
<th>Utilisation percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auckland average</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>35%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā average</td>
<td>1,076</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>38%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn Library Hall</td>
<td>1,705</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>34%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn Community Centre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balcony room</td>
<td>2,370</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>54%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garden room</td>
<td>2,885</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>65%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main hall</td>
<td>3,567</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>76%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oval room</td>
<td>778</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>41%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richmond room</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>27%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facility average</td>
<td>1,994</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>53%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leys Institute</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnasium</td>
<td>1,763</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>57%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecture room</td>
<td>727</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>31%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supper room</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facility average</td>
<td>870</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>32%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8.2 Customer satisfaction

Leys Institute Library has a customer satisfaction rating of 98 per cent and Grey Lynn Library has a customer satisfaction rating of 96 per cent. The Auckland average is 96 per cent. The ratings are based on over 11,000 survey responses collected over a two-month period in 2018.

![Customer satisfaction levels for Libraries & Information - 1 October 2018 to 30 November 2018](image)

Survey responses for the relevant venue for hire spaces were low and so may not accurately reflect the community level of satisfaction. Customer satisfaction ratings are not sought for community-led facilities such as Grey Lynn Community Centre.
8.3 Service limitation

Service delivery from Grey Lynn Library is limited due to its very small size. Customers hoping to participate in Grey Lynn Library programmes have been turned away by staff when the facility has reached capacity. The library’s size also limits how many computers are offered and initiatives like book-clubs, special-interest group meetings, and programme installations.

Grey Lynn Community Centre also has capacity issues. Large spaces are at a premium and customers have been turned away as these are often booked out.
## 9 Conclusion and recommendations

The current state analysis identified that there is an ongoing requirement for library, community centre and venue for hire services in both Ponsonby and Grey Lynn. The continuation of these services could benefit from addressing the following factors:

- poor condition of existing facilities, including staff rooms
- opportunities to make better use of space in the small heritage facilities
- provision of additional library and community centre space over the next 30 years.

We recommended that four interventions be investigated as potential solutions to these service requirements. These are set out in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interventions to investigate</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Restore Leys Institute Library and Gymnasium, and renovate to make better use of space</td>
<td>• Buildings are rated at five per cent of new building standard and are earthquake prone&lt;br&gt;• Rear library wall has been compromised by ground movement&lt;br&gt;• Buildings are classified heritage places, protected under the Resource Management Act 1991, and must be preserved&lt;br&gt;• Council is required to maintain the library building, for library services, in perpetuity&lt;br&gt;• Staff facilities are substandard and have accessibility issues&lt;br&gt;• Lecture and supper rooms have average or below average utilisation&lt;br&gt;• Seismic remediation offers a rare opportunity to adjust the library layout. The process of remediation-planning provides time to find the best way to do this.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Restore Grey Lynn Library and Hall, and extend the library service into the hall</td>
<td>• Buildings are rated at 10 per cent of new building standard and are earthquake prone&lt;br&gt;• Buildings are classified heritage places protected under the Resource Management Act 1991&lt;br&gt;• Staff facilities are substandard and have accessibility issues&lt;br&gt;• Grey Lynn is experiencing the effects of low levels of library space provision&lt;br&gt;• Library has very high utilisation for its size as one of the smallest in the network&lt;br&gt;• Hall has below average utilisation for its size as a large bookable space&lt;br&gt;• Provides time to investigate long-term solutions for library provision (see intervention 4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Options to investigate improving west Waitematā community facilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interventions to investigate</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 3. Renew Grey Lynn Community Centre (underway) | • Components of the building are affected by weather-tightness issues  
• Work will extend the life of the building for a further 10-15 years  
• Provides time to investigate long-term solutions for community centre provision (see intervention 4) |
| 4. Develop a multi-purpose facility in Grey Lynn incorporating the community centre and library | • Current provision of library space is below the levels specified for the size of the population  
• Additional library space will be required over the long-term to support population growth  
• Additional community centre space will also be required in the long-term to support this population growth  
• Grey Lynn Community Centre is anticipated to require replacement in the next 10-15 years  
• Grey Lynn Library extension also only has the capacity to support provision for 10-15 years  
• Council is moving toward the development of integrated community facilities that deliver multiple services on one site |

Table 11: Recommendations

Image 7: Grey Lynn Farmers Market
Options to investigate improving west Waitematā community facilities

Attachment B: Summary of option evaluation

Workshopped with Waitematā Local Board 7 June 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Facility Intervention</th>
<th>Service Intervention</th>
<th>Strategic alignment</th>
<th>Findings alignment</th>
<th>Expected benefit period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Restore Leys Library &amp; Gymnasium, including seismic upgrade</td>
<td>Seismic upgrade of library &amp; gymnasium, Renew interior. Initiate long-term solution to issues with the library's rear wall</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Weak</td>
<td>Weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Restore Leys Library &amp; Gymnasium, including seismic upgrade</td>
<td>Seismic upgrade of library and gymnasium. Renew interior. Initiate long-term solution to issues with the library's rear wall. Renovate interior, extending service areas into underutilised or utilised spaces. Possibility of providing space for a commercial lease and using the income to offset library operational costs</td>
<td>Enhanced</td>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Develop larger facility incorporating both Ponsonby &amp; Grey Lynn Library services</td>
<td>A new, larger, library would be built to service all of Ponsonby and Grey Lynn. Grey Lynn Library and Leys Institute Library would be sold to fund new build</td>
<td>Enhanced</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Restore Grey Lynn Library &amp; Hall, including seismic work</td>
<td>Seismic upgrade of library and hall</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Weak</td>
<td>Weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Restore Grey Lynn Library &amp; Hall, including seismic work, and extend library service into the hall</td>
<td>Seismic upgrade of library and gymnasium. Interior renewal of library and possibly hall. Extend library service into the hall by opening the wall between and repurposing the hall or through an operational change</td>
<td>Enhanced</td>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Renew Grey Lynn Community Centre including remediation of weather tightness issues (work already underway)</td>
<td>This intervention was approved as part of the Community Facilities 2015/2020 work programme. Project includes replacing part of the roof and renewing the hall and kitchen</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Rebuild Grey Lynn Community Centre</td>
<td>Rebuild Grey Lynn Community Centre on the same site offering the same services</td>
<td>Enhanced</td>
<td>Weak</td>
<td>Weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Retain Grey Lynn Community Centre &amp; build new multi-purpose facility on new site</td>
<td>Either renew or rebuild the Grey Lynn Community Centre. Develop an integrated multi-purpose facility on an additional site</td>
<td>Enhanced</td>
<td>Weak</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Develop new multi-purpose facility incorporating community centre &amp; library</td>
<td>Develop an integrated multi-purpose facility on either the current Grey Lynn Community Centre site or an alternative site. Facility would provide both community centre and library services that are currently offered at Grey Lynn Community Centre and Grey Lynn Library. Grey Lynn Library &amp; Hall facility would be strengthened and repurposed. Possibility of using optimisation as a primary funding source, by establishing a mixed-use community facility and housing development to off-set cost</td>
<td>Enhanced</td>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>Strong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* short … medium … long
5 years 15 years 30 years
New community lease to Basement Theatre Trust at 313 Queen Street

File No.: CP2019/13956

Te take mō te pūrongo

Purpose of the report

1. To grant a new community lease to Basement Theatre Trust at 313 Queen Street.

Whakarāpopototanga matua

Executive summary

2. The “basement one” community space at 313 Queen Street, Auckland is currently vacant. The space was previously occupied by Silo Theatre Trust on an informal basis from 2013 up until July 2018 and prior to the commencement of the renewal works.

3. A renewal project to upgrade the condition of basement one within the building was approved by the local board in 2018 (Resolution WTM/2018/93). The purpose of the renewal works was to enable continued and ongoing use of the space. The renewal works involved renovating the kitchen (which previously only contained a sink), new windows and new bathroom facilities. The ventilation system was also upgraded. Renewal works on the space were completed in February 2019.

4. As recommended under the Auckland Council Community Occupancy Guidelines 2012, an expression of interest should be undertaken where council seeks to grant a lease for vacant space within council-owned buildings. At its workshop of 25 September 2018, the local board requested staff undertake an expression of interest (EOI) process for eligible groups interested in leasing the premises.

5. Council staff initiated the process in November 2018 which concluded on 20 December 2018. Three applications were received and an assessment identified Basement Theatre Trust as the most suitable candidate.

6. During the assessment process, council staff involving the Community Lease Specialist, Arts Advisor and the Senior Local Board Advisor, assessed the applications. Key considerations included how the space was intended to be used, willingness and opportunities to share the space and collaborate with community groups and opportunities to leverage funding towards improving the facility.

7. Under the Local Government Act 2002 and prior to the granting of a new community lease, council must publicly notify its intention to grant a new community lease where it is for a term in excess of six months. The proposed term is in accordance with the Auckland Council Community Occupancy Guidelines 2012 for council owned buildings being five years with one five year right of renewal.

8. The public have an opportunity to make submissions on the proposal. If any of the submitters wish to be heard in relating to their submission, the board should establish a hearings panel to hear these. The panel can either be the whole board or it can be delegated to members. It is useful when appointing the panel to delegate authority to hear, consider and decide on the submissions.

9. Iwi consultation is also required that can be undertaken concurrently with the public notification.

10. This report recommends that the Waitematā Local Board approve the public notification of the intent to grant a new community lease to the Basement Theatre Trust. Provided the public submissions if any, can be satisfied and that the iwi consultation is successful, it is also recommended that the local board grant to Basement Theatre Trust a new community lease for a term of five years with one five year right of renewal. The recommendations align
with the Waitematā Local Board Plan 2017 outcomes of a high-quality built environment that embraces our heritage and inclusive communities that are vibrant, healthy and connected.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) approves the public notification and iwi consultation on Auckland Council’s intention to grant a new community lease to Basement Theatre Trust

b) nominate a hearings panel to hear, consider and decide on any submissions received following the public notification process

c) grants, subject to any submissions being resolved, a new community lease to Basement Theatre Trust for that part of the council-owned building comprising approximately 168m², situated at 313 Queen Street, Auckland City, on land legally described as Allotment 4 and 5 Section 29 City of Auckland. The lease area is delineated in red and marked A on Attachment A appended to this report and will be subject to the following terms:

i. term – five (5) years commencing on the next working day after the expiration of the public notification period or should any objections be received during the public notification period, the next working day after those objections have been appropriately resolved, with one five (5) year right of renewal

ii. rent – $1.00 plus GST per annum if demanded

iii. maintenance fee - $500 plus GST per annum

iv. all other terms and conditions will be in accordance with the Auckland Council Community Occupancy Guidelines 2012.

d) delegate to the Waitematā Local Board Chairperson, in consultation with local board members, the authority to approve the Basement Theatre Trust’s Community Outcomes Plan, which will be appended to the lease document.

Horopaki
Context
11. This report considers the expression of interest applications and a proposed new community lease for part of the council-owned building located at 313 Queen Street.

12. The Waitematā Local Board is the allocated authority relating to local, recreation, sport and community facilities, including community leasing matters.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

Land, buildings and community lease
13. The land on which the council-owned building is located at 313 Queen Street, Auckland Central is legally described as Allotment 4 and 5 Section 29 City of Auckland. The land is held in fee simple by Auckland Council under the Local Government Act 2002.

14. The building comprises four levels; two basement levels, basement one being the subject premises and basement two being occupied by Q Theatre and the ground and first floor are used for commercial retail and commercial operations managed by Panuku Development Auckland.
15. A renewal project to upgrade the condition of the building was approved by the local board in 2018 (Resolution WTM/2018/93). The purpose of the renewal works was to enable continued and ongoing use of the leasable space. The renewal works involved renovating the kitchen, which previously only contained a sink, new windows and bathroom facilities. The ventilation system was also upgraded. Renewal works were completed in February 2019.

**Expressions of interest**

16. Auckland Council’s Community Occupancy Guidelines 2012 sets out the requirements for community occupancy agreements.

17. The proposed lease is for ‘basement one’ and the only community lease space within the building. In accordance with the Auckland Council Community Occupancy Guidelines 2012 the recommended term for a community lease for a council-owned building is five years with one five year right of renewal. The occupant will be charged a subsidised maintenance fee of $500 plus GST per annum in accordance with the guidelines. Additionally, the cost of electricity for the space is provided by a dedicated meter and the occupant will be responsible for this as part of its obligations under the proposed lease. Water usage will be prorated and on-charged to the occupant.

18. Under the guidelines, the procedure for granting a new community lease of vacant spaces within council-owned buildings is to call for expressions of interest from community groups. This process ensures that the proposals received seek to achieve the best community outcomes.

19. During November and December 2018, expressions of interests were called for and applications from the following three community groups were received:

- Silo Theatre Trust
- Basement Theatre Trust
- Pacific Islands Dance Fono.

20. The above applications were assessed by the Community Lease Specialist, the Senior Local Board Advisor and the Art Advisor, having regard to:

- any existing and proposed uses of the premises
- financial stability and sustainability of the groups
- suitability of the building, considering its size, location and configuration
- willingness and opportunities to share the space and collaborate with other community groups
- alignment with the Waitematā Local Board Plan 2017 outcomes

**Basement Theatre Trust**

21. The Basement Theatre Trust is a charitable trust and its objects are to foster, develop and encourage all forms of creative and performing art.

22. The Basement Theatre Trust was assessed as the most suitable occupant as it is prepared to share the space with other similar user groups. Although the Basement Theatre Trust works solely with their partnership groups, these groups in turn activate the space by sharing it with other creative and performing arts user groups.

23. The Basement Theatre Trust wishes to create an art and performance hub and is prepared to invest its own funds into the community facility to create a fit-for-purpose performing arts space. The Basement Theatre Trust is well managed and financially sustainable

24. The activities align with the Waitematā Local Board Plan 2017 outcomes of a high-quality built environment that embraces our heritage and inclusive communities that are vibrant, healthy and connected.
Silo Theatre Trust

25. Silo Theatre Trust previously occupied the basement one space at 313 Queen Street on an informal basis between 2013 and July 2018. Silo Theatre Trust vacated the building prior to the commencement of the renewal works.

26. The trusts application clearly indicated:
   
a) its willingness to share the space with a wide range of user groups
   b) its purpose to utilise the space for performing arts, aligning with the local board plan. The trust intends making the space available for artists, performance rehearsals and partners with a range of arts and performing arts group
   c) its financial stability and sustainability
   d) Its alignment with the Waitematā Local Board Plan 2017 outcome of inclusive communities that are vibrant, healthy and connected

27. One of the key determinants during the assessment is that Silo Theatre Trust proposed to seek council funding to pay towards fit out for the space as opposed to Basement Theatre Trust which is prepared to invest its own funds to improve the functionality of the space.

Pacific Islands Dance Fono

28. Pacific Islands Dance Fono scored considerably lower than the Basement Theatre and Silo Theatre. This was due in part to the group’s inability to share and collaborate as well as its limited scope for use as a dance space.

Public notification and engagement with iwi

29. The land on which the council-owned building is located at 313 Queen Street, Auckland Central is subject to the requirements of the Local Government Act 2002.

30. In accordance with section 138 of the Local Government Act 2002 any lease term in excess of six months must be publicly notified. This applies to the proposed new community lease to Basement Theatre Trust. Similarly, engagement with mana whenua is required under section 81 of the Act.

31. Staff will place an advertisement about the proposed new community lease in relevant local newspapers and on Auckland Council’s website. Submitters and or objectors will be given one calendar month in which to lodge their submissions or objections and advise whether they wish to be heard in person. Should there be any objections and the objectors wish to be heard, this will require a formal hearings process.

32. If any of the submitters wish to be heard in relation to their submission, the board should establish a hearings panel to hear these. The panel can either be the whole board or it can be delegated to members. It is useful when appointing the panel to delegate authority to hear, consider and decide on the submissions.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rūpū Kaunihera

Council group impacts and views

33. During the assessment process, community leasing staff worked with and sought feedback from the Arts Advisor and the Senior Local Board Advisor with respect to the applications and proposed lease.

34. Community Leasing staff will work collaboratively with the Art Advisor from Arts, Culture and Events, to develop a targeted community outcomes plan to achieve specific local board outcomes and deliver community benefit.
New community lease to Basement Theatre Trust at 313 Queen Street

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

35. This is an approved item on the Community Facilities Work Programme for 2018/2019, line item 3287. This item was workshopped with the local board on 25 September 2018, 26 February 2019, 30 April 2019 and 25 June 2019.

36. At its workshop of 30 April 2019 and 25 June 2019, the local board provided direction to staff on the board’s priorities for the space. The local board indicated their preference for the space to be used as rehearsal space, and sought to ensure the use is maximised through the willingness of the tenant to share the space and collaborate with other community groups and opportunities to seek additional funding to further improve the premises.

37. During the applications assessment process, council staff identified that Basement Theatre Trust already has a community lease with council for the council-owned premises located at 321 Queen Street. This provides opportunities for co-ordination of activities and day to day management oversight.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

38. Before granting a lease with a term of greater than six months, it is best practice to consult with iwi on the intent to grant a lease. Mana whenua consultation is a two-step engagement process which involves:
   a. A presentation at the Mana Whenua Forum to inform iwi of the proposed lease.
   b. written communication with mana whenua seeking feedback on the proposed lease and inviting iwi to a hui or a kaitiaki site visit.

39. A presentation this proposal was made at the Central and South Mana Whenua Forum held on 26 June 2019. Iwi representatives in attendance did not raise any objections pertaining the proposed lease.

40. Mana whenua requested that the local board install cigarette filters to the drains in the surrounding carpark accessed via Greys Avenue to stop any pollutants entering the waterways.

41. Subject to the local board approving the recommendations of this report, formal mana whenua engagement will be undertaken on the proposal by way of an email to key representatives of iwi identified as having an interest in land in the Waitematā Local Board geographical area. The email will contain detailed information on the land classification, the group and lease details. Iwi representatives will be asked to comment on any spiritual, cultural or environmental impact with respect to the proposal.

42. There are no changes to the use or operational activities being conducted on the land.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications

43. The cost of the public notification is approximately $800.00. This cost will be borne by the Community Facilities Department.

44. Should there be a formal hearing required, this cost of the hearing will be borne by Local Board Services.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations

45. Basement Theatre Trust already has a community lease with council for the council-owned premises located at 321 Queen Street. It is suggested that the local board encourages Basement Theatre Trust to actively engage with independent artists and performers to use the space. In addition, the trust should be encouraged to maximise the amount of time the
space is used as a rehearsal space rather than office space. This can be achieved by including specific measures in the community outcomes plan that is to be developed and attached to the proposed lease.

46. As there is no significant change in the current land use or change in activities, there are no identified risks in granting the lease subject to the successful outcome of public notification.

**Ngā koringa ā-muri**

**Next steps**

47. Subject to the local board approving the recommendations of this report, council staff will place an advertisement in relevant newspapers to publicly notify the proposal. Subject to any submissions being satisfied following the public notification period and the successful outcome of iwi consultation, staff will work with the successful group to formalise the lease agreement.

**Ngā tāpirihanga**

**Attachments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Site Plan</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Local Government Act sections</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ngā kaihaina**

**Signatories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Tsz Ning Chung - Community Lease Advisor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Rod Sheridan - General Manager Community Facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DEMOLITION

Interior
- Demolish existing timber framed walls, wall上来, carpenter/fixing and sanitary fixtures as indicated on floor plan. Rebuild with timber stud framing, wood paneling and multilayer wall sheathing.
- Cup and seal of existing floor joists when removed to ensure water tight integrity.
- Sustain and advise installation of new doors/frames.
- Make good / rectify existing wall (long time existing walls retained).
- Prepare existing concrete floor for installation of new vinyl flooring, stirrer specification.
- Make good to existing concrete wall / columns for new paint finish over Stirrer paint specification.

NEW CONSTRUCTION

Internal Framing
- New load-bearing frame for 313 Queen Street.
- Floor Plan Proposed for location.
- Offsite location planned for location.
- 200x45 studs @ 400 cm (up to 3m).
- Frame & stirrer between timber and concrete.

Internal Wall Lining
- Timber 50mm G6-Aquacell
- Fire-rated wall G6/Aquacell 15mm G6 Finish on each side of wall. Refer to Fire Safety details from Fire Exit Design.

Flooring
- Main Hall: Feature Floor (polished)
- Carpet area: Existing Wood Flooring
- New commercial grade vinyl flooring over existing concrete floor.
- Kitchen & Toilet area: New commercial grade vinyl flooring.

Internal Joinery
- Door panel generally: solid core doors - Paint quality. Feature Floor Plan Proposed.
- Door frame generally: painted timber hardwood.

Siting
- All work area: 200mm vinyl cladding without G6/Aquacell
- Feature Floor Area: See plan.
- Existing area: See plan.
- New area: See plan.

Sanitary Fittings / Fixtures
- HP: Feature Floor Plan Proposed
- WC: Feature Floor Plan Proposed
- Vanity: Feature Floor Plan Proposed
- Toilet Roll Holder: Feature Floor Plan Proposed

Door Hardware
- NOTE: Refer separate door schedule - by Comolka.
- Note: Courthouse (solid core wood doors)

313 Queen St - Upper Basement Level Internal Refurbishment

Auckland Council

General Notes

Scale: A0
New community lease to Basement Theatre Trust at 313 Queen Street
Attachment B
Sections 138 and 81 of the Local Government Act 2002

Subpart 3—Restrictions on disposal of parks, reserves, and endowment properties

138 Restriction on disposal of parks (by sale or otherwise)
(1) A local authority proposing to sell or otherwise dispose of a park or part of a park must consult on the proposal before it sells or disposes of, or agrees to sell or dispose of, the park or part of the park.
(2) In this section,—
   dispose of, in relation to a park, includes the granting of a lease for more than 6 months that has the effect of excluding or substantially interfering with the public’s access to the park,
   (a) means land acquired or used principally for community, recreational, environmental, cultural, or spiritual purposes; but
   (b) does not include land that is held as a reserve, or part of a reserve, under the Reserves Act 1977.

81 Contributions to decision-making processes by Māori
(1) A local authority must—
   (a) establish and maintain processes to provide opportunities for Māori to contribute to the decision-making processes of the local authority; and
   (b) consider ways in which it may foster the development of Māori capacity to contribute to the decision-making processes of the local authority; and
   (c) provide relevant information to Māori for the purposes of paragraphs (a) and (b).
(2) A local authority, in exercising its responsibility to make judgments about the manner in which subsection (1) is to be complied with, must have regard to—
   (a) the role of the local authority, as set out in section 11; and
   (b) such other matters as the local authority considers on reasonable grounds to be relevant to those judgments.
Te take mō te pūrongo

Purpose of the report

1. To seek a decision on whether to adopt a temporary alcohol ban for specified events at Western Springs Stadium for the 2019-2020 summer concert season.

Whakarāpopototanga matua

Executive summary

2. To enable a decision on whether to adopt a temporary alcohol ban, staff have assessed the request against legislative criteria, and identified and assessed two options:

   - **Option one** (status quo) – rely on existing permanent alcohol bans, including bans at Grey Lynn town centre (24/7), Western Springs Lakeside park (10pm-7am), the Zoo carpark (10pm-7am), Pt Chevalier town centre (24/7), Western Springs Gardens (10pm-7am), Old Mill reserve (10pm-7am) and Pasadena reserve (10pm-7am) shown in Attachment B.

   - **Option two** (temporary alcohol ban) – apply a temporary alcohol ban for specified events at Western Springs Stadium during the 2019-2020 summer season for the areas shown in Attachment A, from 6am (concert day) to 6am (day after concert).

3. Staff recommend the local board adopt Option two. Taking this approach is most likely to reduce disorder associated with specified events at Western Springs Stadium.

4. Staff recommend **Option two: temporary alcohol ban** because:

   - there would likely be a high level of disorder associated with events in the absence of an alcohol ban
   - the disorder is of a type likely to be reduced by an alcohol ban
   - the duration and area are limited to the concert and nearby places to and from the concerts
   - the cost of implementation is justified by the effect.

5. There is a risk that the Local Board could be perceived to have adopted an alcohol ban based on insufficient evidence. The risk of legal challenge is low and defendable.

6. If a temporary alcohol ban is adopted, Auckland Tourism and Economic Events Development (ATEED) will be responsible for informing the public and organising signage. The New Zealand Police will be responsible for enforcement.

Ngā tūtohunga

Recommendation/s

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) adopt a temporary alcohol ban for events at Western Springs Stadium in the areas shown in Attachment A:
   i) on 17 and 28 November 2019, 11 and 18 January 2020 and 6 and 22 February 2020 (or any postponement dates)
   ii) from 6am on the day of the events to 6am on the day after the events
Police have requested a temporary alcohol ban for events at Western Springs Stadium

7. The New Zealand Police (Police) have requested a temporary alcohol ban (alcohol ban) at Western Springs Stadium (Attachment A). The area includes Western Springs Stadium, Western Springs Lakeside Park, Western Springs Outer Fields and surrounding streets. The alcohol ban requested would apply from 6am on the day of the concert, to 6am on the day after each concert.

8. There are six concert events booked at Western Springs Stadium between November 2019 and February 2020:
   - Sunday 17 November 2019 (Friday Jams)
   - Thursday 28 November 2019
   - Saturday 11 January 2020
   - Saturday 18 January 2020
   - Thursday 6 February 2020
   - Saturday 22 February 2020 (Six60 concert).

9. The streets surrounding the event perimeter at Western Springs Stadium are residential, with some shops, restaurants and cafés. The request seeks to prevent alcohol-related crime and disorder caused by concert attendees that could impact residents and other attendees as they travel to and from Western Springs Stadium. This is of particular concern during the walk between Western Springs Stadium and bus stops at Grey Lynn town centre.

10. There are existing permanent alcohol bans over Grey Lynn town centre (24/7), Western Springs Lakeside park (10pm-7am), the Zoo carpark (10pm-7am), Pt Chevalier town centre (24/7), Old Mill reserve (10pm-7am), Western Springs Gardens (10pm-7am) and Pasadena reserve (10pm-7am). These existing areas are shown in Attachment B.

Alcohol bans prohibit alcohol, are adopted by local boards and enforced by the police

11. Alcohol bans prohibit the consumption or possession of alcohol in specified public places during specified times. Alcohol bans do not apply to areas covered by a Sale and Supply of Alcohol Act 2012 Special Licence.

12. The Waitematā Local Board has authority to make alcohol bans under the Auckland Council Alcohol Control Bylaw 2014 (GB/2014/121).

13. A Local Board decision to adopt an alcohol ban must meet criteria in the Local Government Act 2002 and Auckland Council Alcohol Control Bylaw 2014 (refer Table 1 and Attachment C).

14. Police enforce alcohol bans using powers of search, seizure, arrest and $250 infringement fees. Police also have powers to address incidents of crime or disorder under the Summary Offences Act 1981 and Crimes Act 1961, whether or not alcohol is involved.
Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

Staff have assessed the request against assessment criteria

15. Staff have assessed the information provided in the request against the legislative and bylaw criteria in Attachment C. Table 1 provides a summary of this assessment.

Table 1: Summary assessment of alcohol ban request against statutory and bylaw criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Staff assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is there evidence of a high-level of crime or disorder caused or made worse by alcohol consumed there?</td>
<td>Evidence shows that in the absence of a temporary alcohol ban the level of disorder in areas surrounding concerts at Western Springs Stadium can be high. Someone opposed to the request may argue that there is insufficient evidence of a high-level of harm and it is unreasonable to assume this in the absence of an alcohol ban.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the request appropriate in light of the evidence?</td>
<td>An alcohol ban is likely to prevent the type of incidents associated with alcohol consumption before and after concerts at Western Springs Stadium. Police enforcement is also likely to be effective. The cost of signage is proportionate to its effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the request proportionate in light of the evidence?</td>
<td>The requested area and duration of the temporary alcohol ban are limited to areas and times where people are likely to be drinking and disorder could occur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Is the request a justifiable and reasonable limitation on people’s rights and freedoms? | The request prevents responsible alcohol consumption in areas surrounding Western Springs Stadium before and after concerts, including at Western Springs Lakeside park. There is sufficient information to conclude that this limitation of rights or freedoms is justified, given:  
  • the high level of disorder associated with concerts that a temporary alcohol ban is likely to prevent  
  • its limited area and duration  
  • general community and Police support  
  • ability for event organisers to obtain special licences to sell alcohol at the event.  
Someone opposed to the request may argue that there is insufficient evidence of a high-level of harm to justify limiting rights or freedoms. |

Staff have identified two options in response to the assessment

16. Staff have identified the following two options in response to the assessment. The options are compared in Table 2 below.

- **Option one** (status quo) – rely on existing permanent alcohol bans, including bans at Grey Lynn town centre (24/7), Western Springs Lakeside park (10pm-7am), the Zoo carpark (10pm-7am), Pt Chevalier town centre (24/7), Western Springs Gardens
Item 18

• **Option two** (temporary alcohol ban) – temporary alcohol ban for specified events at Western Springs Stadium during the 2019-2020 summer season for the areas shown in Attachment A, from 6am (concert day) to 6am (day after concert).

Table 2: Comparative assessment of options to alcohol ban request

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Option one: Status quo</th>
<th>Option two: temporary alcohol ban</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pros</strong></td>
<td>No further limitations on people’s rights and freedoms to consume alcohol responsibly in public places surrounding the concert venue.</td>
<td>Disorder associated with events likely to be prevented or reduced. Better public perception of event safety and council.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No implementation costs for public notification or signage.</td>
<td>Implementation costs of public notification or signage to Auckland Tourism, Events and Economic Development. Reduced freedom for those who wish to consume alcohol responsibly in public places surrounding the concert venue, including Western Springs Lakeside park.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cons</strong></td>
<td>High likelihood of disorder caused or made worse by people drinking alcohol on their way to and from the concert venue.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Risks / Mitigation</strong></td>
<td>Risk that Council is perceived to have allowed harm to occur.</td>
<td>Local Board perceived to have adopted an alcohol ban based on insufficient evidence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mitigation</strong></td>
<td>Public communication that the local board considered an alcohol ban was not required.</td>
<td>Mitigation Risk of legal challenge is low and defendable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Staff recommend that the Waitematā Local Board adopt temporary alcohol ban

17. **Staff recommend** **Option two: temporary alcohol ban** because:

- there would likely be a high level of disorder associated with events in the absence of an alcohol ban
- the disorder is of a type likely to be reduced by an alcohol ban
- the duration and area are limited to the events and nearby places to and from the events
- the cost of implementation is justified by the effect.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera

Council group impacts and views

18. Decisions related to the temporary alcohol ban impact the operations of Auckland Tourism, Events and Economic Development, and Auckland Stadiums, who are responsible for
promoting the alcohol ban and associated signage. Council units are aware of these impacts and their implementation role.

**Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe**  
*Local impacts and local board views*

19. The Waitematā Local Board adopted a temporary alcohol ban for previous events at Western Springs Stadium, including for Fat Freddies Drop, Six60 and Friday Night Jams in the 2018-2019 summer concert season (WTM/2018/156).

**Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori**  
*Māori impact statement*

20. Managing alcohol-related harm associated with events helps to promote health and wellbeing, which is consistent with the outcomes of the Māori Plan for Tāmaki Makaurau. Staff have consulted Iwi and Māori health advocacy organisations previously and they support the general use of alcohol bans as a tool to reduce alcohol-related harm.

**Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea**  
*Financial implications*

21. Auckland Stadiums are responsible for meeting implementation costs (public notification and signage). Police are responsible for compliance and enforcement costs.

**Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga**  
*Risks and mitigations*

22. There is a risk with Option two (temporary alcohol ban) that the Local Board could be perceived to have adopted an alcohol ban based on insufficient evidence. The risk of legal challenge is however low and defendable.

**Ngā koringa ā-muri**  
*Next steps*

23. Auckland Tourism, Events and Economic Development and Auckland Stadiums will be responsible for implementing the temporary alcohol ban for events.

24. Auckland Stadiums will provide:
   - signage and a public notice to inform the public of the area, dates and times
   - notification letters informing all local businesses and residents of the alcohol ban.

**Ngā tāpirihanga**  
*Attachments*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Police request and proposed temporary alcohol ban area</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Current permanent alcohol bans</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Western Springs temporary alcohol ban assessment sheet</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Ngā kaihaina

#### Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Julia Harker - Policy Analyst</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Authorisers      | Deborah Edwards - Senior Policy Manager  
                  | Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board |
8 July 2019

Stephen Town
Chief Executive Officer
Auckland Council

Dear Mr. Town,

RE: Western Springs Temporary Alcohol Ban

New Zealand Police request that a temporary alcohol ban be imposed around the Western Springs Stadium, Auckland.

The purpose of this ban will be to prevent patrons and / or others from consuming alcohol in the vicinity of this venue prior to, and after events:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Date</th>
<th>Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sunday 17 Nov 2019</td>
<td>0600hrs to 0600hrs Monday 18 Nov 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday 28 Nov 2019</td>
<td>0600hrs to 0600hrs Sunday 29 Nov 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday 11 Jan 2020</td>
<td>0600hrs to 0600hrs Sunday 12 Jan 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday 18 Jan 2020</td>
<td>0600hrs to 0600hrs Sunday 19 Jan 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday 6 Feb 2020</td>
<td>0600hrs to 0600hrs Friday 7 Feb 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday 22 Feb 2020</td>
<td>0600hrs to 0600hrs Sunday 23 Feb 2020</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Over recent years these temporary alcohol bans have significantly assisted in curbing alcohol related harm and offending.

Yours sincerely,

Mathew Knowsley
Senior Sergeant
Tāmaki Makaurau Operations Planning
Auckland City District Headquarters
Temporary Alcohol Ban Request for Western Springs Stadium
### Alcohol Control Area

**Duration of Operation**

- 24 hours, 7 days a week
- 7pm to 7am daily
- 10pm to 7am during daylight saving and 7pm to 7am outside daylight saving
- Other
- Event

---

**Legend**

- This map is illustrative only and all information should be independently verified and is before taking any action.
- Copyright Auckland Council - Watermark (c)2000 Information from LINZ (c)2000. Auckland Council gives no warranty as to the accuracy and makes no representations or any information on this map and accepts no liability for any error, omission or use of this information or data. Auckland Council...
## ATTACHMENT C

### Assessment of alcohol ban request

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Request: Temporary Alcohol ban for Western Springs stadium</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Location (Area):</strong> Western Springs Stadium, adjoining parks and streets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duration:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Sunday 17 November 2019 (Friday Jams)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Thursday 28 November 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Saturday 11 January 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Saturday 19 January 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Thursday 6 February 2020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Saturday 22 February 2020 (Six60 concert)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alcohol ban period:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0600hrs 17/11/19 – 0600hrs 18/11/19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0600hrs 28/11/19 – 0600hrs 29/11/19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0600hrs 11/01/20 – 0600hrs 12/01/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0600hrs 18/01/20 – 0600hrs 19/01/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0600hrs 06/02/20 – 0600hrs 07/02/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0800hrs 22/02/20 – 0600hrs 23/02/20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Area description:
Western Springs Stadium, Western Springs Lakeside park, Western Springs outer sports fields and surrounding streets where people walk to and from the stadium often from public transport. Many of the streets surrounding the event are residential, with some shops, restaurants and cafes. The alcohol ban does not apply to areas covered by a Sale and Supply of Alcohol Act 2012 Special Licence.

### Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crime includes infringement notice, arrest or conviction records of any offences where a person can be proceeded against, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. offences against public order (disorder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. offences against persons or property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. littering and trespass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. offences resembling nuisance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. litter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. excessive noise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

2. Summary Offences Act 1991, including disorderly behaviour, offensive behaviour or language, disorderly assembly and fighting in a public place
5. Summary Offences Act 1991, section 32

---

### Evidence

- Difficult to obtain evidence about alcohol-related harm from events at Western Springs, as either no concerts have taken place without a temporary alcohol ban or incidents have not been recorded.

_x_
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item 18</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 2. Is there evidence of disorder at the location? **AND** | Disorder means "the breakdown of peaceful and law-abiding public behaviour", for example:  
- witness accounts of violence, dangerous driving, offensive or threatening behaviour  
- photos of litter, damage or vandalism.  
- At the 2017 Guns N' Roses concert at Western Springs Stadium, Police recorded seven incidents of disorder in the parks and streets surrounding the concert including:  
  - one incident of fighting  
  - six incidents of public urination on driveways, streets and parks.  
- The number of incidents at the 2017 Guns N' Roses concert would have been higher if Police were not able to enforce the alcohol ban adopted for the event (refer to appropriateness for more discussion). |
|  |  |
| 3. Is there evidence that this is caused or made worse by drinking alcohol there? **AND** | Evidence that crime or disorder is associated with alcohol may include:  
- witness accounts that offenders were drinking at the location before or at the time of the disorder  
- photos of alcohol containers at the location.  
  Discount any incidents not directly linked to alcohol.  
- Police and Auckland Council staff observed evidence of disorder at the 2017 Guns N' Roses concert which was caused by people drinking alcohol in the alcohol ban area (refer to appropriateness for more discussion). |
|  |  |
| 4. Is there evidence of a high level of crime or disorder caused or made worse by drinking alcohol there? | Assess using the Crime or Disorder Categories in Appendix 1 and the Evidence Assessment Matrixes in Appendix 2. Evidence falling in the orange or red areas are considered high or very high level.  
- The 2017 Guns N' Roses concert provides reasonable evidence that in the absence of a temporary alcohol ban the level of disorder can be in the high to very high levels of harm in the evidence assessment matrix.  
- Someone opposed to the request may argue that there is insufficient evidence and it is unreasonable to assume the level of harm would be high in the absence of an alcohol ban. |
| Is there evidence of a high level of crime or disorder at the location caused or made worse by alcohol consumed at the location? | Overall, evidence shows that in the absence of a temporary alcohol ban there can be a high level of disorder in areas surrounding concerts at Western Springs Stadium. Someone opposed to the request may argue that there is insufficient evidence of a high-level of harm and it is unreasonable to assume this in the absence of an alcohol ban. |

---

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Are incidents of a type that would likely be prevented by an alcohol ban?

**AND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Appropriateness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This could include the types of incidents, for example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sex in cars, drug use or dealing is likely to continue without alcohol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- alcohol-related litter, public urination, excessive noise and perceived threats are more likely to be prevented.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or the reasons why the location is used, for example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- incidents relating to parties at a private residence next to the location are likely to continue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- incidents relating to groups arriving specifically to drink in that location are more likely to be prevented</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- incidents relating to homeless or rough sleepers may result in displacement to more isolated locations and further harm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Incidents associated with concerts are of a type that are likely to be prevented by an alcohol ban, including fighting and public urination.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Incidents associated with concerts relate to large numbers of people travelling through the area to drink before or after a large-scale event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Will enforcement of the alcohol ban likely prevent the crime or disorder?

**AND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Appropriateness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This includes consideration of the nature of the offenders and any indication of likely police enforcement, for example:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- signage and publicity can have a preventative effect for otherwise law-abiding members of the public</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- alcohol bans are less effective if police are only able to respond to incidents of crime and disorder after they occur. They already have powers to address those incidents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- alcohol bans may be effective where police indicate they will patrol the location for a period after the alcohol ban is adopted to change behaviours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- alcohol bans are most effective where police patrol the location on an on-going basis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Notifying an alcohol ban is likely to have a preventative effect on many people bringing alcohol into the area.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Police allocate resource to manage large-scale events and plan to enforce the ban by seizing alcohol when they see breaches.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- A review of the 2017 Guns N’ Roses concert found that, while a significant number of concert-goers ignored the alcohol ban, Police enforcement ensured the number of incidents was minimised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Item 18

#### Temporary Alcohol Ban Request for Western Springs Stadium

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Consider:</th>
<th>Other Options Considered in 2017 Included:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7. Is the cost of implementation justified by the likely effect? AND</td>
<td>• what the cost of signage will be</td>
<td>o relying on the existing 24/7 alcohol ban at Grey Lynn town centre and night time ban on Western Springs Lakeside park. This option however will not have a preventative effect on people who may choose to drink alcohol on their way to or from the event via other surrounding streets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• how this compares with the likely effect of the alcohol ban</td>
<td>o Police use of Summary Offences Act 1981 powers to respond to incidents. This option however does not prevent harmful incidents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Auckland Tourism, Events and Economic Development will be responsible for signage which is internalised as part of the cost of running an event.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Is an alcohol ban a better option than any alternative solution?</td>
<td>• what has been tried prior to the request and was it effective (unlikely given a request has been made)?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• does the request make any suggestions, how would it be implemented and would it be more effective?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• could a CPTED assessment by Community Facilities provide suggestions?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>If an alternative may be better than an alcohol ban,</strong> consider an option to investigate alternatives before making a decision on the request.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>If an alternative may be complementary to an alcohol ban,</strong> consider an option to investigate alternatives in addition to adopting an alcohol ban.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Is the request appropriate in light of the evidence?

- Incidents associated with concerts are of a type that are likely to be prevented by an alcohol ban. Police enforcement is also likely to be effective. The cost of signage is proportionate to its effect.  

- **✓**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Consider</th>
<th>Proportionate</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9. Is the area requested proportionate in light of the evidence?</td>
<td>Consider:</td>
<td>&quot;The request covers areas where people drink on their way to and from concerts at Western Springs.&quot;</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• whether boundaries are clearly defined</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• the likelihood of displacement to other locations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• how long a ban should be in place (for example recurring temporary alcohol bans).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the area is considered disproportionate, consider an option that is proportionate.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Is the duration requested proportionate in light of the evidence?</td>
<td>Consider:</td>
<td>&quot;Standard time-frames are not appropriate for temporary alcohol bans.&quot;</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• the times when drinking started (this will be earlier than when the problems occurred)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• the standard time-frames for an alcohol ban for regional consistency (refer clause 7(2)(l) of the Bylaw)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• for temporary alcohol bans for events, any set-up and pack-down periods, and whether they should be recurring or one off.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the duration is considered disproportionate, consider an option that is proportionate, consider the Alcohol Control Bylaw 2014 standard timeframes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the request proportionate in light of the evidence?</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;The requested area and duration are limited to areas and times where people are likely to be drinking and disorder would occur.&quot;</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Criteria</strong></td>
<td><strong>Justified</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there sufficient information to make a decision having regard to the</td>
<td>• Police support the request.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>significance of the decision?</td>
<td>• Iwi and Māori Health Advocacy organisations have previously expressed general support for the use of alcohol bans to reduce alcohol-related harm to the community and the environment.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Council has not received complaints about the temporary alcohol bans in place for previous concerts.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will the benefits of the alcohol ban outweigh the loss of freedom to those</td>
<td>• The request prevents responsible alcohol consumption in areas surrounding Western Springs Stadium before and after concerts, including at Western Springs park.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who use the space?</td>
<td>- the high level of disorder associated with concerts that a temporary alcohol ban is likely to prevent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- its limited area and duration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- general community and Police support</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ability for event organisers to obtain special licences to sell alcohol at the events.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the request a justifiable and reasonable limitation on people's rights</td>
<td>The request prevents responsible alcohol consumption in areas surrounding Western Springs Stadium before and after concerts, including at Western Springs park. There is sufficient information to conclude that the limitation of rights or freedoms are justified, given:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and freedoms?</td>
<td>• the high level of disorder associated with concerts that a temporary alcohol ban is likely to prevent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• its limited area and duration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• general community and Police support</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ability for event organisers to obtain special licences to sell alcohol at the events.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Someone opposed to the request may argue that assuming the level of harm would be high in the absence of an alcohol ban is unreasonable, and that there is insufficient evidence.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 1 Crime or disorder categories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nuisance</th>
<th>Perceived threat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>May include:</td>
<td>When a person or groups of people drinking behave in a threatening and/or abusive manner towards each other. Residents may have a perceived fear for their safety resulting in an unwillingness to use public spaces. May include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alcohol-related litter</td>
<td>verbal threats of physical violence (directed towards other people in the group who are drinking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken alcohol bottles</td>
<td>offensive and/or aggressive behaviour (directed towards other people in the group who are drinking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excessive noise related to the consumption of alcohol in the area</td>
<td>intimidation (directed towards other people in the group who are drinking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disorder (including property damage, public urination) resulting from drinking alcohol in the area</td>
<td>abusive language (directed towards other people in the group who are drinking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>threatening actions (directed towards other people in the group who are drinking)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actual threat</th>
<th>Physical harm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When a person or groups of people drinking behave in a threatening and/or abusive manner towards members of the public outside of the drinking group. May include:</td>
<td>Where people experience actual physical harm. This could be a member of the drinking group (including cases of self-harm), or members of the public outside of the drinking group. May include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbal threats of physical violence (directed towards members of the public outside of the drinking group)</td>
<td>fighting, street brawls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offensive and/or aggressive behaviour (directed towards members of the public outside of the drinking group)</td>
<td>personal injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intimidation (directed towards members of the public outside of the drinking group)</td>
<td>assault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abusive language (directed towards members of the public outside of the drinking group)</td>
<td>Extreme examples include:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threatening actions (directed towards members of the public outside of the drinking group)</td>
<td>Sexual violence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assault with a deadly weapon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Murder, manslaughter, attempted murder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 2 Evidence Assessment Matrix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0-5 incidents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuisance</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived threat</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actual threat</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical harm</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. This report provides the Waitematā Local Board with highlights of ATEED’s activities in the Waitematā Local Board area as well as ATEED’s regional activities for the six months between 1 January to 30 June 2019.

2. This report should be read in conjunction with ATEED’s Quarter 3 report to Auckland Council (available at www.aucklandnz.com) and the forthcoming Quarter 4 report to the Auckland Council CCO Finance and Performance Committee (available 17 September). Although these reports focus primarily on the breadth of ATEED’s work at a regional level, much of the work highlighted has significant local impact.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
3. This report provides the Waitematā Local Board with relevant information on the following ATEED activities:
   - Locally Driven Initiatives (LDI): Young Enterprise Scheme, Implementation of the City Fringe Local Economic Development Action Plan, Support for the Grey Lynn Business Association
   - supporting local business growth
   - filming activity
   - youth employment pathways
   - youth connections
   - offshore talent attraction
   - local and regional destination management and marketing
   - delivered, funded and facilitated events

4. Further detail on these activities is listed under Analysis and Advice.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:
a) receive ATEED’s update to the Waitematā Local Board – August 2019.

Horopaki
Context
5. ATEED has two areas of focus:
   Economic Development – including business support, business attraction and investment, local economic development, trade and industry development, skills employment and talent and innovation and entrepreneurship.
Destination - supporting sustainable growth of the visitor economy with a focus on destination marketing and management, major events, business events (meetings and conventions) and international student attraction and retention.

6. These two portfolios also share a common platform relating to the promotion of the city globally to ensure that Auckland competes effectively with other mid-tier high quality of life cities.

7. ATEED works with local boards, Governing Body and CCOs to support decision-making on local economic growth and facilitates or co-ordinates the delivery of local economic development activity. ATEED ensures that the regional activities that ATEED leads or delivers are fully leveraged to support local economic growth and employment.

8. In addition, ATEED’s dedicated Local Economic Development (LED) team works with local boards who allocate locally driven initiatives (LDI) budget to economic development activities. The LED team delivers a range of services such as the development of proposals, including feasibility studies that enable local boards to directly fund or otherwise advocate for the implementation of local initiatives.

9. ATEED delivers its services at the local level through business hubs based in the north, west and south of the region, as well as its central office at 167B Victoria Street West.

10. Additional information about ATEED’s role and activities can be found at www.aucklandnz.com/ateed.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice

11. As at 30 June\textsuperscript{3}, 3303 businesses had been through an ATEED intervention or programme. Of these, 1145 businesses were in the Waitematā Local Board area – 411 businesses went through Destination-related programmes and 734 businesses went through Economic Development-related programmes.

Economic Development

Locally Driven Initiatives:

12. Young Enterprise Scheme: The Auckland Chamber of Commerce has delivered the Lion Foundation Young Enterprise Scheme (YES) since January 2018. ATEED maintains a strategic role. Payment was made to the Chamber during Q3. During the period, there were 58 schools participating in the Auckland YES programme, representing 1376 students completing the programme. ACG Parnell College, Auckland Girls’ Grammar School, St Mary’s College Ponsonby and Western Springs College are the four schools from the Waitematā Local Board area participating in the YES programme.

13. Implementation of the City Fringe Local Economic Development Action Plan: During Q4, the Local Board approved funding for the development of a WebApp following the receipt of a proposal from the Business Associations. A funding agreement was entered into, with the Newmarket Business Association as the lead for the project. The grant funding was paid and received by the Business Association during Q4.

14. Support for the Grey Lynn Business Association: The grant was paid in Q1 and reporting then became the responsibility of the Grey Lynn Business Association.

Supporting Local Business Growth

15. This area is serviced by the Business and Enterprise team in ATEED’s central office, located at 167B Victoria Street West. The team comprises of two Business and Innovation Advisors

\textsuperscript{2} This activity is subject to local boards prioritising local economic development, and subsequently allocating funding to local economic development through their local board agreements.

\textsuperscript{3} FY 2018/19 result for ATEED’s SOI KPI2.
and administration support. The role of this team is to support the growth of Auckland’s key internationally competitive sectors and to support to provide quality jobs.

16. A key programme in achieving this is central government’s Regional Business Partnership Network (RBPN). This is delivered by ATEED’s nine Business and Innovation Advisors (BIA), whose role is to connect local businesses to resources, experts and services in innovation, R&D, business growth and management.

17. ATEED’s BIAs engage 1:1 with businesses through a discovery meeting to understand their challenges, gather key data, and provide connections / recommendations via an action plan.

18. Where businesses qualify (meet the programme criteria and/or align to ATEED’s purpose as defined in the SOI) the advisors facilitate government support to qualifying businesses, in the form of:

- Callaghan Innovation R&D grants (including Getting Started, project and student grants [https://www.callaghaninnovation.govt.nz/grants])
- Callaghan Innovation subsidised innovation programmes [https://www.callaghaninnovation.govt.nz/innovation-skills]
- RBPN business capability vouchers (NZTE), where the business owner may be issued co-funding up to $5,000 per annum for business training via registered service providers. Voucher co-funding is prioritised to businesses accessing this service for the first time, in order to encourage more businesses to engage with experts to assist their management and growth.
- NZTE services such as Export Essentials [https://workshop.exportessentials.nz/register/]
- Referrals to NZ Business Mentors via The Chamber of Commerce.

19. During the reporting period, ATEED Business and Innovation Advisors met with 148 businesses in the Waitematā Local Board area, 26 for innovation advice and services and 125 for business growth and capability advice and services (23 were returning clients). From these engagements:

- One hundred and ten RBPN vouchers were issued to assist with business capability training
- Eighty-five connections were made to Callaghan Innovation services and programmes
- Thirty-six referrals were made to Business Mentors New Zealand
- Seventy-three connections were made to ATEED staff and programmes
- More than 600 connections were made to other businesses or programmes.

Other support for new businesses

20. During the period, ATEED also ran workshops and events aimed at establishing or growing a new business and building capability. Twenty-five people from the Waitematā Local Board area attended an event below:

- Starting off Right workshop - 4
- Business clinic – 16
- Innovation clinic - 5.
Filming activity within the Waitematā Local Board area

21. ATEED’s Screen Auckland team provides film facilitation services as part of ATEED’s support for the screen and digital sector of Auckland’s economy. Screen Auckland facilitates, processes and issues film permits for filming activity in public open space. This activity supports local businesses and employment, as well as providing a revenue stream to local boards for the use of local parks.

22. Between 1 January and 30 June 2019, 305 film permits were issued in the Auckland region across 379 locations and 404 days of filming. Of these, 68 permits were issued in the Waitematā Local Board area – the highest in the Auckland region. The Waitematā Local Board area’s share of film permit revenue was $7,623.19 for the period (total for all boards combined was $51,191.30).

23. On average, 37 crew work on each shoot day. This does not reflect filming that also takes place in studios, private property or low impact activity that wouldn't have required a permit. During the period, 81 permits were issued for TV commercials (TVC), making up 27 per cent of permits issued. A quarter of the TVC permits were destined for an international market.

24. Some of the key film productions that were issued permits to film in the Waitematā Local Board area were:
   - Ablaze (TV feature)
   - Baby, Done (feature film)
   - Falling Inn Love (feature film)
   - Jonah, The Untold Story (TV feature)
   - Only Cloud Knows (feature film)
   - Power Rangers
   - Take Home Pay (feature Film)

25. Auckland is becoming a popular destination for international television networks to pilot an episode of a new TV series to allow them to gauge if a series will be successful. Permits were issued for locations across the Auckland region earlier this year for two new US pilots.

Youth employment pathways

26. The Go with Tourism campaign was successfully launched on 5 April, attracting 170 employers and more than 700 youth by year-end. The campaign is designed to shift perceptions many young people have about careers in tourism and address the skills gap in the industry.

27. ATEED delivered the Future Ready Summit on 26 June at the Vodafone Events Centre in Manukau. Approximately 250 employers, 40 young people and 20 speakers (eight under the age of 24). The Youth Employer Pledge partners were the primary audience. The Future Ready Auckland: Driving economic development through technology and transformation insights paper was also released, attracting strong media attention - including a lead story on Radio NZ Nine to Noon. The research insights aims to better understand Auckland’s future skill needs, including future growth sectors. ATEED is currently working with pledge partners to harness the network, with a focus on south and west Auckland now that Youth Connections has transferred to The Southern Initiative.

Local Jobs and Skills Hubs

28. ATEED is the regional partner for the network of Auckland Jobs and Skills Hubs. These multi-agency hubs support employers at developments where there is a high and sustained demand for local labour and skills development. The Auckland network includes Ara (Auckland Airport development), City Centre and Tāmaki hubs. As at 30 June, 377 people had been placed into employment via the ATEED-facilitated City Centre hub, 1,914 training
outcomes were delivered, and 11 apprenticeships were facilitated. About 36 per cent of those employed are Māori, against a target of 40 per cent. ATEED has developed a school engagement pilot programme with interested employers and schools aimed at engaging students with career opportunities in the construction and infrastructure sector. ATEED also provided funding to a Progressive Employment Programme for at-risk youth, supporting cadet training and developing youth-ready capability within businesses working on the City Rail Link. The City Centre hub is a training partner for this programme.

Offshore talent attraction

29. The Auckland. We’re Hiring campaign ran from January to March 2019. The campaign is designed to attract high-skilled offshore construction and technology talent to Auckland. The campaign resulted in 2295 job applications.

Destination

30. International Consumer and Trade Marketing - Australian consumer and trade marketing programme (winter, shoulder focus), Travelport Campaign - see Trade Story Telling Word doc for further details

31. Explored the feasibility of establishing and operating a Māori/Polynesian cultural centre for Auckland, to recognise and celebrate mana whenua relationships with the Waitematā and the wider Pacific.

32. ATEED’s Destination Innovation team developed tourism cluster initiatives across the region. The goal is to support the clusters to grow capability in order to ensure that programmes are developed in preparation for Auckland’s mega year of events in 2021.

Regional destination management and marketing activity

33. The Elemental AKL winter festival website went live on 29 April. The festival ran from 1-31 July and is developed to promote sustainable tourism growth by encouraging visitation more evenly throughout the year, and dispersing visitors across the region. The programme included more than 60 free and ticketed events across the themes of light, food, entertainment, and culture. Elemental Feast went live on 4 June, with 120 restaurants participating in plating up unique festival dishes using ingredients sourced from the Auckland region and inspired by the elements. Forty-seven of these events were held in the central city.

34. ATEED also provided funding towards the delivery of the NUKU live event as part of the Elemental AKL programme. Nuku Live is a wahine empowerment wananga, focused on empowering indigenous women through storytelling and workshops that express the creativity of indigenous women in Tāmaki Makaurau.

35. The Short Break campaign, aimed at leisure travellers on Australia’s eastern seaboard, ran during Q3 and Q4. There were three bursts of the campaign, focused on themes of nature, food and wine, and ultimate things to do in Auckland featuring different parts of the region. As part of the campaign, ATEED hosted news.com.au and lifestyle.com.au in Auckland, showcasing the city’s unique offering that is promoted in the campaign. News.com.au has a reach of six million and will produce a dedicated feature on Auckland as well as share one article on Facebook with their 1.1m followers. Lifestyle.com.au has a reach of 1.2m unique viewers and will produce two dedicated online features.

Delivered, funded and facilitated events

36. During the period, ATEED delivered the 2019 Auckland Lantern Festival at the Auckland Domain. Customer satisfaction was 89 per cent, an increase of nine per cent compared to the previous year. Some key findings from the customer survey found that respondents were
very positive about what the event meant for the city, with 96 per cent of respondents agreeing that Auckland Council should continue to support events like the Lantern Festival and 94 per cent saying that the event brought people from different ethnic and cultural groups together (compared to 95 per cent and 91 per cent respectively in the previous year). The Auckland Lantern Festival’s sustainability objectives through the Cultural Festivals Strategy resulted in 62 per cent of waste being diverted from landfill. This has nearly doubled in two years, with the diversion being 34 per cent in 2017.

37. Given the need to prioritise police resourcing following the events in Christchurch on 15 March, the 2019 Pasifika festival, which was due to run on 23 and 24 March, was cancelled. Although the festival would have been an opportunity to bring Auckland’s communities together at a time of national mourning, given the unprecedented nature of what happened and after discussions with the New Zealand Police, it was agreed that Police must prioritise resourcing to ensure the safety of communities across the city.

38. During the period, residents of the Waitematā Local Board area were also able to enjoy events funded or facilitated by ATEED across the Auckland region, including the ASB Classic, Splore Music and Arts Festival, Sculpture on the Gulf, the New Zealand Comedy Festival, the Auckland Writers Festival, the Auckland Art Fair, Warhorse, and Auckland Wine Week.

39. A full schedule of major events is available on ATEED’s website, aucklandnz.com.

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views

40. ATEED assesses and manages our initiatives on a case-by-case basis and engages with the Council group where required.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views

41. Local Board views are not sought for the purposes of this report. Local Board views were sought for some of the initiatives described in this report.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement

42. The proposed decision to receive the six-monthly report has no impact on Māori. ATEED assesses and responds to any impact that our initiatives may have on Māori on a case-by-case basis.

Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications

43. The proposed decision of receiving the report has no financial implications.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations

44. The proposed decision to receive the six-monthly report has no risk. ATEED assesses and manages any risk associated with our initiatives on a case-by-case basis.

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps

45. ATEED will provide the next six-monthly report to the Local Board in February 2020 and will cover the period 1 July to 31 December 2019.
Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments
There are no attachments for this report.

Ngā kaihaina
Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Samantha-Jane Miranda - Operational Strategy Advisor (ATEED)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Quanita Khan - Manager Operational Strategy and Planning (ATEED)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To receive the Waitematā Quarter Four Work Programme update (1 April to 30 June 2019) as set out in Attachment A, and overall performance against the agreed 2018/2019 work programme for the financial year ending 30 June 2019.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. This report provides an integrated view of performance for the Waitematā Local Board and includes financial performance and delivery against work programmes for the 2018/2019 financial year.
3. Deferral of budgets of unfinished activities will be added into 2019/2020 work programmes by quarter one reporting.
4. 126 activities within the agreed work programmes were delivered including multi-year projects that have progressed as expected. Seven activities were undelivered, cancelled, put on hold or deferred and 30 activities have not progressed as expected during 2018/2019.
5. Key activities from the 2018/2019 work programme include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>WP Ref</th>
<th>Update</th>
<th>Q1 RAG</th>
<th>Q2 RAG</th>
<th>Q3 RAG</th>
<th>Q4 RAG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>254 Ponsonby Road, Ponsonby Park develop civic park space (One Local Initiative)</td>
<td>2867</td>
<td>This activity is in progress and on track for delivery FY21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myers Park Caretakers Cottage and shed - renew and restore</td>
<td>2042</td>
<td>This activity has been deferred for further investigation and scope.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parnell Baths - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>2043</td>
<td>This activity has been completed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pt Erin Pool - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>2046</td>
<td>This activity is in progress (multi-year)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salisbury Park - improve entranceway</td>
<td>2060</td>
<td>This activity has been completed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn Park - develop new changing rooms</td>
<td>2065</td>
<td>This activity is in progress and on track for delivery FY20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elam Street - renew walkway</td>
<td>3136</td>
<td>This activity is in progress and on track for delivery FY20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā - Urban Forest Restoration</td>
<td>2788</td>
<td>This activity is in progress and on track for delivery FY20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Activity 20

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>WP Ref</th>
<th>Update</th>
<th>Q1 RAG</th>
<th>Q2 RAG</th>
<th>Q3 RAG</th>
<th>Q4 RAG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Waitematā - Western Springs native bush restoration plan</td>
<td>3308</td>
<td>This activity is on hold until the outcome of the quasi-judicial process is determined.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Springs Bush Restoration - develop pathways</td>
<td>2789</td>
<td>This activity is on hold until the outcome of the quasi-judicial process is determined.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional hours to network standard: Central Library - Waitematā</td>
<td>2108</td>
<td>This activity has been completed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City play network assessment</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>This activity is in progress and will be completed Q1 FY20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Parnell Plan</td>
<td>1436</td>
<td>This activity has been completed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. The 2018/2019 financial performance report is attached, but under confidential cover. This is due to restrictions on releasing annual financial reports and results until the Auckland Council Group results are released to the NZX – expected to be made public 30 September 2019.

### Ngā tūtohunga

**Recommendation/s**

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) receive the performance report for the financial quarter four (1 April to 30 June 2019) and overall performance against the agreed 2018/2019 local board work programme for the financial year ending 30 June 2019.

b) note the financial performance report in Attachment B of the report will remain confidential until after the Auckland Council Group results for 2018/2019 are released to the NZX which are expected to be made public by 30 September 2019

### Horopaki

**Context**

7. The Waitematā Local Board has an approved 2018/2019 work programme for the following operating departments:

- Community Services: Arts, Community and Events, Parks, Sport and Recreation, Libraries and Information and Service, Strategy and Integration
- Community Facilities: Build Maintain Renew; and Community Leases
- Infrastructure and Environmental Services
- Auckland Tourism, Events and Economic Development: Local Economic Development
- Plans and Places.
8. Work programmes are produced annually, to meet the outcomes identified in the three-year Waitematā Local Board Plan. The 2017 local board plan outcomes are:

- Outcome 1: Inclusive communities that are vibrant, healthy and connected
- Outcome 2: Attractive and versatile public places that meet our communities’ needs
- Outcome 3: The natural environment is valued, protected and enhanced
- Outcome 4: A high-quality built environment that embraces our heritage
- Outcome 5: An accessible, connected and safe transport network with well-designed streets
- Outcome 6: An innovative, productive and resilient local economy.

9. The graph below shows how the work programme activities meet the local board plan outcomes. Activities that are not part of the approved work programme but contribute towards the local board outcomes, such as advocacy by the local board and project funded by the Transport Capital Fund, are not captured in this graph.

**Graph 1: work programme activities by outcome**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Waitematā Work Programme Activities by Outcome</th>
<th>Number of Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The natural environment is valued, protected and enhanced</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inclusive communities that are vibrant, healthy and connected</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attractive and versatile public places that meet our communities’ needs</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An innovative, productive and resilient local economy</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An accessible, connected and safe transport network with well-designed streets</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A high-quality built environment that embraces our heritage</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu**

Analysis and advice

**Overall performance against the Waitematā Local Board 2018/2019 work programme**

10. The graph below identifies work programme activity by RAG status (red, amber, green and grey) which measures the performance of the activity.

11. It shows the percentage of work programme activities by RAG status as follows:

- **Green**: activities that have been delivered as expected or will be completed by the end of July 2019 or multi-year activities which have progressed as planned
- **Amber**: activities which are in progress but will be completed by the end of quarter one FY20, or with issues that are being managed or are part of multi-year activity which has not progressed as expected for FY19
- **Red**: activities in progress but will not be completed by the end of quarter one FY20, activities put on hold or activities not delivered
- **Grey**: activities that have been cancelled, deferred or merged.
12. The graph below shows the activity status of activities which shows the stage of the activity in each department’s work programmes. The number of activity lines differ by department as approved in the local board work programmes.

13. The table below shows the overall performance of work programme activities (RAG status and activity status by work programme).

Table 1: End of year Local Board Work Programmes Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RAG Status</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>ACE</th>
<th>PSR</th>
<th>Libraries</th>
<th>SS&amp;I</th>
<th>CF</th>
<th>Leases</th>
<th>I&amp;ES</th>
<th>P&amp;P</th>
<th>ATEED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not delivered</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Key activity achievements from the 2018/2019 work programme

14. The key achievements in the delivery of the local board work programmes for 2018/2019 include:

- **Ponsonby Park - develop civic park space (ID 2867)**
  This is the local board’s One Local Initiative (OLI), which was approved as part of the 10-year Budget process. The project is on track and a resolution from Environment and Community Committee on 4 December 2018 has confirmed the whole land parcel at 254 Ponsonby Road can be developed as civic space. The project is now proceeding to a Detailed Business Case and design.

- **Parnell Baths - comprehensive renewal (ID 2043)**
  The physical works, including new plant and concourse, were completed and the facility re-opened on 1 December 2018. The works had no impact on operating performance. The Baths hosted a series of successful events, including inflatable days, water polo training sessions, freediving and school triathlon training.

- **Salisbury Reserve - improve entranceway (ID 2060) and Masonic Lodge Hall - demolish and remove (ID 3100)**
  This project was successfully completed in June 2019.

- **Grey Lynn Park - develop new changing rooms (ID 2065)**
  The design of the new facility was approved by the local board in May 2019 and the relevant consents have been granted. The physical works are planned to start following completion of Richmond Rover Rugby League winter season (September/October 2019).

- **Elam Street - renew walkway (ID 3136)**
  The foundations have been laid on site and the staircases are being installed. Physical works will be completed August 2019.

- **Albert Park - renew cottage (ID 2886) and Albert Park - renew band rotunda (ID 3012)**
  The successful renewal of these two important heritage places was completed in November 2018.

- **The Parnell Plan (ID 1436)**
  The Parnell Plan has been published and a well-attended launch party was held on 26 June 2019. On-going plan implementation monitoring is under way and progress will be reported annually to the local board.

- **City play network assessment (ID 366)**
  A draft plan with high-level recommendations was presented to the local board and some amendments were requested. A final version of the plan will be presented for adoption by the local board in September 2019.

15. Key projects which have not progressed as expected include:

- **Western Springs native bush restoration plan (ID 3308)**
  The resource consent granted by independent commissioners has been appealed to the Environment Court. Subject to the outcome of the Environment Court mediation/hearing the pine tree removal works is currently scheduled to occur in February or March 2020 with the removal of the pine trees and the seedling planting expected to take approximately six weeks.
- Western Springs Bush Restoration - develop pathways (ID 2789)
  This project is currently on hold as it is contingent on the outcome of the Environment Court decision regarding the bush restoration project above. A public consultation process will also be undertaken.

- Myers Park Caretakers Cottage and shed - renew and restore (ID 2042)
  Heritage and seismic assessments for the cottage have been completed. Costings for the building renewal are being prepared by an external consultant. This information will be discussed with the leasing team to investigate a potential end usage for the facility and brought to the local board for direction.

**Overview of work programme performance by department**

**Arts, Community and Events work programme**

16. In the Arts, Community and Events work programme, there are 25 activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019 (green), five activities that are in progress but are delayed (amber) and one activity that is in progress but significantly delayed (red). Activities that are delayed are set out in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity name</th>
<th>RAG status</th>
<th>Activity status</th>
<th>Explanation and mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>863 Community-led placemaking: Waitematā community empowerment initiatives</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>The budget was not fully allocated during the financial year. Unspent budget will be carried forward to 2019/2020 to deliver community projects such as the Te Maata Community Garden partnership funding of coordinator role. This will come back to the local board for a decision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>866 Increase diverse community participation: children and youth voice</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>The budget was not fully allocated in the financial year. A provider has been engaged to deliver a series of events for youth across Waitematā which should commence Q1 FY 20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1226 Community Disaster Resilience Building</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>A series of workshops were scheduled to be delivered in Q4 FY19 but will now be delivered in Q1 FY20 due to community centre availability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1540 Build capacity: responsiveness to emerging needs and issues of Waitematā’s homeless community</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>The budget was fully allocated for the financial year, however the $8000 allocation to the Heart of the City Guardians programme was subsequently funded by central government. Alternative homelessness projects are being explored with recommendations to come to the local board in Q1 2019/2020, and the budget will be carried forward to 2019/2020 for this purpose. The volunteer training was delayed until Q1 2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2452 Future governance and management options for Ellen Melville Centre</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>This initiative has been delayed. It is proposed to advance it in Q4 with a focus on reviewing the progress of the facility through the first two years of operation, to seek customer and stakeholder feedback on the current operation, as a guide to future governance and operational options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>867 Local Māori Responsiveness Action Plan</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Due to delays in sourcing a suitable contractor this programme will be completed in 2019/2020. Staff worked with the contractor to finalise a required report and the scope of work which will include a stocktake of Māori organisations and an overview of mana whenua and mataawaka activities in the local board area. The report will identify gaps and provide recommendations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Community Facilities: Build Maintain Renew work programme

17. In the Community Facilities: Build Maintain Renew work programme, there are 60 activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019 (green), nine activities that are in progress but are delayed (amber), 12 activities that are significantly delayed, on hold or not delivered (red) and one activity that has been deferred in quarter four (grey). Activities that are delayed or deferred are set out in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity name</th>
<th>RAG status</th>
<th>Activity status</th>
<th>Explanation and mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2042 Myers Park Caretakers Cottage and shed - renew and restore</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>The project has been deferred until the costs for the building renewal is known – currently being prepared by an external consultant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2048 Waitmatatā - renew paving, courts and car park FY17</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Physical works at Victoria Park were completed in June 2019. The local board to agree on the design of the shared space signage and required signs will then be installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2062 Waitmatatā - LDI Minor Capex Fund 2018/19</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>14 per cent of the LDI minor capex fund was spent FY19, towards the cost of the Ponsonby Community Centre shade sail. The balance of the fund will be carried forward to FY20. Recommendations for new minor assets in the local board area will be discussed at a workshop for the local board to consider and prioritise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2769 Newmarket Park - install park signage</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>A preliminary design is being developed and will be provided to the local board for review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2973 Waitmatatā - Parks Improvement Projects - LDI</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Several new projects were approved by the local board in December 2017 and the scheduled delivery for each of these projects will be confirmed in early FY20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3008 Highwic House - renew roads and car parks</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>This project was delayed due to consent and a Heritage New Zealand requirement to carry out archaeological investigation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3056 Studio One - Artstation - refurbish roof to fix leak</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Work to address and rectify water ingress and repair affected wall and ceiling is currently underway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3080 Heritage Foreshore - interpretation panels</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>The content to be displayed online will be confirmed with the local board and once confirmed the content will be delivered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3231 Central Library - renew boiler</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Works are expected to be completed by September 2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2028 Basque Park - renew and upgrade park assets</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>The proposed investigation into options for renewing and upgrading park assets was on hold to awaiting the finding of a concept plan being funded in FY20.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2047 St Stephens Cemetery - renew walkway</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>On hold</td>
<td>This project is on hold pending a decision on stormwater disposal options and Heritage New Zealand consent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2066 Olympic Pool - improve acoustics in main pool</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>On hold</td>
<td>Recent condition assessment conducted revealed that there were more urgent works to be undertaken e.g. Boiler, Domestic Hot Water Cylinder and Pool Hoist then to improve acoustics. The items mentioned are critical to operations. The proposed change in scope to be workshopped with the local board to seek further direction prior to physical works being undertaken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Activity name | RAG status | Activity status | Explanation and mitigation
--- | --- | --- | ---
2067 Olympic Pool - replace main pool sparge line | Red | On Hold | Due to urgent repairs required for the spa and other facilities which were critical to the operations of the pool, funds have been redirected to attend to these projects.

2789 Western Springs Bush Restoration - develop pathways | Red | On hold | Investigation and design phase for the path development is awaiting removal of the pine trees. Tree removal is currently scheduled to occur in February to March 2020. (refer 3308)

2905 Waitematā - renew utilities and furniture FY17 | Red | On hold | The renewal of the water fountains at Western Springs will wait until the design review of the park is complete (once the development plan has been adopted by the local board) as was suggested for the sign renewal within the park.

2993 Albert Park - development - stage 4 | Red | On hold | The project scope has changed and is on hold due to the need for resource consent and direction from the local board.

3017 Coxs Bay - reinsate pathway - stage 3 - Parawai Crescent section | Red | In progress | The design has been reviewed to avoid the need for an extensive retaining wall and associated costs. An agreement with the adjoining property owner is required.

3047 Albert Park - reinstate Zig Zag track FY17 | Red | In progress | All necessary consents are in place including engineering and resource consent, Heritage New Zealand Authority to Modify and Iwi approval. The budget allocation is being used to complete the central desire line path consented in conjunction with the Zig Zag track project.

3115 Pt Erin Pool - replace playground | Red | On hold | This project is on hold to ensure it is undertaken as part of a wider comprehensive renewals programme.

3308 Waitematā - Western Springs native bush restoration plan | Red | On hold | The resource consent has been appealed to the Environment Court. Subject to the outcome of that process the earliest time tree removal can occur is February to March 2020.

3358 Western Springs - Develop Seddon Fields Greenway | Red | On hold | The project is currently on hold until a decision is made about the location of the greenway in Q1 FY20.

### Service Strategy and Integration work programme

18. Both activities in the Service Strategy and Integration work programme were completed by the end of the year (green).

### Infrastructure and Environment Services work programme

19. All nine activities in the Infrastructure and Environment Services work programme were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019.

### Libraries and Information work programme

20. All eight activities in the Libraries and Information work programme, were completed by the end of the year (green).

### Local Economic Development work programme

21. The three activities in the Local Economic Development work programme were completed by the end of the year.
Parks, Sport and Recreation work programme

22. In the Parks, Sport and Recreation (PSR) work programme, there are eight activities that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019 (green) and two activities that are in progress but are delayed (amber). Activities that are delayed are set out in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity name</th>
<th>RAG status</th>
<th>Activity status</th>
<th>Explanation and mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>366 WTM: City play network assessment</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>The draft plan has been workshopped with the local board and changes will be made ahead of the proposed adoption in September 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>491 WTM: Local Implementation Plan of the Ngahere (Urban Forest) Strategy</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>The draft Ngahere local assessment report has been completed for review by the local board at a workshop in July. Based on the feedback a final report will be prepared for adoption at the September 2019 business meeting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plans and Places work programme

23. In the Plans and Places work programme, the Parnell Plan was successfully delivered.

Community Leases work programme

24. In the Community Leases work programme, there are nine leases that were completed by the end of the year or will be by end of July 2019 (green), one lease is on hold (red) and seven leases have been cancelled or deferred in quarter four (grey). Activities that are on hold, cancelled or deferred are set out in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity name</th>
<th>RAG status</th>
<th>Activity status</th>
<th>Explanation and mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1325 Sea Scout Den, 55 West End Road, Herne Bay: Lease to The Scout Association of New Zealand - Hawke Sea Scouts</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Leasing staff are seeking advice regarding the Esplanade Reserve classification to progress the lease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2658 Auckland Domain 100 Stanley St Parnell: Lease to Auckland Bowling Club Incorporated</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Leases staff need to undertake a site visit prior to progressing the lease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2662 124 Wellington Street: New lease Auckland Playcentres Association Inc - Franklin Road</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Staff to assess application received for new lease and will workshop this with the local board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2663 Heard Park; 192 Parnell Rd, Parnell: Lease to Royal New Zealand Plunket Society Incorporated</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>This item cannot be progressed until the building renovation and alteration works are completed. The local board has allocated a renewal budget as part of the FY20 work programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2667 Grey Lynn Park; 55-61 Elgin Street, Grey Lynn: Lease Renewal Richmond Rovers Rugby League Club Inc</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Lease is subject to building works under the lease terms. Staff to follow up with club regarding progress on the urgent building works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Item 20

#### Activity name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity name</th>
<th>RAG status</th>
<th>Activity status</th>
<th>Explanation and mitigation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2670 Albert Park; 33-43 Princes Street, Auckland: No current lease – “Albert Park Caretakers Cottage”</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>This item is no longer a community leasing item due to the implications of the Auckland Improvement Trust Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3287 313 Queen Street, Auckland: No current lease</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Staff have workshoped this lease with the local board and a business meeting report will go to the local board’s August 2019 business meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2665 Bayfield Park; 10 West End Road, Herne Bay: Renewal and variation Herne Bay Ponsonby Racquets Club Inc</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>On hold</td>
<td>This item is placed on hold pending discussions between Parks Sports and Recreation and the club regarding loan expiry date. This may result in requiring a variation to the lease expiry date.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Deferred activities

25. As part of the local board funding policy, activities funded through the Locally Driven Initiatives (LDI) operating fund that were not delivered in 2018/2019 will be deferred into 2019/2020 work programmes.

#### Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera

#### Council group impacts and views

26. When developing the work programmes council group impacts and views are presented to the local boards. As this is an information only report there are no further impacts identified.

#### Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe

#### Local impacts and local board views

27. This report informs the Waitematā Local Board of the performance for quarter ending 30 June 2019 and the performance for the 2018/2019 financial year.

#### 28. Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori

#### Māori impact statement

29. A number of the key projects set out in this report have involved direct engagement with iwi and the projects themselves have been refined as a result of this engagement. For example the Western Springs Te Wai Ōrea Development Plan which first featured in the 2017/2018 work programme involved consultation with iwi for direction, the Parnell Plan has been refined through iwi involvement and the Te Ha o Hine Place signage content was developed in partnership with Ngāti Whātua o Ōrākei.

30. The Waitematā Local Board will continue to ensure mana whenua have input into local board projects and that projects are refined in response to this valued input.

31. The Waitematā Local Board supports the use of traditional iwi names and dual names for public spaces as a standard approach to Māori responsiveness and to reflect the history of the local board area.

32. Mana whenua customary practices continue to be embedded into the events for the local board’s projects such as the Good Citizen’s Awards event and the launch of the Parnell Plan.
Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea

Financial implications

33. This report is provided to enable the Waitematā Local Board to monitor the organisation’s progress and performance in delivering the 2018/2019 work programmes and to report this to the public. This report is for information only and therefore there are no financial implications associated with this report.

Financial performance

34. Auckland Council currently has a number of bonds quoted on the NZ Stock Exchange (NZX). As a result, the Council is subject to obligations under the NZX Main Board & Debt Market Listing Rules and the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 sections 97 and 461H.

35. These obligations restrict the release of annual financial reports and results until the Auckland Council Group results are released to the NZX which is expected to be made public on 30 September.

36. Due to these obligations the financial performance attached to this quarterly report is under confidential cover.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga

Risks and mitigations

37. While the risk of non-delivery of the entire work programme is rare, the likelihood for risk relating to individual activities does vary. Capital projects for instance, are susceptible to more risk as on-time and on-budget delivery is dependent on weather conditions, approvals (e.g. building consents) and is susceptible to market conditions.

38. Information about any significant risks and how they are being managed and/or mitigated is addressed in the ‘Activities with significant issues’ section.

Ngā koringa ā-muri

Next steps

39. Deferral of budgets of unfinished activities will be added into 2019/2020 work programmes by quarter one reporting.

Ngā tāpirihanga

Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Waitematā Quarter 4 FY19 Work Programme Update</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Waitematā Financial Performance Report <em>(Under Separate Cover)</em> - CONFIDENTIAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina

Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Simon Tattersfield - Senior Local Board Advisor - Waitematā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or CCO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Event Partnership Fund - Waitakere</td>
<td>This non-contestable fund allows the local board to partner with local groups on community-led events. It also allows the local board to support and develop the events. Establishing these as signature events for the area, 2019/2020 is the second year of the three-year funding commitments: Festival Italiano FY 17/18: $10,000, FY 18/19: $25,000, FY 19/20: $25,000, $25,000. Artweek Auckland FY 17/18: $10,000, FY 18/19: $25,000, FY 19/20: $25,000. West End Cup FY 17/18: $10,000, FY 18/19: $25,000, FY 19/20: $25,000. Grey Lynn Park Football FY 17/18: $10,000, FY 18/19: $25,000, FY 19/20: $25,000.</td>
<td>No further decisions required</td>
<td>CS: ACE; Events</td>
<td>$63,000</td>
<td>LDR; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>All four events were successfully delivered in Q3. No events took place in Q4. Funding accountability reports are due in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Franklin Road Christmas Lights</td>
<td>Funding to enable the community to deliver a safe and free event to celebrate Christmas.</td>
<td>No further decisions required</td>
<td>CS: ACE; Events</td>
<td>$7,000</td>
<td>LDR; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The event took place in Q3. Funding accountability documentation to be provided in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Local Civic Events - Waitakere</td>
<td>Deliver and support civic events within the local board area including Ignite Waitakere Governor Hobson commemoration.</td>
<td>CS: ACE; Events</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
<td>LDR; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>No civic event was delivered in Q3.</td>
<td>No civic events were delivered in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Waitakere - Petone Festival of Roses</td>
<td>Deliver a community event where the town is in bloom of the Petone Rose Gardens. 2018 is celebration of event 25th anniversary.</td>
<td>CS: ACE; Events</td>
<td>$40,300</td>
<td>LDR; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Event was delivered in Q1.</td>
<td>Event was delivered in Q1. No activity was scheduled to occur in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Anzac Services - Waitakere</td>
<td>Support and deliver Anzac services and parades within the local board area. Greyston RSA (grant) $4,550</td>
<td>CS: ACE; Events</td>
<td>$7,000</td>
<td>LDR; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The funding agreement has been created. The event will be delivered in Q4.</td>
<td>The local board provided a grant to the Grey Lynn RSA of $4,000.00 for delivery of the Anzac Day service. The local board allocated $2,000 to the Friends of St David’s Trust for delivery of Anzac eve service. Both services were delivered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Local Event Development Fund - Waitakere</td>
<td>Support local community events through contestable grants as part of the Waitakere Community Grants Policy.</td>
<td>CS: ACE; Events</td>
<td>$42,000</td>
<td>LDR; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Auckland International Breakers Festival took place from Friday 25 January to Monday 28 January 2019. Doc Edge Festival will be taking place from Wednesday 20 May to Sunday 9 June 2019. Funding accountability documentation to be provided in Q4.</td>
<td>Funding accountability reports for the following events were provided to the local board during a workshop on 14 May 2019: Festival Italiano, West End Cup, Greyston Park Festival, Franklin Road Lights, Lighthouse Festival, The Farmer's Santa Parade, International Breakers Festival.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Myers Park Medley</td>
<td>Deliver the Myers Park Medley.</td>
<td>CS: ACE; Events</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>LDR; Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The event was delivered on Sunday, 17 February 2019 with approximately 2,700 attendees and a variety of activities and entertainment.</td>
<td>No activity was scheduled to occur in Q4. Event was delivered in Q3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Decisions</th>
<th>Lead Dept/Unit/CCG</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>115</td>
<td>Citizenship Ceremonies - Waitakere</td>
<td>Deliver an annual programme of citizenship ceremonies in conjunction with the Department of Internal Affairs.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: ACE Events</td>
<td>$19,316 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Civic Events Team delivered two citizenship ceremonies on two separate occasions during Q3 with 193 people from the local board area becoming new citizens.</td>
<td>The Civic Events Team delivered one citizenship ceremony during Q4 with 245 people from the local board area becoming new citizens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>Good Citizens Awards - Waitakere</td>
<td>Deliver the Good Citizens Awards event within the local board area.</td>
<td>No further decisions required</td>
<td>CS: ACE Events</td>
<td>$5,000 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Scheduled for Q4. Planning commenced in Q3.</td>
<td>The Good Citizens Awards were held on 16 May 2019 in the Auckland Town Hall Council Chamber. Awards were given in four categories to 21 nominees. In Q4, the Grey Lynn Community Centre delivered a variety of activities to diverse participants and developed strong relationships with the Women's Shed and local schools. The centre sponsored a place in the holiday programme for children from families identified by Oranga Tamariki who are displaced or financial challenge. The Regional Hui was held on 7 June 2019 with over 30 participants attending. This was the first community led delivered by partners in the northern region. The main objective was to bring together the community places to share information, ask questions and learn from each other. An annual update was presented to local board in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261</td>
<td>Year 3 of 3 year grant Funding Agreement &amp; Licence to Occupy and Manage - Grey Lynn Community Centre</td>
<td>Funding Agreement: Grey Lynn Community Centre incorporated to facilitate and deliver work plan outcomes, including activities and programs at Grey Lynn Community Centre for the years 2016-2019, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019. Operational funding amount to be adjusted annually in accordance with Auckland Council's agreed inflationary mechanism once confirmed.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated for 2018/2019</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$65,886 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>A holiday programme was delivered in January and February 2019 with a variety of activities for children aged 5 to 12 years old, including centre activities and day trips to local places like Pt Eira Ponds and a shared picnic in a local park. The annual presentation is being planned and will be delivered in Q4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>262</td>
<td>Year 3 of 3 year grant Funding Agreement &amp; Licence to Occupy and Manage - Ponsonby Community Centre and Leys Institute Gymnasium</td>
<td>Funding Agreement: Ponsonby Community Centre incorporated to facilitate and deliver work plan outcomes, including activities and programs at Ponsonby Community Centre including Leys Institute Gymnasium for the years 2016-2019, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019. Operational funding amount to be adjusted annually in accordance with Auckland Council's agreed inflationary mechanism once confirmed.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated for 2018/2019</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$48,253 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>A major upgrade of the children's outdoor playground was completed in Q3, including a shade sail, new soft fall grass, outdoor boardwalk and a weather proof shelter. The Leys Gymnasium had an upgrade with new non-slip vinyl in the tracks, interior painting and carpeted key entry. Feedback received from people using the facility is that they feel safer and the children can play safely outside. They sponsored a drainage project called &quot;This is how we're gonna do&quot; written by young people and performed at the Q Theatre. As part of this sponsorship, the young actors did a workshop with Head Held High youth theatre summer school that operates out of the Ponsonby Community Centre. They are working on future collaborations like this to offer more opportunities that benefit the community. The annual presentation is being planned and will be delivered in Q4.</td>
<td>A new activity was the centre in Q4: Dance 4 Us, offers dance movement therapy for youth and adults with special needs. The Regional Hui was held on 7 June 2019 with over 30 participants attending. This was the first community led delivered by partners in the northern region. The main objective was to bring together the community places to share information, ask questions and learn from each other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263</td>
<td>Year 3 of 3 year grant Funding Agreement &amp; Licence to Occupy and Manage - Parnell Community Centre</td>
<td>Funding Agreement: Parnell Community Trust to facilitate and deliver work plan outcomes, including activities and programs at Parnell Community Centre for the years 2016-2019, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2019. Operational funding amount to be adjusted annually in accordance with Auckland Council's agreed inflationary mechanism once confirmed. Licence to Occupy and Manage. Parnell Community Trust to operate the Parnell Community Centre for the years 2016-2018, commenced 1 July 2016 and terminating 30 June 2016. 2015 Staff will work with the Parnell Trust to identify programme and shared workspace opportunities with the Parnell Library.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated for 2018/2019</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$85,985 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>During Q3, there were ten two hour workshops held around the Parnell Farmers Market on Saturdays which focused on sustainable urban living. Some of the topics covered were about composting, toilet upcycling and waste management. The annual presentation is being planned and will be delivered in Q4.</td>
<td>Activities delivered in Q4 include: Sustainable Urban Living Workshops as part of the Farmers Market, urban beekeeping, chicken keeping in the city, worm farming and reducing waste. The Regional Hui was held on 2 June 2019 with over 30 participants attending. This was the first community led delivered by partners in the northern region. The main objective was to bring together the community places to share information, ask questions and learn from each other. An annual update was presented to the local board in Q4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Quarters</th>
<th>Lead Dept./Unit/GEO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>275</td>
<td>Year 3 of 3-year term grant Grey Lynn Community Centre (CLC) Additional Funds</td>
<td>Additional funds to assist Grey Lynn Community Centre Incorporated to deliver on its funding agreement to be paid in Q1</td>
<td>To be considered in conjunction with line 989, proposed plan for Grey Lynn Library Hall and resolution WTM / 2016 / 86 (i) and (ii)</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$20,000 LDL: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The funding instalment has been paid. No further updates are scheduled or required</td>
<td>The funding instalment has been paid. No further updates are scheduled or required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287</td>
<td>Operational Expenditure - Studio One To To (Council Facility)</td>
<td>Open Studio One To To, providing a diverse programme of art classes, workshops and events for adults and children; an affordable hiring space for artists to exhibit their work, shared studio spaces and makers space; and spaces for event and workshop hireage.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: ACE, Arts &amp; Culture</td>
<td>$55,675 AIS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>In Q3, there were 4,177 participants across 57 programmes with 169 different sessions, workshops, openings, talks, events, Those exhibiting and a school holiday programme. The Finge Arts Festival programme included Degrees of Separation, an exhibit with three collaborative works, a pop-up exhibition “Virtual Tinkers” by 13 artists, a pop-up ceramic exhibition. An exhibition by Menora Tong. Rainbow Youth established their artistic representations of the 2018 Out Loud project. Conversations around the bunglings and strengths of current mental health and addiction support for queer and gender diverse communities.</td>
<td>In Q4, Studio One had 3,323 participants across 100 programmes including residencies, pop-up exhibitions, touring, mentoring workshops, opening and workshops with a focus of Youth work. Two exhibitions were held: Maori partner Mapara Studios held their annual exhibition and a panel discussion. Art as a Communitcative Technology, an event the city and residents can join together, and a series of art events for people living with disabilities. Auckland Festival of Photography exhibitions featured works by Pipa Chapman and Celine Tye, a group show from the Colin Black Studio tenants, and stopped projections by Shychild Alston with Embracing the Other, an exhibition held in a Mosque in Diwa, and Isabelle Grey and Nat Van Halle focussing on the beauty of the natural world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>288</td>
<td>Operational Expenditure - Community Arts Programme</td>
<td>Fund a programme of temporary projects within the local board area (for example, PopUp Programme options to be presented to the local board at a workshop).</td>
<td></td>
<td>CS: ACE, Arts &amp; Culture</td>
<td>$65,000 LDL: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Pop 2019 programme ran across two weeks in February and March, which was the final delivery of the actuation programme with the local board. A highlight was Pop Up, activated at Tie To on the waterfront and attracting participants of all ages.</td>
<td>The Pop 2019 programme was delivered in Q3. No activity was scheduled to occur in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>289</td>
<td>Regional Work Programme Information and Updates</td>
<td>Provide timely information on regionally funded Arts and Culture projects, programmes and initiatives that have an impact or occur in the local board area.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: ACE, Arts &amp; Culture</td>
<td>$10,000 LDL: Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Rainbow Machine was launched in January 2019 at Silo Park. It was included at the Big City Out event in February 2019. Concept planning for the first of three public art projects that are aligned to the Wyndham Quarter development will start in Q4.</td>
<td>In Q4, a design for the Myers Park underpass was endorsed by the local board and the Auckland Council. Waitakorotu Environment artwork by Graham Tiveron and Roraima Gohri will be a kinetic sculpture and immersive sensory environment that celebrates this unique location. East and Found by Joe Sheehan is in the final design phase for Federal Street stage 2. The work will include large and medium-sized rocks placed singly or in clusters in three locations on the socrates of Federal Street. The rocks will feature relief-carved ‘still life’ arrangements of feathers, personal objects and be lit by large sculptural lamps. Rocks will be sourced from quarries around New Zealand to represent places many unmissed Manukau and Pakirangi schoolchildren have found. The concepts selected process continued for Wyndham Quarter, with four artists who will be present in August 2019. In response to feedback from the selection panel. A final concept will be selected in Q3 2019/2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>408</td>
<td>Community Grants (WTM)</td>
<td>Funding to support local community groups through a contestable grants process.</td>
<td>Local board to approve future grant allocations.</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$150,000 LDL: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Local Grant Round Two closed in March 2019. Decisions on grant allocations will be made by the local board in Q4.</td>
<td>There were two grants not up for - Life Education Trust Counties Manukau and the Auckland Festival. Refunds equal $3,000 were added back into the community grants budget. The local board allocated $37,175 to Local and Multi-board Grants, Round Two and $13,492 to Quick Response Round Three. There are no remaining funds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>408</td>
<td>Accommodation Grant</td>
<td>Funding to support local community groups through accommodation grants.</td>
<td></td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$125,000 LDL: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The accommodation grant round closed in Q3. Decisions on grant allocations will be made by the local board in Q4.</td>
<td>The local board allocated $125,000 to the Accommodation Support Fund 2018/2019. There are no remaining funds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Future</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit / CO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>754</td>
<td>Venue Hire - Service Delivery</td>
<td>Provide, manage and promote venues for hire, and the activities and opportunities they offer - managing the customer-centric booking and access process - continue to develop and deliver service improvement initiatives - aligning activity to local board priorities through management of the fees and charges framework. These include whether activities contribute to community outcomes offered by not-for-profit and community groups</td>
<td>Q4 - Local Board to approve fees and charges schedule for 2019/2020</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Places</td>
<td>$0 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>During Q3, staff updated the local board on fees and charges for 2019/2020. Community drop-in sessions were held across Auckland to help the local board with the online booking process. This also gives them the opportunity to raise any questions they have with the hire process or the venue they hire.</td>
<td>During Q4, 90 per cent of hires indicated that they would recommend the venues they have visited. Participant numbers have increased by 28 per cent and booking hours have increased by 39 per cent compared to the same period last year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>862</td>
<td>Build capacity - Inner City Network</td>
<td>Fund the inner city network to increase community connectedness and capacity building in the central city. The Inner City Network is a central hub for people to exchange information on what’s happening in the central city, connect, network, collaborate and initiate community projects.</td>
<td>As further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$5,000 LDI: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>In Q3, the Central City Community Network met three times. The January 2019 meeting started with a presentation of the Auckland Central Library’s New Year’s Bikkuri Kanto Greetings video, showcasing the many languages staff and customers speak. Participants were introduced to the Auckland City Centre Map, produced by a central city resident. At the February 2019 meeting, the local board chair presented on the Annual budget 2018/2020 consultation and engaged with participants about the local board priorities. The March 2019 meeting focused on Diversity and Inclusiveness and was hosted by the Ellen Melville Centre. The Central City Community Highlight meets on the fourth Thursday of the month and provides a platform for residents, community groups, organisations, agencies and entities acting for the common good within the Central City to come together and promote their work, share their stories with like-minded people and start collaborations and partnerships.</td>
<td>A funding agreement was administered and paid to the facilitator, which transformed the role of facilitator for the City Centre Community Network to the community. The funding will support the recipient to facilitate the City Centre Community Network meetings, increase community connectedness and capacity building in Auckland City centres. In Q4, the City Centre Community Network met three times. The April 2019 meeting focused on the topic of diversity, with presentations from Planefilm in Community Radio and Lenguas Internacionales. The May 2019 meeting introduced Māori as the facilitator, recapitulated findings from the July 2018 network survey and general discussion of possible speakers and discussion topics for the months ahead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>863</td>
<td>Community-lid placemaking - Waitematā community empowerment initiatives</td>
<td>Fund and support local community-led initiatives that empower and engage communities to: - have a say in the council planning and decision-making - actively engage in placemaking projects - ensure community aspirations are reflected in council-initiated projects.</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$65,000 LDI: Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In Q3, the local board approved the following grant allocations totalling $50,000 for four community-led placemaking initiatives: - $13,000 to Hīpihi Whāiao Onkie Wha-Mia Ltd for the Sturdee Street Mural Project artist supersessions of interest process. - $10,000 to City Centre Residents Group for the Victoria Quarter placemaking project. - $10,000 to the Grey Lynn Business Association for the “Glimpse-Up” Grey Lynn project. - $18,000 to Poromary Park community-led design group for the engagement activation. Staff are engaging with these community partners to support implementation of the placemaking initiatives.</td>
<td>Unspent budget will be carried forward to 2019/2020 to deliver: - To Maata Community Garden partnership funding of coordinator role. - Invercargill Station Square and Heade park, further progresses by Community Facilities below. - Community-led placemaking can contribute to the project. - An whakarongo in Whēwhē is no longer able to proceed so an alternative placemaking project will be identified in Q1 2019/2020.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitematā Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit/ COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>865</td>
<td>Community-led planning: Waiomatā gardens, food and sustainability.</td>
<td>Fund, facilitate and grow the network of local community groups with a keen interest in local community gardens, food production and sustainability initiatives by: - Funding Gardens 4 Health to provide capacity building through education and maintenance of the local community garden network - Strengthening connections between council projects to increase cross-council collaboration e.g. Waiomatā Local Carbon Action, Waiomatā Food Action, Waiomatā Community Defences - Community-led pollinator paths - Resident Communities and implementation of local area plan.</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$6,000</td>
<td>LDR Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Gardens 4 Health continues to build capacity through education and maintenance of the local community garden network. They have supported the reactivation of four gardens beds and hosted a container gardens workshop at Arahura Trust, supported the weekly Sunday morning garden session at Grifalcon Community Garden, advised on garden design and plant selection for a range of new sites, and supported management transitions for organisations such as the Te Maresa 24 Colombo Community Gardens. They are supporting the Waiomatā Neighbourhood Coordination Initiative, with a network of 30 January 2019 and 20 February 2019 Gardens 4 Health is working with Toa Whakairo to host a partner gathering on 4 May 2019 and the Organic Market Garden in Symonds Street.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>866</td>
<td>Increase diverse community participation: children and youth voice (WITM)</td>
<td>Develop, support, pilot and mentor youth to ensure that they have an influence on council decision-making and planning, especially on activities that they care about most. The focus for this activity will be guided by the recommendations in the child and youth friendly gap analyses report for Waiomatā local board area, the Queen Street re-energised and youth hub revitalised in the central city report. Continue to work with the Waiomatā Youth Collective on new approaches and ways of engaging and increase youth civic participation.</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$19,385</td>
<td>LDR Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>After the workshop was held on 12 March 2019 to present findings from the Youth Hui and next steps planned for Q4. Staff have engaged with Action Education to facilitate a Youth Hui in Q4 and will advise once dates have been confirmed. Staff met with council’s Digital Team to progress the Youth Hui Launch. Staff will update the local board in Q4.</td>
<td>After the Youth Forum in December 2018, staff worked to identify a suitable provider to deliver a series of events with young people across Waiomatā. Due to previous commitments the preferred provider could not deliver the workshops until August 2019. The proposed carry-forward budget will be used to deliver the youth events and launch the Waiomatā digital app.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>867</td>
<td>Local Māori: Responsive action plan (WITM)</td>
<td>Work with mana whenua and mākātai to create a local responsiveness engagement and implementation plan, building on the initial groundwork undertaken in 2017/18. The plan will include the following key aspirations and priorities for Māori in the area opportunities to work together a plan for building strong relationships and sharing information with Māori - The budget for this activity is deferred from 2017/2018.</td>
<td>CS: ACE Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
<td>LDR Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>In Q3 staff worked to engage a contractor to deliver the plan. This will continue in Q4.</td>
<td>Due to delays in scoring a suitable contractor this programme will be completed in 2019/2020. The outcome will be reported to the local board. Staff worked with the contractor to finalise a report retained and the scope of work which will include a workshop of Māori organisations and an overview of mana whenua and mākātai activities at the local board area. The report will identify gaps and provide recommendations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit/ COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>886</td>
<td>Ellen Mukillo Centre programme delivery</td>
<td>Plan, develop, deliver and evaluate a programme of activities that; • aligns to the outcome area of inclusive communities that are vibrant, healthy and connected • enhances community participation • seeds more residents to feel connected to their community spaces • allows participants to learn, grow and come together to have fun</td>
<td>50 further decision points.</td>
<td>CS: ACE, Community Places</td>
<td>$100,947</td>
<td>AER: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>In Q3, new programmes have been launched including Vegan Cooking Classes, Food Science Workshops for teens and Te Rau Māori language classes. All are running at capacity. The rest of the programmes remain steady or are growing in participation, with the exception of Spice programmes which have had reduced numbers by approximately one third following a change in management and tutors. This will be addressed again when renegotiating their contract in April 2019. In the Neighbourhoods Day, International Women’s Day, Pride Festival, See Week, Chinese New Year, NZ Music Month, and the Ray Wool Concert occurred in Q3 and brought diverse visitors to the centre. The use of the lounge has increased with between 80 to 200 people using the Kaitiaki Clark Room during lunch times each day. Several international days/weeks were celebrated by community partners and programmes at Ellen Mukillo Community Centre including Dance Day, Samoan Language Week, NZ Music Month, Festival of Photography, EID Festival, Women’s Day, and Matariki Tuwha. The ‘Te Rau Māori’ programme has finished and plans are being made to continue to run this programme and build on its success. Partnering with Gene New Financial Literacy, the Ellen Mukillo Community Centre hosted a weekly programme that delivered free cooking classes aiming to teach people how to prepare budget friendly, nutritious meals, making free lunches for the community in partnership with Love Food Hate Waste. The group had a wide reach within the migrant community, with classes hosting participants of up to 13 different nationalities at any one time. The workshops were scheduled to be delivered in Q4 but will now be delivered in Q1 2019/2020. Auckland Emergency Management contracted Community Workforce to facilitate the In Case of Emergency (ICE) workshops to the managers of Parnell, Ponsonby and Grey Lynn Community Centres and discussed how the workshops can be adapted to suit those communities. The managers are engaging with their communities about the workshops, which will be delivered in Q4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1226</td>
<td>Community Disaster Resilience Building</td>
<td>During 2016, Auckland Emergency Management and the local board identified the location of suitable facilities across the local board area that could provide communities with emergency preparedness information and welfare support during an emergency. The next step is to build a partnership with those facilities who are interested in listing on a leadership role in managing emergency resilience building within their local communities and providing a place of safety for their community if the community requires this, during an emergency. This will lead to two emergency resilience building workshops for community facilities and their communities.</td>
<td></td>
<td>CS: ACE, Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$2,000</td>
<td>LEF: Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Community Empowerment Unit and Emergency Management Staff introduced the In Case of Emergency (ICE) workshops to the managers of Parnell, Ponsonby and Grey Lynn Community Centres and discussed how the workshops can be adapted to suit those communities. The managers are engaging with their communities about the workshops, which will be delivered in Q4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Waitematā Local Board**

20 August 2019

Auckland Council's Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitematā Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019 Page 212
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Rules</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit, COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Stage</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1267</td>
<td>Apply the empowered communities approach - connecting communities (WMT)</td>
<td>Broker strategic, collaborative relationships and resources within the community. This includes five key activity areas: 1. Engaging communities - reaching out to less accessible and diverse groups - focusing on capacity building and inclusion; 2. Supporting community groups and relationships; 3. Strengthening community-led placemaking and planning initiatives - empowering communities to provide input into placemaking initiatives; 4. Influence decision-making on place-based planning and implementation. This includes urban revitalization activities, collaborating with relevant council departments and council-authorized organizations; 5. Enabling council - supporting groups to gain access to operational and technical expertise and identifying and addressing barriers to community empowerment.</td>
<td>CS, ACE; Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$0, LDI; Open</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Porirua Park: The strategic broker liaised with the community-led group and followed up on notification, recording of the building and community activation of the site with Penfiled. Newmarket Station Square: The strategic broker supported the youth needs assessment work and youth engagement activities. Grey Lynn Business and Resident Association: The strategic broker followed up with Opal Lynx. Residents Association regarding the finalization of the residents’ vision document. Opal Lynx Residents Association: The strategic broker met with the association to follow up on next steps for vision plan for Opal Lynx and supported the association’s vision for the future.</td>
<td>Penfiled Plan: The strategic broker supported the finalization of the document and launched the plan in Q4 and worked with Community Facilities and Parks Sport and Recreation on assessment of sites in Penfiled for community gardens. Porirua Park: The strategic broker liaised with the community-led group and followed up on the notification, recording of the building which has been acquired and community activation of the site coordinating with Penfiled. As well as working with community facilities on understanding the next steps processes for this project. Grey Lynn Business and Resident Association: The strategic broker followed up with Opal Lynx Residents Association regarding the finalization of the resident’s vision document. The community group is still working on this document. The strategic broker will continue to follow up with the resident group to get this reported back to the local board in July 2019. Grey Lynn Residents Association: The strategic broker met with the association to progress the vision document and continued to support engagement with the ADHEI project.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1540</td>
<td>Build capacity: responsibility to emerging needs and issues of Watemata’s homeless community</td>
<td>Fund initiatives that seek to address issues caused by homelessness in the Watemata Local Board area. Partner with community agencies, central government and collaborate with council teams to ensure a holistic and joined-up approach to addressing issues in the board area.</td>
<td>CS, ACE; Community Empowerment</td>
<td>$20,000, LDI; Open</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>In Q3, the local board approved the application of funds to the following three initiatives to support the needs of the homeless community in the city center: • $10,000 to Livenere to support the operation of an Auckland Housing Help Centre for a face-to-face information, advice and navigation service using a self-help approach for people who can solve their own housing needs and provide advice and support for people with multi-faceted issues; • $5,000 to Heart of the City to support the 2019 Street Guardians programme. The local board’s contribution will support operational delivery of the 2019 programme, building on the 2018 pilot; • $2,000 for a volunteer training and appreciation event hosted by the local board, to acknowledge and thank the groups and individuals who volunteer their time to support the homeless community in the local board area. Staff will work with the Auckland City Mission outreach team to provide training for the volunteers, building their capacity to support their work with the homeless community.</td>
<td>In Q2, the local board allocated $2,000 for volunteer training delivery of this training has been delayed until Q2 2019/2020 due to availability on instructor and volunteers. • $8,000 to support the Heart of the City Street Guardians programme. $2,000 allocated for volunteer training delayed until Q1 2020/2021 due to availability on contractor and volunteers. However, staff were subsequently advised that the programme has been fully funded by central government and the local board’s contribution is no longer required. Alternative homelessness projects are being explored with recommendations to come to the local board in Q4 2019/2020, and the budget will be carried forward to 2020/2021 for this purpose.</td>
<td>Supported by the grant approved in Q3, Livenere have appointed a project manager to scope the Housing Help Centre concept. The report is due in Q1 2020/2021. The Volunteer training has been delayed until Q1 2019/2020 due to non-availability of dates for the contractor delivering the training programme and promotions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Notes</td>
<td>Lead Dept / Unit / COO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2442</td>
<td>Operational Grant – TAPAC</td>
<td>Investigate the level of support to fund The</td>
<td>Local board to approve level of funding in Q1</td>
<td>CS: ACE</td>
<td>$62,500</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green新版内容</td>
<td>In Q3 at TAPAC, there were 39,941 participants and attendees across 561 programmes of 859 sessions including workshops, performances and screenings. Holiday Programmes for ages 5 to 16 included film and TV auditions, comedy and improvisation, and Shoeliner Musical Theatre. Longer courses were also offered. The 19th Contemporary Dance of Gipsticks, a collaboration with 1st New Zealand Auckland, that 38 dance educators participate in a week long workshop designed to assist NZCA dance teachers. Theatre highlights included a sold-out season of The Virginian Montage, the screening of an Indian film on domestic abuse to raise funds for KillSwine, and the filming of a Māorire Kapa Haka competition for Maori Television.</td>
<td>In Q4 at TAPAC there were 34,116 participants and attendees across 131 sessions in 274 programmes, workshops, music and dance performances, exhibitions and screenings. Theatre highlights were a showcase by Spanish improvisation Mabel - Tomo at Tutu Mātae Zelanta, experimental dance from FSH Productions, two shows in Mandarin, 1st Chinese Theatre's Love Retied and Mahua Rupunui. The Comedy Festival staged a few show and workshops for aspiring comedians. Film holiday programme series were Storytelling, Directing, Magical Music, Stage Presence, and Write a Pop Hit! Screenings (film Festival for children) held two workshops in Lego animation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2452</td>
<td>Future governance and management options for Eden Terrace Centre</td>
<td>Initiate discussions with the Local board and community organisations on future governance and operating models for the Eden Terrace Centre</td>
<td>Back to board to confirm scope</td>
<td>CS: ACE</td>
<td>$6</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber新版内容</td>
<td>No activity occurred in Q3. This initiative has been delayed. It is proposed to advance it in Q4 with a focus on reviewing the progress of the body through the first two years of operation, to seek customer and stakeholder feedback on the current operation, as a guide to future governance and operational options.</td>
<td>No activity occurred in Q4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2812</td>
<td>Community Response Fund - Watainaki</td>
<td>Discretionary fund to respond to community issues as they arise during the year</td>
<td>The local board will consider strategic assessments of proposed initiatives and projects, and approve funding for those projects after consideration of their likely benefits</td>
<td>CS: ACE</td>
<td>$37,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green新版内容</td>
<td>No allocations. Balance $10,000. WTA/2019/045 - $7,500 grant to Komomoa Gardens Trust. WTA/2019/044 - $4,000 from the Waiata Local Board Community Response Fund to implement the time restricted parking at Waitemata Park. Fund fully allocated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>623</td>
<td>Waiatea Full Service Meals Contracts</td>
<td>The full facilities maintenance contracts include all buildings, parks and open space assets, sports fields, coastal management and storm damage.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>GF: Operations</td>
<td>$4,015,146</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green新版内容</td>
<td>The third quarter of the year has seen higher temperatures and a slowing in grass growth. Use of our open spaces continue to be used to host events and is seeing a large number of recreational users. There have been a number of high profile events at the Auckland Domain, Albert Park and Mission Park over the summer months. There has been an increase in the amount of rubbish removal from sites and we are working to ensure the public becomes aware of these issues and follows our protocols. Audit continue to be carried out across the built and open space community facilities, to ensure that the facilities are being maintained to the required standard. But facilities have been a focus over the past three months and with working with the library managers, community centre managers, and the like, it has enabled us to collaboratively identify a number of renewal projects to be proposed for inclusion into the draft renewal work programme currently being considered by the local board. Operational Management and Maintenance have been working hard in planning and preparation for the new Streetscape contracts, with the green assets coming online on 1 April, 2020.</td>
<td>The fourth quarter of the year saw a much milder and drier Autumn and Winter. This has resulted in the contractor being able to keep on top of the grass mowing and not having to avoid areas that in previous years have become too wet and too dry to mow during this period. Operational Management and Maintenance have been focusing on having gardens weeded and mulched over this period. Further work has been ongoing to remove dead branches and bush disease from the gardens, resulting in well presented gardens across. With the go live of both Streetscape green and clean, Operational Management and Maintenance have been busy identifying challenging areas and working with the contractor to lift the standard throughout the Waitemata area. Initial audits show good results and there is confidence that further improvements will be made. Regular monthly meetings with stakeholders all these respective community areas, have continued and are resulting in maintenance items being identified and actioned promptly. Community Facilities has raised a large number of requests to remove illegal dumping within parks. Together with Waste and Compliance work is being done to ensure these are reported and removed in a timely manner.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Needed</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>825</td>
<td>Waitematā Arboriculture Contracts</td>
<td>The Arboriculture maintenance contracts include tree management and maintenance.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Operations</td>
<td>$159,206 AER - Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Well conditions towards the latter part of quarter two gave way to drought conditions over much of February into March. The conditions provided a challenge to keep trees planted during last winter sufficiently watered. Fortunately, the drought conditions had an adverse effect on some larger trees through parks and streets. These conditions did allow easy access into parks to undertake the summer works programme. As the weather turns, there will be a transition from park tree maintenance back to a street tree maintenance focus. Quarter four will also see the commencement of the annual tree replacement programme to replace those trees removed over the preceding year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A warm autumn saw continued tree growth take into the season. With the diminishing daylight hours the season requested to prune trees to improve sunlight into properties increased. Requests to prune trees to avoid or reduce leaf drop also increased. This may be associated with street narrowing. By the end of June the Arboriculture team were well into replacement tree planting. The progress was very pleasing as an early planting allows the best chance for tree establishment. |

| 827 | Waitematā Ecological Restoration Contracts                                 | The Ecological Restoration maintenance contracts include pest plant and animal pest management within ecologically significant parks and reserves. | No further decisions anticipated | CF - Operations | $65,230 AER - Opex | Completed | Green | Key focus areas for the third quarter consisted of high value pest plant control, false threes of the rat control programme and reactive works. High value pest plant control is a high summer priority as the pests are more active and visible, making them easier to locate and control. Pulse four scheduled to be in May. Request for service work orders received for the quarter were the highest received since contract commencement. A quarterly report of issues consistent of rat sightings and wapa pests. Operational Management and Maintenance will maintain the Portfolio changing facilities have recently been installed on site for the 2019 rugby season. The facilities will be maintained during the season and removal is scheduled for on or before October 2019. |

| 1232| Grey Lynn Park - prioritise hedge trimming                                    | The hiring of a portabuild while changing rooms is unsustainable                   | No further decisions anticipated | CF - Investigation and Design | $6,000 DLI - Opex | Completed | Green | Particular changing facilities have recently been installed on site for the 2019 rugby season. The facilities will be maintained during the season and removal is scheduled for on or before October 2019. |

| 2026| 315 Queen Street - review vacant space                                       | Renew kitchen, windows, bathroom facilities, and hot water capacity to enable recreation of liveable space. Stage one - investigate design and scope physical works. Stage two - commence physical works. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated as part of the 2018/19 programme. | No further decisions anticipated | CF - Project Delivery | $8,000 AER - Capex - Renewals | Completed | Green | Project completed March 2019 Project completed March 2019 |

| 2027| Basement Theatre - upgrade toilet and building accessibility                | Upgrade existing toilet facilities and accessibility of the theatre building on the ground level. Project has been completed but this is a multi-year funded project with funding allocated in the 2019/20 programme. | No further decisions anticipated | CF - Project Delivery | $40,000 AER - Capex - Renewals | Completed | Green | Project completed Project completed March 2019 |

| 2028| Birken Park - renew and upgrade park assets                                 | Upgrade existing toilet facilities and accessibility of the theatre building on the ground level. Project has been completed but this is a multi-year funded project with funding allocated in the 2019/20 programme. | No further decisions anticipated | CF - Investigation and Design | $10,000 AER - Capex - Renewals | On Hold | Red | Current status: Preparing business case Next steps: Local board approval of business case. |

Project is on hold awaiting the recommendations from the concept plan to be undertaken in FY20. Current status: Development of the concept plan will be undertaken in FY20 and the recommendations from this plan will inform the assets within the park that will require removal. Next step: Await the recommendations following the development of the concept plan.
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision</th>
<th>Lead Dept./ Portfolio</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td>Central Library - renew roof and cladding</td>
<td>Renew roof and cladding to prevent ongoing water leaks into the library, causing rotting timber and damage to walls, ceilings and carpet. Inductive construction start for Stage 1 (top roof) is July 2018 with estimated completion in January 2019. Stage 2 (lower decks) is estimated completed by the end of August 2019.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$200,000 ARS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Completed documentation for top roof and commence preliminary design for lower roofs. Consultant is engaged to investigate feasibility of potential metal roofing over lay option for top roof extending over areas with estimated completion in January 2019. Stage 2 (lower decks) is estimated completed by the end of August 2019 with estimated completion in June 2020. The Whare Room and Street Canopy are shedded out for priority action due to ongoing water leaks, with estimated start in June 2019 and completion in October 2019, subject to Building Consent requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2030</td>
<td>24 Logan Terrace, Parnell - remeada stone slip</td>
<td>Seal roof at crest, re-build stairs using mixed techniques to ensure future stability. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works. Stage two - commence physical works. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated as part of the 2018/19 programme.</td>
<td>Options to be consulted with the board</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$25,000 ARS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Discussion with the private land owner in regard to soil nailing works continue. There has been a delay in starting physical works on site. Next steps: Physical works are now planned to commence in early May and estimated completion in the end of June 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2031</td>
<td>Bayfield Park - renew pedestrian bridges</td>
<td>Renew pedestrian bridges at Bayfield Park. Consideration in place with Auckland Transport to potentially include the renewal of the Bayfield Pedestrian Bridge in the greenways connection plan. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of services). Stage two - physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project and is a continuation of the 2017/18 programme.</td>
<td>Options to be consulted with the board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$60,000 ARS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: A lead consultant has been awarded the contract for design and consent services. A workshop to review the scope of work and next steps was conducted on 26th March 2019. Next steps: This lead consultant will start conducting the site investigations and begin preparing concept options for the design. These will be shared at the May local board workshop for discussion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2032</td>
<td>Bayfield Park - renew stormwater</td>
<td>Renew stormwater system at the park to ensure it’s fit for purpose. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of services). Stage two - physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/19 programme.</td>
<td>Options to be consulted with the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$10,000 ARS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Reviewing of drainage ties in project vicinity is under head steps. Local board approval for the selected option and business case approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2033</td>
<td>Central Library - replace air handling units</td>
<td>Replace air handling units with two separate smaller units and replace air handling unit plug form in local board serviced assessment rooms. This is a multi-year funded project and is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (governed SP18 182 2146).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$150,000 ARS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Delivering for replacement of remaining air handling units (AHUs) in the Library. AHU 23 was replaced in 2017/18. This replacement programme will ensure long-term performance of air handling units, with increased efficiency and incorporating sustainability objectives. Next steps: Execution progressively over a multi-year period to ensure minimum disruption to the library, with expected completion by 30 June 2021.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2034</td>
<td>Central Library - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>Comprehensive internal building works including replacement of furniture, fixtures and fittings. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of services). Stage two - physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/19 programme.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$30,000 ARS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Initiation associated with investigation, design and sourcing of physical works, starting in December 2018. This is a multi-year funded project involving comprehensive internal building works, including replacement of furniture, fixtures and fittings. Next steps: Planning for progressive implementation of physical works with estimated completion in May 2020.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attachment A

**Item 20**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Options</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2035</td>
<td>Grey Lynn Community Centre - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>Renew the centre to include the following refurbishment of the interior, including access (HCP), renewal of the main hall, kitchen, refurbishment of the garden room, main hall, staff kitchen and workroom; partial refurbishment and replacement of internal membranes (gypsumboards). Works to also include the playground renewal. Stage one: Investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two: Physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/2019 programme.</td>
<td>Options to be reviewed by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$150,000</td>
<td>AER: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Strategic assessment is currently being carried out by community services. Next steps: Awairere clarification from community services with regards to implementing the works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2036</td>
<td>Grey Lynn Library - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>Comprehensive building work including HAP, kitchen replacement and refurbishment of workrooms. Stage one: Investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two: Physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/2019 programme.</td>
<td>Options for increased level of service, if recommended, to be presented to the local board in a workshop.</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>AER: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Interior upgrade assessment completed while the assessment for the building structure is still underway. Next steps: Issue tenders for the interior upgrade anticipated to commence in June 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2038</td>
<td>Herne Bay Petanque Club - refurbish bathrooms</td>
<td>Replace the bathroom fixtures and fittings to ensure fit for purpose. This project has been identified by the facility user and the leasing team. The assets are in very poor condition and not fit for purpose therefore an urgent renewal is required. Stage one: Investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two: Physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated as part of the 2019/20 programme.</td>
<td>No further discussions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>AER: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed December 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2039</td>
<td>Home Reserve - renew playground</td>
<td>Renew playground. Stage one includes the investigation, design and scope of the physical works (including options for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service subject to local board approval). Stage two includes the physical works. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/2019 programme.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>AER: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Staff will seek direction from the local board on a public consultation plan for the development of the reserve. The consultation phase has extended the project timeframe and the completion for the physical works is now estimated for December 2020. Next steps: Complete consultation and present the final options to the local board for decision making.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2040</td>
<td>Lopp Institute Hall - refurbish interior</td>
<td>Refurbish gym, toilet, kitchen area, lighting in hall and window pots, repaint interior to include entrance hall, stairs, leading, toilets, meeting rooms and community hall. Schedule of works and concept underway with exterior consultants. Consult with community hall stakeholders and gather feedback before confirm final design.</td>
<td>No further discussions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$40,000</td>
<td>AER: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed February 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2041</td>
<td>Myers Park - renew access road</td>
<td>Renew access road which includes upgrade road base, sub base and surfacing as well as drainage works and road markings. Stage one: Investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two: Physical works to commence December 2018.</td>
<td>Options to be reviewed by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$120,000</td>
<td>AER: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Waitematā Local Board
20 August 2019
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2042</td>
<td>Myers Park Caravans - cottage and shed - renew and resize</td>
<td>Renew and restore Myers Park Caretaker’s Cottage and shed to preserve heritage value. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two - physical works commence. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18-ID 2347).</td>
<td>Options to be reviewed by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$20,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Defined</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Current status: Contract has been awarded to carry out preliminary heritage and safety works to prepare the building to be accessible to carry out various assessments. These works do not form part of the main renewal/ restoration of the project.</td>
<td>Next steps: Carry out preliminary heritage and safety works followed by detailed ascertainments around seismic, embodied, heritage and structural integrity. These assessments will provide greater insight into the practicality of restoring the cottage to its original state. Findings to be presented to the local board (date to be established).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2043</td>
<td>Penall Bath - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>Comprehensive upgrade - encompassing pool tanks reining, plant maintenance, pool concourse and pavilion replacement (structural) works, rehabilitation of building fabric and surfaces. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18-ID 3155).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$120,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Physical works are complete and the facility re-opened on 1 December 2018. A change request has been submitted to align the project budget with the business case and provide a contingency for final account settlement. Settlement of contractor’s final account is in progress.</td>
<td>Next steps: Settlement of contractor’s final account; attend to any defects / omissions; handover to operations and maintenance staff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2044</td>
<td>Penall Library - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>Comprehensive building refurb, including carpet, toilet, and interior paint. Inclusion of items: doors, features and fittings. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two - physical works commence. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18-ID 3155).</td>
<td>Options to be reviewed by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$120,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Planning under action, preparing tender documents for physical works.</td>
<td>Next steps: Engage contractor for carpet replacement, interior paint and replacement of blinds within the library space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2045</td>
<td>Ponsonby Community Centre - refurbishment interior and exterior</td>
<td>Refurbish centre. The works will include building access, toilets, security access and acoustic panels. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Scope of work to be confirmed prior to stage two when physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project and is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18-ID 2347).</td>
<td>Options to be reviewed by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$120,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Investigation and design phase to be completed with a review at the schedule of works and completion of the business case.</td>
<td>Next steps: Consult the local board regarding the scope of works, concept designs and project timeframe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2046</td>
<td>P1 Emu Pond - comprehensive renewal</td>
<td>Renew the pond facilities. Stage one - investigate, design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two - physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project and is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18-ID 3155).</td>
<td>Options to be reviewed by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Project Delivery</td>
<td>$120,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Consultants have been engaged design process with concerned parties is underway/last status. Finalization of proposed design.</td>
<td>Current status: Final design and scope of works to be finalized with Consultants and Centre Management. Next steps: Work programme and delivery of physical works to be rolled out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2047</td>
<td>St Stephens Cemetery - renew pathway</td>
<td>Renew the asphalt path leading from the top of the cemetery to Judges Bay Road. This project was on hold awaiting storm water disposal options and Heritage NZ consent. Stage one - the continued investigation and redesign including options for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service subject to local board approval. If following design approval, stage two will include physical works.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF: Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$15,000 ABS - Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Current status: The project was placed on hold and remains on hold while working through options for storm water disposal and Heritage NZ consent.</td>
<td>Next steps: Staff will review the investigation and design of the proposed works to provide the local board with advice as to how to proceed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Required?</td>
<td>Lead Dept./Unit/COO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2468</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew park, courts and car park FY18</td>
<td>There are four sub-projects under this project: 1. Upgrade Victoria Park access road. This includes upgrading sub-base and surfacing including drainage works and road markings. 2. Upgrade Pumpall Reserve. This includes replacing the existing brick footpath with similar materials. 3. Replace damaged concrete footpath at Hukanui Crescent, St Mary’s Bay 4. Replace damaged concrete footpath at Joggon Bush Reserve at Maire Road, Western Springs.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>ABIS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status: The carpark at Victoria Park is the final site to be delivered within this bundling renewals project. Next steps: Physical work has been scheduled to start 1 April 2019. Estimated completion is expected before June 2019. Existing budget may not be sufficient to complete the project for Myers Park and Victoria Park access roads. Current status: Physical works at Victoria Park were completed in June 2019. Next steps: The local board to agree on the design of the shared space signage and required signs will then be installed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2469</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew park furniture, fixtures and utilities FY19</td>
<td>Renew seats, bins, signage, bollards etc as follows: Plequests, signs: Bayfield Park, Cox’s Bay Reserve, Dove Myer Robinson Park, Grey Lynn Park, Seabys, tables: St John’s Reserve, Symonds Street Cemetery West, Te陶ia Reserve, Peregian, gazebos, shelters: Dove Myer Robinson Park.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>ABIS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Assessments for these assets are anticipated to be completed in March 2019 when the scope can be determined for renewal works. Next steps: Once the assessments have been completed the options for the renewal will be recorded for consideration and prioritisation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2470</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew park fencing FY19</td>
<td>Scoping for future years physical works Condition four and five fences. Priority sites identified as: Arch HIll SCenic Reserve and Cox’s Bay Reserve. Alternatives priority sites may be nominated by the board.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>ABIS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Condition assessments for fences in the local board area are underway to identify fencing that will require renewal in the future years’ work program. Next steps: As sites are identified, staff will prepare a list for review and prioritisation by the local board at a workshop.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2471</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew park roads and carparks</td>
<td>Scoping for future years physical works. Condition four and five roads and carparks. Priority sites identified as: Cox’s Bay Reserve, Dove Myer Robinson Park. Alternative priority sites may be nominated by the board.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>ABIS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Assessments for these assets are anticipated to be completed in March 2019 when the scope can be determined for renewal works. Next steps: Once the assessments have been completed the proposed sites to be renewed will be brought to the local board for consideration and prioritisation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2472</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew park paths and tracks</td>
<td>Renew condition 4 and 5 paths and tracks. Condition four and five paths and tracks. Priority sites identified as: Albert Park, Arch Hill SCenic Reserve, Cox’s Bay Reserve, Civic Reserve. Alternatives priority sites may be nominated by the board.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>ABIS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Assessments for these assets are anticipated to be completed in March 2019 when the scope can be determined for renewal works. Next steps: Once the assessments have been completed the proposed sites to be renewed will be brought to the local board for consideration and prioritisation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2473</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew park sport fields and sport goals</td>
<td>Scoping for future years physical works. Condition four and five sport fields and goal. Priority sites identified as: Grey Lynn Park, Western Park, Freemans Bay. Alternative priority sites may be nominated by the board.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$25,350</td>
<td>ABIS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Assessments of sports assets in the local board area are underway. Next steps: Once the assessments have been completed the proposed sites to be renewed will be brought to the local board for consideration and prioritisation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2474</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew park structures</td>
<td>Scoping for future years physical works. Condition four and five for park hardscapes and platforms. Priority sites identified as Dove Myer Robinson Park, Grey Lynn Park, Western Springs Lakeide, Westhaven Park, Waiora Place Access. Alternative priority sites may be nominated by the board.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>ABIS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Assessments for these assets are anticipated to be completed in March 2019 when the scope can be determined for renewal works. Next steps: Once the assessments have been completed the proposed sites to be renewed will be brought to the local board for consideration and prioritisation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Required</td>
<td>Lead Dept/ Unit or COO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2055</td>
<td>Waitematā - new park play spaces</td>
<td>Scoping for future years physical works. Condition four and five park play spaces. Priority sites identified as Gladstone Park, Mana Reserve. Alternative priority sites may be nominated by the board.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$75,000</td>
<td>ARS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Assessments for these assets are anticipated to be completed in March 2019 when the scope can be determined for renewal works. Next steps: Once the assessments have been completed the proposed sites to be renewed will be brought to the local board for consideration and prioritisation. Current Status: The majority of site assessments have been completed, and the remaining assessments will continue into the next financial year. Next steps: Renewal recommendations will be workshoped with the local board and prioritised for delivery. Scope of works will follow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2056</td>
<td>Western Park - bike path and passing</td>
<td>Western Park boardwalk, paths and five new renewals. Install bio-wood edging to path. Renewals in line with development plan. The project is carried over from the 2016/2017 programme (balance of $27k).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$146,000</td>
<td>ARS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed October 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2057</td>
<td>Western Springs Lake/Park - playground</td>
<td>Renew the playground in accordance with the Western Springs master plan</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$30,000</td>
<td>ARS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Request for proposal are being sent out to playground equipment suppliers. Once options for playground equipment have been received, these will be presented to local board approval for approval. Next steps: Start on concept plans for the playground. Project timelines have been moved to allow for construction in September - December 2019. Current status: Options for the playground equipment and a concept plan have been presented to the local board at workshops. Preliminary detailed design works are underway. Next steps: Complete preliminary detailed design and apply for resource consents. Project timelines have shifted forward and will allow for construction during spring (September - December 2019).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2058</td>
<td>Waitematā - new old open space signage</td>
<td>Replace old signage across open spaces in the local board area. Stage one - investigate design and scope physical works (including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service). Stage two - physical works commence. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/2019 programme.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>ARS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Assessments for these assets are anticipated to be completed in March 2019 when the scope can be determined for renewal works. Next steps: Once the assessments have been completed the options for the renewal will be recorded for consideration and prioritisation. Current status: The majority of site assessments have been completed, and the remaining assessments will continue into the next financial year. Next steps: Renewal recommendations will be workshoped with the local board and prioritised for delivery. Scope of works will follow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2059</td>
<td>Alien - reserve - install retaining wall</td>
<td>Install retaining wall to ensure stability following a landslip. Stage one involves the investigation, design and scope of the physical works. Stage two will include the installation work. This reinstatement of the retaining wall is funded by</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
<td>ARS - Regen</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Geotechnical assessment report indicates the landslip can be repaired by reinforcing and replanting and no retaining wall is required. Next steps: Preparing a business case for reinstating and replanting. Current status: Geotechnical engineering was engaged to project to develop the design. Next steps: Design approval and go through procurement process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2060</td>
<td>Salisbury Park - improve entranceway</td>
<td>Improve entrance to Salisbury Park in line with the concept plan being developed in 2017/2018.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$40,000</td>
<td>LDR - Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed June 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2061</td>
<td>Sumner Road Cemetery - develop pathways</td>
<td>Install new basalt pathways, pavers and seating at Catholic Memorial</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$60,000</td>
<td>LDR - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Local board have approved the design at business meeting on 19 February. Currently out to tender for construction. Next steps: Physical works to commence in April and be completed by 30 June 2019. Current status: The contract has been awarded and physical works commenced on 20 May 2019. Next steps: Physical works to be completed by the end of August 2019 weather permitting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2062</td>
<td>Waitematā - LDR Minor Capex Fund 2018/19</td>
<td>Funding to deliver minor capex projects throughout the financial year as approved in the monthly local board workshops</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>LDR - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status: Projects to be funded from the LDR minor capex fund are yet to be identified. Potential projects that will be presented to the local board for consideration and approval. Next steps: Prior to June 2019 staff will workshop the local board to confirm the minor new assets to be allocated locally driven initiatives minor capex funding and submit a report for funding approval. The remaining LDR minor capex fund will be allocated as new assets eligible for this funding have yet to be identified. Current status: The LDR minor capex fund will be carried forward to FY20. Recommendations for new minor assets in the local board area will be discussed at a workshop for the local board to consider and prioritise. Next steps: Complete the new assets to be funded using the LDR minor capex fund and submit a report for approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2063</td>
<td>Waitematā - Open Space Development Plans</td>
<td>Undertake the review of open space development plans, and align work with the three-year renewal programme to be discussed in October 2018. The development plans to be included are: FH Reclamation, Myers Park, Medmerry Road, Western Park, and Grey Lynn Park.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$5,000</td>
<td>LDR - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: The local board has received a draft of the Open Space Development plan for review and consultation. Next steps: Once the plan is adopted, staff will proceed with drafting an implementation plan to review and consult with the local board for project prioritisation. Current status: The majority of site assessments have been completed, and the remaining assessments will continue into the next financial year. Next steps: Renewal recommendations will be workshoped with the local board and prioritised for delivery. Scope of works will follow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Options</td>
<td>Lead Dept/ Unit or COO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2085</td>
<td>Grey Lynn Park - develop new changing rooms</td>
<td>Develop four changing rooms and four toilets including demolition of the old athletics building. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 D 2155).</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$200,000 ABS - Capex – Growth</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Resource consent lodged 23 January 2019. Developed design complete. Local board workshops of final design early April 2019. Next steps: Preparation of tender documentation. Physical works planned to start following completion of Richmond River Rugby League winter season (Sept/Oct 2019).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2086</td>
<td>Olympic Pool - improve acoustics in main pool</td>
<td>Install sound treatment to improve acoustics and reduce levels of reverberation noise in the main pool area.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$150,000 ABS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Current status: Waiting advice on whether the project will proceed. Next steps: Results of the structural assessment still pending.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2087</td>
<td>Olympic Pool - replace main pool splice line</td>
<td>Assess current line and consider the most appropriate method to renew line for future proofing. This project is a continuation of the 2017/2018 programme (previous SP18 D 2155).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$210,000 ABS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Current status: Due to urgent repairs required for the spa and other facilities which were critical to the operations of the pool, funds have been redirected to attend to these. Next steps: Spa deck has been drained. Replacement of the boiler is underway.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2736</td>
<td>Studio One - Art station - renew buildings</td>
<td>Renew condition 4 and 5 assets in the villa, technicians office, cellblock and studio one. Stage one includes the investigation, design and scope of the physical works (including options for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service subject to local board approval). Stage two includes the physical works. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/19 programme.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$53,000 ABS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: A consultant has been engaged to scope the work. Next steps: Business case preparation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2769</td>
<td>Newmarket Park - install park signage</td>
<td>Install additional signage.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$32,000 LDR - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status: The investigation and scope of works is underway. Next steps: Options and concept design to be presented to the local board.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2770</td>
<td>Symonds Street Toilets - renew facility</td>
<td>Renew Symonds Street facility. Stage one: investigate, design and scope physical works including options to propose to the local board for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service. Stage two: physical works commence. This project is a multi-year funded project to be initiated as part of the 2018/19 programme.</td>
<td>Design options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$50,000 ABS - Capex – Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: The project is in Concept plan development phase. Next steps: The concept plan will be sent to the Local board for approval.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2787</td>
<td>Watemata - agrichemical Free parks</td>
<td>Deliver agrichemical free parks at Western Park, Albert Park, Main Park and the non-sport field sections of Victoria Park</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Operations</td>
<td>$71,186 LDR - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Audits continuing. Special attention being paid to Myers Park.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2788</td>
<td>Watemata - Urban Forest Restoration</td>
<td>Deliver local restoration projects to restore the urban forest in the local board area.</td>
<td>Options to be approved by the local board</td>
<td>CF - Operations</td>
<td>$65,000 LDR - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Physical works so far have been prioritised on maintenance of last year’s plantings at Soddon Fields and Papakura and site prep for this year’s new plantings, this will be followed by further pest plant control. Physical works are predicted to run through July in order to achieve the desired outcomes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Further Decision Path</td>
<td>Lead Dept/Unit or CO</td>
<td>Budget</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
<td>Q4 Commentary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2789</td>
<td>Wisdom Springs Flash Restoration - develop pathways</td>
<td>Develop pathways at Wisdom Springs. Stage one includes the investigation, design and scope of the physical works (including options for assets that may benefit from an increased level of service subject to local board approval). Stage two includes the physical works. This is a multi-year funded project to be initiated in the 2018/19 programme. Options to be approved by the local board.</td>
<td>CF, Investigation and Design</td>
<td>LEA, LDR, G2</td>
<td>$20,000 LDR</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Current status: Investigation and design phase awaiting removal of the pine trees. Next steps: Options for pathway development to be considered as soon as the programme for the tree removal is established and the new tree planting programme has commenced. Path development is on hold awaiting the removal of the pine trees.</td>
<td>Position of the pathway development to be considered as soon as the programme for the tree removal is established and the new tree planting programme has commenced. Path development is on hold awaiting the removal of the pine trees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2867</td>
<td>Orakei Park - develop civic park space</td>
<td>Overview - development of a civic park space in the Orakei area. Stage one - investigate feasibility and develop a business case for the civic area. Stage two - to confirm all detailed approach to the initiative.</td>
<td>Ongoing decision making anticipated throughout the delivery of this initiative</td>
<td>LEA, G3</td>
<td>$790,800 AOS, Capex</td>
<td>Development</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: The project is on track and a resolution from Environment and Community Committee on 4 December 2018 has confirmed the whole land parcel at 254 Ponsonby Road can be developed as civic space. Next steps: The project is now proceeding to a detailed business case and design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2879</td>
<td>Westmere Coastal Walkway - implementation</td>
<td>Construction of a coastal walkway, associated esplanade reserve and ecological restoration of adjacent areas. This project is carried over from the 2016/2017 programme (previous ID 3066).</td>
<td>Programme to be agreed before implementation</td>
<td>LEA, G2</td>
<td>$6,012 AOS</td>
<td>Development</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2886</td>
<td>Albert Park - renew cottage</td>
<td>Structural review, seismic strengthening, upgrade and interior upgrade of the Albert Park canalises cottage. This project is carried over from the 2016/2017 programme (previous ID 3066).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>LEA, LDR</td>
<td>$24,134 AOS, Capex</td>
<td>Development</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed November 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2902</td>
<td>Waitakere signage FY17</td>
<td>Waitakere Signage Renewal. This project was carried over from FY2016/2018, previous SP ID 3249.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>LEA, G1</td>
<td>$27,564 AOS, Capex</td>
<td>Development</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Grey Lynn Park signs are the last signs to be installed this April 2018. Sign also include renewal for Vermont Park name sign land steps. Completion of sign renewals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2903</td>
<td>Albert Park - renew walkways and structures</td>
<td>Albert Park walkway, lighting and landscaping. This project is carried over from the 2015/2016 programme (previous ID 3069).</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>LEA, LDR</td>
<td>$101,400 AOS, Capex</td>
<td>Development</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Planning of walks and steps complete, samples for hardwood prepared and awaiting heritage approval. Next steps: Complete detailed design and tender preparation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2904</td>
<td>Symonds Street Cemetery - renew walkways and structures</td>
<td>The project scope is being written. This project was carried over from FY2017/2018, previous SP ID 3210.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>LEA, LDR</td>
<td>$169,365 AOS, Capex</td>
<td>Development</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: The renewal part of this project is to be combined with the Symonds Street Cemetery Path Network project. The scope of the renewal works has been included in the scope and final design of the path network project. This project is the renewal component of SP 2298 to renew paving and landscaping around the Catholic Memorial (as required by Heritage NZ). Currently out to tender for physical works. Additional funding needs to be approved for this renewals work. Next steps: Secure additional funding and commence construction in April 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2905</td>
<td>Waitakere - renew utilities and furniture</td>
<td>Waitakere utility and furniture renewal. This project was carried over from FY2016/2018, previous SP ID 3348.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>LEA, LDR</td>
<td>$40,050 AOS, Capex</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Current status: The renewal of the water fountains at Western Springs should wait until the design review of the park is complete as it was suggested for the sign renewal within the park. Waterpark Reserve path lighting - current design costs received. Next steps: Provide access to the park at Western Springs on hold, proceed to implement lighting upgrade at Waterpark Reserve.</td>
<td>Current status: The renewal of the water fountains at Western Springs should wait until the design review of the park is complete as it was suggested for the sign renewal within the park. Waterpark Reserve path lighting - current design costs received. Next steps: Provide access to the park at Western Springs on hold, proceed to implement lighting upgrade at Waterpark Reserve.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit/ CO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2906</td>
<td>Waitematā - renew playground FY17/19</td>
<td>Arch Hill Scenic Reserve, Remun Reserve, Francis Reserve, Hermanns Bay Community Centre, Ireland Reserve, Buckeye Park, Stockville Reserve, Vermont Reserve, Playground Renewals, Health and Safety Urgent renewals addition, Arch Hill Scenic Reserve, Francis Reserve, Moana Reserve, Pitt Street Park, Kilsyth Reserve</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$69,330</td>
<td>ABS - Capex</td>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2973</td>
<td>Waterfront Parks Improvement Projects - ULI</td>
<td>Small projects to upgrade park facilities and assets. This project is carried over from the 2016/2017 programme (previous ID: 854).</td>
<td>Consult on projects and expenditure with local board.</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$78,489</td>
<td>ABS - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2993</td>
<td>Albert Park - development stage 4</td>
<td>Renewal of asphalt paths within Albert Park. This is the final stage of path renewals within the park and will complete all remaining sections. This project was carried forward from FY17/18, previous SharePoint ID: #2908</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
<td>ABS - Capex</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3083</td>
<td>HighPark - renew roads and car parks</td>
<td>Renewal of the various pavement areas surrounding HighPark. This project was carried over from FY2017/2018, previous SP ID 300</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$132,177</td>
<td>ABS - Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3612</td>
<td>Albert Park - band rotunda renewal</td>
<td>Albert Park Band Rotunda renewal. This project was carried over from the 2015/2016 programme.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$52,140 ARS/ Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed November 2018.</td>
<td>Project completed November 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317</td>
<td>Cross Bay - restate pathway - stage 1 - Parawea Crescent section</td>
<td>Renewal of the final section of the pathway at Cross Bay Reserve, including Parawea Crescent. Path to be resurfaced and retained to bring it back within the park boundary. Timeframe approximately 6 months.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$116,576 ARS/ Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Current status: Resource consent and building consent currently being sought. Next steps: Procure physical works contractor for works to be undertaken in May and June 2019.</td>
<td>Current status: Development undertaken by the acquisition property owners has opened the opportunity to carry out a boundary adjustment and renew the footpath within the current footprint, thereby devaluing the need for an expensive retaining wall and associated costs. Next steps: Prepare a scheme plan showing the re-located property boundaries and develop an agreement with the adjoining property owners. Delay in obtaining Resource Consent due to impact of Regional Facilities Auckland sitework management and design works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3656</td>
<td>Studio One - Art Rotation - relocated roof to fix leak</td>
<td>Fix roof leak and damaged effluent areas. This project was carried over from FY2018/19, previous SP ID 2522</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$7,600 ARS/ Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status: Consultant has been engaged to investigate the leak source and find a solution to repair the problem.</td>
<td>Next steps: Physical works procurement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3677</td>
<td>Gey-Lynn Pedestal Post - refurbish building</td>
<td>Renew all interior finishes, doors, floor coverings. Upgrade electrical fittings including distribution board. This project was carried over from FY2017/18, previous SP ID 2490</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$39,063 ARS/ Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed November 2018.</td>
<td>Project completed November 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3680</td>
<td>Heritage Foreclosures - interpretation panels</td>
<td>Design to be agreed with local board. This project was carried over from FY2017/18, previous SP ID 2383</td>
<td>Design to be agreed with local board.</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$13,840 LDT/ Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status: Council staff and the supplier will work together to confirm the QR link once theき for the website is confirmed.</td>
<td>Next steps: Consult with the local board to confirm the content to be displayed on the website.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3684</td>
<td>Lep's Institute Hall - renew security access</td>
<td>Renew security access. This project was carried over from FY2018/19, previous SP ID 2442</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$31,185 ARS/ Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed December 2018.</td>
<td>Project completed December 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3130</td>
<td>Masonic Lodge Hall - demolition and remove</td>
<td>Demolish and remove Masonic Lodge Hall. This project was carried over from FY2018/19, previous SP ID 2382</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$6 ARS/ Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed December 2018.</td>
<td>Demolition of the Masonic Hall is complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3159</td>
<td>Outrigger Park - new playground</td>
<td>Renew playground. This project was carried over from FY2018/19, previous SP ID 2365</td>
<td>Design to be agreed with local board.</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$148,066 ARS/ Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Due to public safety concerns regarding high adjacent carpark, it has been proposed to extend the original scope of works to renew both the playground and the carpark concurrently. Next steps: Add scope to include in the future work programme and design for both the carpark and play area will be presented to the local board for review and decision.</td>
<td>Current status: Completed the design for widening the carpark to ensure safe parking and pedestrian access while retaining the protection of a heritage tree. The removal of the car park and play area will be undertaken concurrently, consecutively. The detailed design is in progress. Next steps: Complete detailed design for consent purposes. Workshop design with the local board prior to commencing physical works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3125</td>
<td>Waterfront - Te Hia o Hine - install signage</td>
<td>Install signage at Te Hia o Hine. This project was carried over from FY2018/19, previous SP ID 2384</td>
<td>Design to be agreed with local board.</td>
<td>CF Project Delivery</td>
<td>$10,000 LDT/ Capex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed</td>
<td>Project completed September 2018.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Dpt Code</th>
<th>Budget (K$)</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3136</td>
<td>Earm Street - renew walkway</td>
<td>Renew walkway; This project was carried over from FY2016/2017, previous SP ID 3000.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$21,037 AES: Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Design is complete. Physical works underway. Stair case being manufactured offsite. Next steps: Complete physical works.</td>
<td>Current status: Foundations have been laid on site and staircases are being installed. Next steps: Complete physical works.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3175</td>
<td>Victoria Park - develop greenway (AT Funded)</td>
<td>Additions to existing greenway route; This project was carried forward from FY17/18, previous SharePoint ID #3472.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$49,15 External funding</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: The work encountered delay as building consent condition has not come through yet. Next steps: Procurement for physical works.</td>
<td>Current status: Contract awarded to successful contractor in tender is underway. Next steps: Physical work is going to start in mid-July 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3176</td>
<td>Salford Reserve - develop greenway (AT Funded)</td>
<td>Additions to existing greenway route; This project was carried forward from FY17/18, previous SharePoint ID #3471.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$2,220 External funding</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed.</td>
<td>Project completed December 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3223</td>
<td>Waitemata walkway signage, Waitakere - install signage</td>
<td>Install additional signage</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$19,000 AES: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Project completed. The signage installation has been done under project Waitemata Coastal/Waitakere - Implementation.</td>
<td>Project completed June 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3231</td>
<td>Central Library - renew boiler</td>
<td>Overview: the age of the existing boiler (34 years) has exceeded past the normal service life of 20 - 25 years. Recommendations are to replace the boiler. Current status: stage one - investigate and scope options to replace the boiler including consideration for heat pumps as an option. Stage two - deliver physical works in conjunction with the scheduled replacement of the roof. This project is a critical work which is to be delivered within a constrained timeframe.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$250,000 AES: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Current status: Deliver physical works with contract awarded in February 2019 and estimated completion in September 2019. Long lead time of 15 weeks for delivery of boilers from Netherlands. Next steps: Handover and close</td>
<td>Current status: Deliver physical works with contract awarded in February 2019 and estimated completion in September 2019. Long lead time of 15 weeks for delivery of boilers from Netherlands which have not arrived as yet. Next steps: Completion is still scheduled for September 2019 which handover and closure of project will occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3256</td>
<td>Western Springs - renew wastewater pipe</td>
<td>Overview: The wastewater pipe was previously connected to a building located at the Auckland Zoo. The building has now been demolished and the pipe needs to be reconnected to the existing adjacent toilet block. The toilet is out of use during the construction works and portables have been in service. Current status - deliver the physical works to reconnect the wastewater pipe and recommission the toilets. Portables will be removed.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$60,000 AES: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Current status: Physical works underway. Next steps: Complete physical works and commission operation.</td>
<td>Project completed March 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3398</td>
<td>Waitakere - Western Springs native bush restoration plan</td>
<td>Removal of the Monterey pine trees that are in decline. Restoration of a native forest. This project was carried forward from the 2015/2017 and 2017/2018 programmes.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CF - Operations</td>
<td>$150,000 LDR: Opex</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Current status: Duty commissioners are currently deciding on the outcome of the resource consent which should be known by the end of April 2019. No tree work has been carried out in this financial year.</td>
<td>Resource Consent has been granted and the Resource Consent has been appealed. Current status: Resource Consent has been granted and the Resource Consent has been appealed. The pine tree removal is currently scheduled to occur in February to March 2020. Next steps: The removal of the pine trees and the seeding planting will take approximately 6 weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3356</td>
<td>32B Queen Street, Auckland CBD - replace timber retaining wall at car park</td>
<td>Auckland Transport reported a failing timber pole retaining wall at the eastern edge of the car park, supporting a slope of approx. 30 degrees and 7m high above the wall. This project is a continuation of the health and safety project to rebuild the structure.</td>
<td>Scope of works to be presented to the local board for their review and input prior to commencement.</td>
<td>CF - Project Delivery</td>
<td>$190,000 AES: Capex - Renewals</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>No Q3 commentary required.</td>
<td>Current status: Health and safety concerns have mandated renewal of the retaining wall. The parking area directly in front of this failing retaining wall has been closed until the permanent repair work is completed. Investigation and design of the required works are currently underway. Next steps: Scope required works to renew the retaining wall and programme physical works.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Status</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3357</td>
<td>Waitāmātā - Freemans Bay Park - install new park name signs</td>
<td>Deliver the design and installation of three new park name signs for Waitāmātā - Freemans Bay Park. Park names signs to be installed in the following park locations: the corner of 70-72 Wigram Street, the Pratt Street entrance and on Huruhuru Street (outside the Community Hall). This project will be delivered in FY2019/2020.</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>CF - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>No Q3 commentary required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3358</td>
<td>Western Springs - Develop Seddon Fields Greenway</td>
<td>Design a direct greenway path for Seddon Fields past the Western Springs Football Club and car park or now with the Waitāmātā Greenways Plan. This section of greenway route has been chosen as a priority to progress to detailed design and estimate of costs only.</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>CS - Investigation and Design</td>
<td>$30,000 External funding</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>No Q3 commentary required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Community Services: Service Strategy and Integration

**1403 Investigate design, Horowhenua and Grey Lynn library facilities giving consideration to facility condition and suitability**

Investigate options for provision of library services in Grey Lynn and Porirua acknowledging the condition of the heritage assets.

- Anticipate decision on options to progress to business case in Q3 2019-2020
- CS - Service Strategy and Integration
- $0 Regional
- In progress - Green
- Current state assessment in complete. Option development and assessment underway Q4 deliverables: Workshop with local board to present findings of current state assessment and seek feedback on options.

**1404 Investigate options for provision of services in Porirua giving consideration to facility condition and suitability**

Investigate options for provision of services in Porirua acknowledging the lease tenure and partnering relationship.

- Anticipate decision on options to progress to business case in Q3 2019-2020
- CS - Service Strategy and Integration
- $0 Regional
- In progress - Green
- Workshop with local board to present project scope in February Q4 deliverables: Complete current state assessment and present findings to the local board for feedback.

#### Infrastructure and Environmental Services

**10 Compact Food Waste Initiative**

This project will work with community gardens in Waitāmātā to develop an integrated approach to creating active community composting sites for businesses and households food scraps. This will be a collaborative initiative with community gardens, businesses and the Compost Collective. It will build on work previously done. The result of this investment will develop capacity, identify barriers, appropriate waste streams and opportunities to develop a scalable network of feasible and viable community composting initiatives. This project will deliver training and testing different approaches to community composting for food scraps with community garden, local businesses and residents building a vibrant network to share knowledge and skills a report that outlines ingredients for success, what's required to continue to build capability, opportunities and next steps to create and scale initiatives that are viable and feasible.

- No further decisions in 2018/2019
- RES: Waste Solutions
- $20,000
- Green
- Completed

During quarter three the following actions have been taken place: 1. Documented case studies of community and neighbourhood composting initiatives across the region, nationally and internationally to share with the sector to identify and share the success and中国 continued development of relationships within the local community composting sector including working actively with the Love Your Greens, Te Māra Gardens Project and Te Māra Gardens. The project has undertaken cross-mapping of infrastructure sites and spaces, materials and nutrients, and entities related to community composting of food scraps across the local board area. This took place in late March 2019 to meet up with community composting groups to connect, network, share learning and knowledge. Collaborators identified prototyping and testing opportunities in Waitāmātā and are currently working with groups to begin implementation. The Waitāmātā Local Board allocated an additional $10,000 to this project to assist with engaging key sector stakeholders in the project, purchase a chipper for use by the compost sector and purchasing key materials to prototype a robust proof composting system (investment IN18/19/35). This work will be undertaken in quarter four.

This funding has achieved the following outcomes: 1. Established the Auckland Composting Network with more than 50 members; 2. Completed mapping of the Auckland Composting Network; 3. Established a database of all known community composting initiatives in Waitāmātā and beyond; 4. Identified and documented ten Auckland Composting Network members; 5. Established priorities and project areas to increase capacity and capability of existing community composting sector; 6. Set up a community composting network data collection working group; 7. Set up a community composting network strategy working group; and 8. Conducted case studies on a wide range of community composting initiatives globally and completed three formal case studies.

The Low of Waste installed three bin model front hot composting system at Te Māra Gardens and provided detailed response to the proposed Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and distributed throughout network ongoing work with For The Love of Waste.

For Further Information, contact the Waste and Resource Recovery Team at the Waitāmātā Local Board. The team can be reached by phone on 09 358 6999 or email waste@waitamatacl.govt.nz.
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Required</th>
<th>Lead Dept/Unit/COG</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Due</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>888</td>
<td>Waitakere (Moia) Creek restoration initiative - Waitematā local board</td>
<td>Support a catchment approach to restoring Waitakere by empowering community and school groups to undertake water quality monitoring and riparian restoration planting. This will continue at four sites on the Albert-Eden side of Waitakere and at two sites on the Waitakere side. The stream catchment initiative requires both the Albert-Eden and Waitematā local boards to contribute budget for the restoration activities. The following group from Waitakere requires support to maintain the following restoration activities: Western Springs College: planting and weeding. Pt Chevalier Scouts: MOUTAV: Aviation: planting and weeding.</td>
<td>No further decisions to be made in 2018/2019</td>
<td>IES: Healthy Waters</td>
<td>$20,350</td>
<td>LDR: Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The contractor has initiated weed control on sites for planting this season. Pt Chevalier School and Papakura Intermediate are being organised to carry out a combined planting day on the Waitakere around the end of May or early June 2019. Pt Chevalier School have a plant nursery and have produced 421 ecosourced plants of which 360 are large enough to plant. Another 480 plants will be supplied with local board funding providing a variety of sedges and trees for the planting day. Papakura Intermediate will plant a small variety at the end of the planting field during quarter four. A Waitakere Community meeting is being planned for 7 May 2019 at Western Springs College. Speakers at the meeting will talk about pest control, inanga spawning and the school will showcase the work they are carrying out. Local board members will receive an invitation to this meeting close to the time. A Waitakere Open Day is also being planned for early June 2019. A site for the open day is being investigated.</td>
<td>Waitakere College planted 186 plants at the Waitakere Open Day in June 2019 planting day. The Waitakere Connection also attended and talked to the students about how plants grow in wetlands and mangrove spawning. Students were shown how to plant along a ledge below the bank for mangrove spawning habitat enhancement. The north side of the Waitakere opposite this site is infested with weeds which will require weed control in the current financial year. Weed maintenance was completed in June 2019 for the Bluegum, Flinders Memorial Trust, Te Mahutarama Marae and MOTAT sites. The Bluegums group set up net traps and are using bunting five net bait stations. Two postmen were caught in June 2019. Te Mahutarama Marae had a planting day to plant plant species. Papakura Intermediate and Pt Chevalier School had a past planting day at Papakura Reserve on 19 June 2019. A Waitematā planting day and pest kit were provided for both planting days. The Bluegums group had a planting day and planted 135 plants including cacti, cypresses, tuneras and kahikatea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>889</td>
<td>Streamsides Assistance - Newmarket Stream Stage 2</td>
<td>From the Deck, Newmarket Stream Community Restoration Project is a community led initiative facilitated by Coclico Trust, in partnership with Auckland Council. The Newmarket Streamsides Assistance project is building on existing community members. Encouraging their enthusiasm and leadership, entering a shared partnerships approach. This second year of the project will build on the outcomes of the first. For example, resources and educational tools are developed as the community further defines its focus. This will benefit the community by giving them opportunities to connect with like-minded groups and allow them to share ideas, learn and build resilience. Tools and events: Coordination of the community Riverwatch priorities here as necessary - Building leadership and education - Hold planned events, including networking and practical training and working day. Continua to develop strategic decision making documents.</td>
<td>No further decisions to be made in 2018/2019</td>
<td>IES: Healthy Waters</td>
<td>$22,500</td>
<td>LDR: Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The contractor has met with the Deck community group and Auckland Council staff with a draft five-year management plan for review. The plant maintenance and preparation for the planting day was completed in quarter three and the Deck members attended a War canoe training session. In quarter four the management plan will be finalised, second and third plant maintenance and preparation will be completed and a volunteer planting day will be held. From the Deck has distributed the Autumn newsletter for the project to the local community. Conservation Volunteers New Zealand will organise the community planting day for quarter four and will advertise the event via flyers and social media.</td>
<td>The final round of weed control and site preparation has been completed. Conservation Volunteers New Zealand worked with the Deck to organise the community planting day held on 25 June 2019. Between 70 and 80 volunteers planted 350 plants with the local scouts group assisting with the barbeque. Cuttis weed control and a rubbish cleanup along the streams corridor was also able to be funded from the budget for this financial year. A conservation staff member has been working with the group to establish a bats and trapping for the rats control for future. This will be recorded in GPS coordinates and staff will continue to support animal pest control efforts by the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>928</td>
<td>Low Carbon Lifesheets - Waitakere</td>
<td>The project supports and empowers households to lead low carbon lifestyles. Targeted actions will be provided to residents, in arm energy efficiency with the potential to extend this to water conservation, zero waste, smarter mobility and/or food security. The project involves a door-to-door conversation with residents and may also include the provision of energy saving devices.</td>
<td>No further decisions to be made in 2018/2019</td>
<td>IES: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$30,000</td>
<td>LDR: Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>This project was completed in quarter one. A report will be provided to the local board in quarter four summarising the outcomes of the project.</td>
<td>This project was completed in quarter one and two. Of the 242 households who provided contact phone numbers, 193 households were successfully contacted four weeks after the initial doorstep discussion. Of those contacted, 58% took a total of 435 actions, an average of 2.6 actions per home. The most common actions completed were discussing energy efficiency with others, turning off appliances, reducing shower times and changing to energy efficient light bulbs. The final report on outcomes achieved through this project will be made available to the local board in quarter one 2019/2020 once the project findings from other local board projects has been assessed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision to be made in 2018/2019</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit or COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>529</td>
<td>Low Carbon Network</td>
<td>Support the development and activities of the Waitematā Low Carbon Network. The Low Carbon Network is a network of individuals, households, groups, businesses operating within the local board area working together to promote, support and local community activities that implement the Waitematā Local Board's Low Carbon Action Plan. Priorities for the network are identified through discussions with members and include a range of activities such as putting on a variety of networking events, providing opportunities for people to help and get involved in projects, promotion to attract and engage in waste audits and continue to develop the Facebook group into an online low carbon portal. Activities for the coming year will be discussed by the network and outlined at the beginning of the next financial year.</td>
<td>No further decisions to be made in 2018/2019</td>
<td>IES, Environmental Services</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
<td>LD, Opex</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>In quarter three, members were encouraged to get involved in the climate action conversations, in particular the Auckland Climate Action Plan Symposium. Two low carbon network members presented at the Finance and Performance Committee to highlight the need for Auckland Council to require organisations like Auckland Transport to have clear climate targets and action plans. A network member also represented the low carbon network at the Guardians of the Future: Putting ideas into action Live Lightly on 20 March 2019. New members were welcomed to the network increasing the database of 200 people. Activities for quarter three included: planning for a collaborative event on 17 April 2019 for the Love of Bees and local urban food growers to promote local organic food production. The Waitematā Low Carbon Network is supporting provision of a low carbon dinner to be held at the Ellen Baylie Centre in planning for NIWA Science. Richard McKernan to be included in a network conversation on Air Quality in April 2019 — wider low carbon network events include a youth focused activity collaborating with the Whoa Youth Board and an Arts and Climate change series at Ecocut West over March and April 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531</td>
<td>Low Carbon Multi Unit Dwellings</td>
<td>This proposal provides apartment managers and body corporates advice on how best to reduce their CO2 emissions. Options for 2018/2019 include Continuation of the approach undertaken in 2017/2018 by: Building on the brief scoping review that was undertaken in 2017/2018, to continue to improve understanding of best practice as this is a relatively new area in NZ. Further developing and refining of the assessment tool and implementation approach on multi-apartment buildings, including multi-funded audit of the common areas, provision of a report and advice for making changes, provision of support to prioritise actions and make changes in: Development and promotion of an online DIY self-assessment tool for apartment managers to use (note: this may be a better option in 2019/2020 if we have refined the assessment tool and process further).</td>
<td>No further decisions to be made in 2018/2019</td>
<td>IES, Environmental Services</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>LD, Opex</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>During quarter four there was an assessment of suitability for a number of apartment buildings for the project. A building has now been selected to audit and there are three others on the waitlist. During quarter four the following will take place: the second apartment will be assessed a review of progress will be made at Garden City Apartments as they received their assessments and recommendations during last year's project; an assessment of the potential to include additional elements for education and assessment in apartments, e.g. example waste management and transport will be undertaken, final report will be prepared.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitematā Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Required</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit/ COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>575</td>
<td>Waitematā Stream Restoration Programme – Pest Control</td>
<td>As part of the 2012 Waitematā Stream ten-year restoration plan, this year’s programme (year six) is a combination of restoration works of pest plant control and replacement native planting along the open section of Waitematā Stream. The programme will continue to increase local community engagement in significant groups that are currently missing from the programme such as more direct neighbours, local schools and mana whenua.</td>
<td>No further decisions required in 2018/2019</td>
<td>IES: Environmental Services</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>LD: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Contractor used plant control underway and some large pest and brush wattle removal is planned for quarter four. Community pest plant and pest animal control is continuing in the stream area. The group started a loan to own pest trap library during quarter four where traps are available to the wider Parnell community to purchase or loan. The Parnell Community Trust facilitates this programme and the wooden traps boxes have been made by the Men’s Shed Auckland East. A community stream ecology workshop was held at the nearby Waipu Stream on 27 March 2019. This workshop connected the two similar stream restoration projects and active community members. Holding it at Waipu Stream allowed for greater community learning and participation as there is easier access. Further community weeding and planting bees at Waitematā Stream are planned for April to June 2019. Pest plant control has been completed. Some large pest and brush wattle have been removed. Community pest plant and pest animal control has continued and the community reports an average of two rats being caught per week. Two weeding bees were held on 14 April 2019 and 18 May 2019 which focused on removal of transplants, bindweed and privet seedlings. Rubbish was removed from the site and preparations were made for the June 2019 planting day. All 100 native plants were planted by the community at the planting day held on 16 June 2019. A further 100 native plants are planned to be planted by the contractor before the end of the month. The Parnell Community Trust, Incubating the Lakes building, administers the pest trap library on behalf of the Waipu Stream Restoration Group. Traps were set available for bees and woody non-bows with trees traps are available for loan or purchase. The Hitipounu magazine featured an article about the scheme in March 2019. Traps have been loaned 11 times and six new traps and types have been added to date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15:30</td>
<td>Waipu Stream Restoration</td>
<td>The stream restoration project is two-phased 1. Assess what treatment is occurring in the stormwater network to prevent rubbish and other gross pollutants from entering the water course and establish a plan for addressing this issue. 2. Work with Panco and Biosecurity to create a five-year restoration plan, including engaging local community groups, businesses and landowners to establish a weed and pest management plan and planting plan.</td>
<td>No further decisions required in 2018/2019</td>
<td>IES: Healthy Waters</td>
<td>$20,000</td>
<td>LD: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Council has received the draft Waipu Stream Restoration plan from contractors. The plan has been peer reviewed by council staff and is now with set for their comment. Once the feedback from the council has been received the plan will be finalised and brought to the local board. A community planting day and stream ecology workshop was held at the stream in conjunction with the Waipu Stream project on 23 March 2019. Contractors have been commissioned to clear rubbish from the area of the stream over quarter four. Ngāti Whātua Ora proposed an interest in the Waipu Stream Restoration Plan and staff have added comments from the site to the plan. On 28 May 2019 Auckland Council staff and the Kāwharau ki ake napia (planning manager) for Ngāti Whātua Ora completed a site visit to the stream to discuss options for restoration and to establish a relationship for the project going forward. The rubbish cleanup has been completed with many large items of rubbish removed from the north end of the stream and along the stream bank. Healthy Waters completed CCTV investigations of the catchment and have uncovered the outlet of the stream at the northern end of the reserve. A proposal to secure the culvert opening and improve fish passage is underway. Contractors have begun the project and are due to commence in late June 2019. The local board funds have been spent for this financial year. The installation of the signs is awaiting final approval from Auckland Transport for the placement of the signs. They will be installed as soon as this approval has been obtained (estimated to be by the end of July 2019).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:38</td>
<td>Digital Selfswim Signs</td>
<td>The project will deliver design, installation and testing of digital Selfswim signs at Home Bay and Judkins Bay.</td>
<td>No further decisions required</td>
<td>IES: Healthy Waters</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>LD: Capex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Two signs have been ordered and are expected to arrive in the country in early to mid-May 2019. Staff are working with planning and regulatory staff to ensure all the appropriate approvals have been sourced by the time the signs arrive. At a workshop in March 2019 two alternative options were presented to the board for the sign location at Home Bay. The Healthy Waters department will cover the additional installation costs of having it located on the roadside instead of on the bottom of the path by the beach. The signs are scheduled to be installed in May 2019 and will be tested in June 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19:58</td>
<td>Provision of library service – Watemata local board</td>
<td>Deliver a library service - Help customers find what they need, when they need it, and help them navigate our services and digital offerings. Providing information, library collection lending services and eResources as well as support for customers using library physical resources, PCs and Wi-Fi. Hours of service: 1. Central City Library for 67 hours over 7 days per week (8:30-10:48) 2. Glen Innes Library for 48 hours over 7 days per week (8:30-10:48) 3. Leys Institute Library for 52 hours over 6 days per week ($311,580) 4. Parnell Library for 52 hours over 6 days per week ($301,715)</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$3,082,942</td>
<td>ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Watemata Libraries are continuing to have an increase in visits, which is in contrast to the overall trend in Auckland Libraries. We also continue to have high numbers of computer and Wi-Fi use, however, there have seen a small reduction in use during this quarter. This may be due in part to technical issues and this is being monitored. The staff in the Watemata Libraries signed up 2872 new members this quarter. Increased membership will be a key focus for the next year with a number of changes to membership criteria and some fees being reduced or removed. Grey Lynn in particular was very busy this month with an 86% increase in new memberships and a 45% increase in participants at programmes and events when compared to the quarter last year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Watemata Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Due</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit / COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1199</td>
<td>Additional hours to network standard; Grey Lynn Library - Waitemata</td>
<td>0.5 additional opening hours at Grey Lynn Library per week</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS, Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$2,500</td>
<td>LD: Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Grey Lynn Library has been open an extra half hour each Saturday.</td>
<td>The Grey Lynn Library has been open an extra half hour each Saturday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>Preschool programme - Waitemata</td>
<td>Provide programming for preschoolers that enhances early literacy, active movement, and supports parents and caregivers to participate confidently in their children’s early development and learning. Programmes include Wriggle and Rhyme, Rhymetime, Storytime.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS, Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>ABS: Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Term 1 of the school year is always a busy time for Pre-school outreach visits across the local board area as we establish relationships. 11 Early Childhood Centres were visited reaching 272 children. Leys Institute also visited 40 students in Year one at Bayswater School. Central Library has rebranded a site to be a Senior Library Assistant Children &amp; Youth position to our team, with a focus on school age children and youth. A major project for this term will be to develop the Central Library offering for all primary, intermediate and secondary schools for the local area. Central has also noticed increasing visits to our library from early childhood centre groups in the central area. Our relationship with these centres continues to strengthen as they see the impact our library visits have. Recently a centre commented on the impact our visit had on an individual child who is not usually interested in stories and sitting and listening. He was captivated by a story we read and it became the catalyst for a lot of curriculum planning the centre then did and worked on with the HME.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1201</td>
<td>Children and Youth Engagement - Waitemata</td>
<td>Provide children and youth services and programmes which encourage learning, literacy and social interaction. Engage with children, youth and whanau with local schools to support literacy and grow awareness of library resources. Provide a flagship language and literacy building summer reading programme for 5-13 year olds.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS, Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>ABS: Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Waitemata Libraries provided a collaborative programme of events to support Ali Maika te Whia (Dare to Explore, Auckland Libraries Summer Reading) Programme, and had a shared celebration at the end of the programme. More than 500 people attended these events. Highlights included an Amazing Race in the Auckland Domain with 31 participants, and a connection to the Heritage Exhibition in the Central Library’s Playful Pups.</td>
<td>The Waitemata Libraries are proud of the colourful, fun, free, gingerbread house recently held at Legacy Institute Library. It was particularly meaningful to one of our regular customers and his family, and his mum sent us an email of thanks: “Thank you so much for yesterday’s storytime. (My son) was beaming with confidence all day, it came after a day of particularly bad bullying, so the time was warming and of course fun. We also celebrated Eid, with Central City Library holding a children’s Islamic art workshop. This was attended by a diverse range of families from all backgrounds, including a mother &amp; daughter from Saudi Arabia who are new immigrants, and who wanted feedback on the libraries’ website expressing their happiness at being involved. Staff also took the opportunity to promote some of the collection relating to Eid &amp; cultural diversity. Parrini Library delivered a Mary Poppins themed school holiday programme in April, incorporating balloon science, old fashioned games, stories, craft and cake decorating. Taking inspiration from the classic, children’s book and film, the activities encouraged learning across a range of ages and exposed children and their families to a variety of library resources. As part of the Auckland Writers Festival, Central City Library hosted a literary themed treasure hunt that saw over 1200 parents and children take part. Not only did the event offer a fun &amp; exciting challenge for those involved, it also helped to directly connect children &amp; their families to library resources, and helped foster more understanding of Te Reo Maori through use of Māori language in the treasure hunt itself. Feedback from the event was unanimously positive, with some attendees feeling it was the first time they had been to a library in years and they planned to come back more often.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitemata Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019 Page 230
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision</th>
<th>Lead Dept</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Support customer and community connection and celebrate cultural diversity and local places, people and heritage - Waitematā</td>
<td>Provide services and programmes that facilitate customer connection with the library and encourage communities through collaborative design and partnerships with Council and other agencies (including Arts). Provide programmes for our diverse community in the Central Library Celebrate local communities, cultural diversity and heritage. Gather, protect and share the stories, old and new, that celebrate our people, communities and Tāmaki Makaurau.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>ASB: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Lunar New Year and Pasifika kept the libraries vibrant and full of life over this quarter. Parnell Library celebrated the Lunar New Year with events held every Saturday in February, reaching a total of 150 people. Performances by Epsom Chinese Association and the Auckland Malay Roving Association encompassed Chinese martial arts, waist drums and traditional dance as well as singing. A classical music performance by qin player Mengtian Zhang was another highlight, in addition to a dumpling making class and bilingual storytelling in Central Library. We also hosted two hand-on creative Pasifika events, dance performances, and a Tapa cloth design competition. We created an infographic for our Makemakes blackboard well describing the creation and design of the Tapa cloth to inspire and inform. The community mounted the terror attack in March, and Waitematā Libraries were spaces for reflection and community. We placed books of condolences for our community to sign messages of support, created displays and recognised the two minutes of silence on Friday 22 March. Central Library became a destination for the local community and several TV3 and our video wall to broadcast the public broadcast service, shutting down escalators, and briefly closing service points to allow all staff and patrons the time to pay their respects. The libraries in Waitematā continue to bring To Ao Māori to life in the work place in our regular programmes with Māori songs and stories and our recent Waitangi Day displays generating a lot of community interest from a wide range of visitors and locals learning To Ao. Parnell completed a bilingual signage project, incorporating te ao Māori headings into the children’s fiction and non-fiction collections, with the aim of promoting use of the language in library interactions. The Te Reo Māori reading group at Central continues to increase numbers while keeping a steady number of loyal attendees. From this programme, an informal patron organized Te Reo Māori conversation group organically developed, and has become a regular feature that precedes the book club. This conversation group allows participants an opportunity to engage Te Reo Māori in a relaxed, encouraging atmosphere, and one attendee has remarked that he was feeling ‘drift’ culturally, and the book club has grounded him largely by creating a strong connection to Te Ao Māori.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1203 | Celebrating Te Ao Māori and strengthening responsiveness to Māori - Whakatupu te Ao Māori – Waitematā | Celebrating te ao Māori with events and programmes including regency coordinated and promoted programmes. To Tīkanga Whakatupu Te Ao Māori with a focus on Māori champions and enablers to re-interpret our libraries and communities. | No further decisions anticipated | CS Libraries & Information | $0 | ASB: Opex | Completed | Green | To Reo Māori continues to be a focus at all our Libraries with the Loy’s Institute Library team hosting an informal Māori evening for customers who this staff performed waiata and shared mātauranga, followed by shared kai. Grey Lynn Library presented Matariki for the year’s annual events, Sanny Night storytimes celebrated to talk to us about Te Ao Māori, and Waitematā Library also hosted a fun way to build stronger Matariki traditions and practices through te reo Māori stories and songs. Central Library invited Pō Wairata in the Whānau programme where staff and customers come together to practice songs in a fun relaxed and supportive environment. A recent session had people from more than 10 different countries and is a great opportunity for people to build comfort with pronunciation of Te Reo Māori words. Parnell Library re-established its monthly English Conversation Group this quarter, attracting new library members from countries including China, Germany, Vietnam, Korea and the Philippines. The theme for June was Māori and participants expressed appreciation of the opportunity to learn about Māori culture. Not only can we learn the language, but the session also helps us to understand the history of New Zealand. Thank you for your thoughtful arrangement,” wrote one attendee. | | | | | |
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decisions</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit/ COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1234</td>
<td>Learning and Literacy support - Waitematā</td>
<td>Provide learning programmes and events throughout the year. Support our customers to</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS. Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$6,000</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>embrace new ways of doing things. LfT literacy in the communities that need it most. Help customers and whānau learn and grow, and provide opportunities for knowledge creation and innovation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2108</td>
<td>Additional hours to network standard, Central Library - Waitematā</td>
<td>2 additional opening hours at Central Library per week. (Changing weekend closing time from 4pm to 6pm) Funding for 9 months as will be implemented from September 2018</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS. Libraries &amp; Information</td>
<td>$64,043</td>
<td>LDI. Open</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attachment A**

**Item 20**

Parnell Library’s Tea With Tales (audio book club) meeting had guest speakers from the Blind Foundation, who gave a presentation on how to access their resources using new technologies, including Amazon’s Alexa. Lyn’s Institute Library and Dorothy Butler Bookshop co-hosted Charlotte Clebs editor and founder of publication Torix. A journal for young writers and artists. 35 people attended the evening event which brought together teachers, publishers and authors with a passion for Children’s literature. Central City Library is pushing forward with a range of new learning opportunities this quarter. As part of its initiative to increase our support of the LGBTQ+ community, public and staff education around LGBTQ+ issues has been a focus through a series of workshops. Central City Library is using its large public-facing video wall to display similar easy-to-grasp explanations of these concepts for public education, alongside themed displays and infographics in the Matakana. In the Central City Library, Matakana, 3D printing is in high demand, with the current 3D printer often booked 2+ weeks in advance, which has led to the purchase of a second 3D printer to better meet the demand. Our sewing machine bookings are steadily increasing.

We are making the most of our extra hours and in this quarter hosted ‘Black Women’ in the late afternoon on a Saturday where around 40 women discussed how women can obtain leadership positions within local government structures. Because of the extra hour added to the Friday timetable, we are also able to continue its popular ‘Browse the Basemen’ programme which is fully booked, and attracts attendees from all walks of life. During a recent tour, a large team of contingent attended and excitedly took photos on the basement lower level, a space they described as ‘really magical’. Some members of the group found the presence of the library and were adamant they would return in the future. This visit coincided with a local board visit to the Central Library and some in the group remarked how positive and important it was to have local government figures engaging with the public.

Grey Lynn Library partnered with the Grey Lynn 3030 group to deliver a children’s speaking event to support their Trust to Trade month. The event was delivered by a local artist and taught the kids how to turn waste materials into objects of art. Grey Lynn Library is thrilled to see the relationship with the Grey Lynn 3030 group grow stronger this year, to satisfy a shared understanding of the need to promote sustainable initiatives and ideas throughout the community. With the introduction of our Digital Drop-in sessions this year, Grey Lynn Library has seen a real increase in the number of customers seeking advice and support in navigating the digital world. The casual format of the 'drop-in' session seems to appeal to customers more than the more formal 'book-a-branch' service. Some customers have returned to the drop-in several times for example one particular older customer needed to set up an email address and Facebook account in order to post her online parenting and communicate with prospective publishers, this was an intimidating prospect for her, but over 3 drop-in sessions she was able to establish her online presence and has started a conversation with a publisher. Staff at Grey’s Institute Library worked with and engaged schools at Little Sisters of the Poor in a project called Memory Lane. This project involved residents cutting out images from old magazines and recording memories in their journals. The activity manager for Little Sisters said this library collaboration was incredibly stimulating for residents who proudly shared their journals with visiting family and friends. The additional opening hours have enabled us to focus more activity in the weekends. A highlight was hosting a documentary night on a Sunday for the Centering Queer community of Auckland called ‘TransAlte’. Four documentaries were chosen that explored significant queer milestones like coming out, questioning our sexual orientations, and transitioning our gender identities. Library staff intentionally selected films that weren’t from a Eurocentric perspective in order to showcase the diverse cultures, religious backgrounds, and varying socio-economic circumstances within the global transgender community. The event was attended by over 100 members of the LGBTQ+ community and there was built in time for socializing afterwards over a well-stocked ice cream bar. One customer sent feedback to the library staff “I am feeling totally blessed being here, it’s so wonderful to see everyone and the staff at the library. Can’t wait to meet people after the film”.

26 / 32

Waitematā Local Board
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept/Unit or COG</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local Economic Development: ATEDD</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>658</td>
<td>Young Enterprise Scheme (YESS)</td>
<td>The Auckland Chamber of Commerce, on behalf of the Young Enterprise Trust, delivers the Young Enterprise Scheme (YESS) in Auckland. ATEDD as the economic development agency is a strategic partner supporting the delivery of YESS. YESS is a practical, year-long programme for year 12 and 13 students. Through the programme, students develop creative ideas into actual businesses, complete with real products and services and experience real profit and loss. The funding from the local board will support the delivery of the Young Enterprise Scheme Kick Start Days in February 2019. The Kick Start day will be held in sub-regions (north, south, east, central) and on the first day students get to meet the Young Enterprise team, and find out about their year 2019, what YESS is all about, and what is in store for them.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>ATEDD Local Economic Growth</td>
<td>$5,000 LDI Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Auckland Chamber of Commerce advised for the allocated funds from local boards and payment has been made.</td>
<td>No further action was required as this activity was completed in the last quarter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>873</td>
<td>Implementation of the City Fringe Local Economic Development Action Plan</td>
<td>Following the adoption of the City Fringe economic development action plan, the local board may need to fund actions identified in the plan. Such funds will be discussed and prioritised in the local board. The initial focus has been on providing information to support Grey Lynn Business Association as they are not part of the business improvement district programme. In addition to this areas of focus will be as follows: - Enabling regular forum for the Local Board (or LBI representatives) and Business Associations to discuss issues - Working with the Grey Lynn BIA to support initiatives (going forward 8.6 of the Action Plan) - Placemaking and streetscape activation initiatives - Business Support - Enabling business intelligence to support the City Fringe economy.</td>
<td>Further approval of project scope and priorities for the year will be discussed with the Local Board. Staff are discussing to define the projects and initiatives that can be brought to the board.</td>
<td>ATEDD Local Economic Growth</td>
<td>$57,773 LDI Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The Business Associations have advised that they would like to seek funding for a ‘White app’ instead of the collective identity as approved by the Local Board in February 2019. The Business Associations have been invited to submit a proposal to the Local Board by the 18 April for its consideration.</td>
<td>The ability to progress this work programme item is dependent on the Business Associations developing a proposal for the development of a ‘White app’. The deadline for this is the 18 April 2019. If this is not met then the ability to meet the required deadlines for reporting will not be possible. The Local Board approved funding for the development of a WebApp following the receipt of a proposal from the Business Associations. A Funding Agreement has been entered into with Firemark Business Association as the lead for the project. The grant funding has been paid and received by the Business Association.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2792</td>
<td>Support of Grey Lynn Business Association</td>
<td>The allocated funds will be used to support the activities of the Grey Lynn Business Association.</td>
<td>Approval of the project scope for support</td>
<td>ATEDD Local Economic Growth</td>
<td>$10,000 LDI Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>No further update.</td>
<td>No further update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parks, Open Space and Recreation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>369</td>
<td>WTM: City play network assessment</td>
<td>Assessment of the current and needed play network in the city centres and city fringes. The assessment will fit within the outcomes of the City Centre Masterplan, board development plans and other relevant development plans e.g. Parata/Reo plans. The output will inform renewals projects, advice to other potential providers of play outcomes e.g. Victoria Street linear park, Batea Park. Growth needs and potential LDI projects.</td>
<td>A full draft plan will be presented to the local board in Q1 of 2019/2020.</td>
<td>CS: PSR Park Services</td>
<td>$20,000 LDI Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Amber</td>
<td>Draft analysis in progress. Draft report will be presented to the local board in Q4.</td>
<td>A draft plan with high-level recommendations was presented to the local board. Some amendments were requested. A final draft will be presented in Q1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>370</td>
<td>Symonds Street Cemetery: Conservation of monuments programme FY19</td>
<td>Making safe and undertaking conservation of monuments in the cemetery. A programme of monuments have been selected from the prioritised list using 2016 asset condition survey data, based on those most at risk &amp; most in need of works. The budget is required to make these monuments safe and facilitate planning and consent process for any conservation work or removal of unsafe items.</td>
<td>No further decisions required.</td>
<td>CS: PSR Park Services</td>
<td>$69,000 LDI Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Conservation on Hutting, Thorne and James monuments in the Woolley section completed on time and on budget. The Heritage team have worked closely with the conservator and are very satisfied with the standard of work and level of reporting. An update will be provided to the local board in Q4.</td>
<td>Conservation of three large monuments was completed in May 2019. Prepared the scope of works for John Smith in order to prepare a funding application. An update on this year’s achievements and the proposed conservation programme for 2019/2020 was presented at local board workshop May.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Process</th>
<th>Lead Dept/Unit/Code</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 373 | Symonds Street Cemetery Service response FY19 | A specific response fund to deliver objectives from the Symonds Street Cemetery 10 year development plan | No further decisions anticipated | CS: PSR: Park Services | $23,000 | LDR: Oper | Green | Five monuments were repaired or had preventative maintenance work in the Anglican and Presbyterian sections. Preparing data capture and a report on the heritage oak trees in order to prepare a programme of work to minimise the risk of damage to monuments. | *Achievements for the year included:*  
- Preservation of three monuments with Mason inscriptions.  
- Quick response to vandalism, graffiti or damage to ten memorials  
- 103 labels attached to the heritage trees  
- Supported five families with the conservation of their ancestors monuments  
- Three new stories added to the Story app. There were 90,873 views of the app this year with 266 QR scans  
- Purchased four new heritage trees |
| 461 | WTM Local Implementation Plan of the Rangitane (Urban Forest) Strategy | Following on from the LDR mapping this project will identify a local board area programme to deliver Auckland’s highline strategy, urban forest protection, preservation and management for public and private lands/conservators. The local board will be invited to prioritise areas within Waitemata for: 1. Clearing - find space for planting new trees using partnerships including community groups and schools; 2. Protecting - direct and indirect methods for the community to nominate and protect trees | Final highline Assessment Report will be presented for approval in Q1 | CS: PSR: Park Services | $5,000 | LDR: Oper | Amor | Work is underway to survey the local board area to determine the availability of spaces to plant new trees specifically in the road corridor. Early work is underway to explore options for an Arbor Day planting event. An outline of the long-term planting process is expected to be in a draft format for review and workshop with local board in June. | Based on the feedback a final report will be prepared for adoption at the September 2019 business meeting. |
| 588 | PI Est Mnd Operations | Operate PI Est Mnd through a management agreement with CLM in a safe and sustainable manner. Deliver a variety of quality and accessible programmes and services that get the local community active. Along with core programmes that reflect the needs of the local community specific activities include programmes for Fitness, Group fitness, Learn to swim, Aquatics. | No further decisions anticipated | CS: PSR: Active Recreation | $6 | ABS: Oper | Green | Point Est. has experienced a slight increase of 1 per cent in centre visits when measured against the same period last year (December–February). There has been an increase of 15 per cent in 16-24 under 30 visits. | Over the course of the summer, the Point Est Mnds team successfully ran ten events, including ‘a welcome to the summer’, ‘inflatable day’, ‘sailing competitions’ and ‘dodge day out’. The great weather over the summer greatly contributed to patronage at these events, only one event was cancelled. Year to date water numbers: 16 per cent increase in Aquatics visits. This increase was largely due to the increase in under 16’s visits. |
| 557 | WTM Ecological volunteer and environmental programme FY19 | Programme of activity supporting volunteer groups to carry out ecological restoration and environmental programmes in local parks including:  
- Community planting events;  
- Supporting Arbor Day;  
- Plant and animal pest eradication;  
- Litter and green waste removal;  
- Contact support;  
- Trees and Equipment;  
- Beachstream Clean Ups; | Workshop with the local board is to agree the scope for Arbor Day and Grey Lynn Park volunteer activities. | CS: PSR: Park Services | $20,000 | LDR: Oper | Green | Volunteer activities in Waitemata Local Parks this quarter have focused on ongoing restoration work and animal pest control, coastal rubbish clean-ups, and planning for the 2019 planting season. Plans for Arbor Day planting are progressing in accordance with the local board’s direction. Animal pest control training also took place. | Volunteer activities in Waitemata Local Parks this quarter have focused on ongoing restoration work and animal pest control. An Arbor Day planting event was undertaken at Evans Park. Animal pest control training also took place. |
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Needed</th>
<th>Lead Dept/ Unit in COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1044</td>
<td>Te Āpitipā, Operations</td>
<td>Operate Te Āpitipā in a safe and sustainable manner. Deliver a variety of accessible programmes and services that get the local community active. These services include Fitness, Group Fitness, Learn to swim, Aquatic and recreation services. Along with core programmes that reflect the needs of the local community</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: PSR: Active Recreation</td>
<td>$6 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Te Āpitipā has experienced a slight increase in active visits when measured against the same period last year (December-February). Customer experience scores remain similar during Q4 (using a 13-month rolling average). Learn to Swim visits are comparable to the same period last year. Membership has improved substantially, by 34 per cent when compared to the same period last year. The back of two successful marketing campaigns, Local awareness promotions through digital/social media has also helped with this. We will continue to promote Te Āpitipā services in the local area over the coming months and have a customer experience focus which our team KPIs are based on. Parking remains an on-going issue for our Learn to Swim customer and we believe this is hindering our ability to grow our swim school. This quarter Te Āpitipā has partnered with corporate health and well-being provider WaWīkī, to run instructor-led fitness and wellbeing sessions from the centre. The centre also opened up the pool to 50 low income school children for additional swimming lessons.</td>
<td>Te Āpitipā have excelled in many areas this year, particularly in customer engagement measures. Te Āpitipā continues to receive positive member reviews and holds some of the highest scores for satisfaction across the region (measured by Net Promoter Score surveys, which improved by 14%) and member retention (using TRIP, the centre’s member retention system). The centre has seen a 10% drop in aquatic visits this year, this is because of a change in customer management systems where now the data is more accurately recorded. A two-week maintenance shutdown in October also contributed to the decreased visits. Low member drops and visits to the fitness centre have seen modest improvement when measured against the last financial year. Learn to Swim lesson bookings have also marginally improved, however lack of parking space continues to be a barrier in growing swim school numbers. On the back of successful marketing campaigns, Te Āpitipā has continued to attract new customers. Local awareness advertising through social media platforms and a larger emphasis on member engagement through these platforms has helped with this. We will continue to promote Te Āpitipā in the local area. This year Te Āpitipā has partnered with various businesses and non-profit organisations such as WaWīkī, Breast Cancer Foundation and The Key to Life Trust. The centre has also hosted various health and fitness challenges for its members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1045</td>
<td>Parnell Pools, Operations</td>
<td>Operate Parnell Pools (through a management agreement with CLM) in a safe and sustainable manner. Deliver a variety of quality and accessible programmes and services that get the local community active. Along with core programmes that reflect the needs of the local community. Specific activities include programmes for Fitness, Group Fitness, Learn to swim, and Aquatics.</td>
<td>No further decisions anticipated</td>
<td>CS: PSR: Active Recreation</td>
<td>$6 ABS: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Due to the delayed opening at the beginning of the summer, Parnell Pools has experienced a 19% per cent decrease in centre visits when measured against the same period last year (December-February). This is likely to improve in quarter 4 due to extending the open period into April.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1488</td>
<td>WT: Delivering an Out and About programme FY19</td>
<td>Deliver a range of ‘free to attend’ activities/events in local parks, spaces and places, for all ages. Out and about aims to become a more responsive and tailored programme of activities that provides opportunities for everyone to be physically active. We will focus more on delivering solutions for young people and seniors, and strengthening connections around key assets like paths, and leisure centres that can support a wider range of activities.</td>
<td>Staff will attend a local board workshop in July to provide recommendations for the 2019/2020 programme and present the activation planning tool.</td>
<td>CS: PSR: Active Recreation</td>
<td>$15,000 LDR: Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Summer activations with attendance included: Amazing Race (45) at Western Park, Kingseat (38) at Narrow Bay Park, On ya wheelz treasure hunt (65) at Grey Lynn Park and a Park fun day (56) at the Domain which was rain affected. March saw the delivery of 2 x girls wellness single clinics at St Kd Park, which had an average of 14 participants (capped at 20), and focus on cooking basic skills, so beginners become confident enough to transition safety to the local park environment. Our first Field Streets Festival of Play event was held at Western Park which had around 150 in attendance. This included a series of facilitated games with some requiring both parents and kids to work together. PSR facilitated ‘here’s a go’ dragon boating sessions at Westhaven Marina during March which built tow with 14 paddlers for the last session held. Unfortunately the second session was effectively cancelled due to rain affecting the water quality during the Westhaven open day weekend. PSR facilitated a Women in Urban bike event which went from the Light Path to Westhaven with 22 in attendance and included conversations along the way to talk about how cycleways are working for us and our families.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitakaruru Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Further Decision Points</th>
<th>Lead Dept / Unit / COO</th>
<th>Budget</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>Q3 Commentary</th>
<th>Q4 Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2849</td>
<td>WTM Newmarket Play Service Assessment</td>
<td>Undertake a needs assessment and engage with youth to determine the needs, scope and design for an active recreation and youth space - within the Newmarket Viaduct on land to be leased from NZTA.</td>
<td>CS PRR Active Recreation</td>
<td>$70,000 LDR Opex</td>
<td>In progress</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The full schedule of activations have now been completed. This includes five before Christmas, which were focused on building a consistent presence in Station Square, and engaging with young people through weekly after school activity. The live activations during February and March have been focused on young people providing feedback on insights into identifying suitable play spaces within the wider Newmarket precinct. There were a couple of disruptions including blocked access to Station Square on one occasion while another date had to be shifted due to an issue with the contractor vehicle which has pushed timed lines out a little. In April staff will be consolidating the information and provide a summary activation report, with a final report due by the end of May. The report will include detailed short and long term recommendations to provide play benefits in the Newmarket precinct.</td>
<td>Staff have scheduled a local board workshop in July to present final findings and recommendations. The costs have provided activation reports, including data and insights but staff still require some clarity around final recommendations for the wider newmarket youth play initiative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1439</td>
<td>The Parram Plan</td>
<td>Continuation of the preparation of a long-term local spatial plan for the Parram area, including engagement on a draft plan leading to the completion and adoption of a final plan.</td>
<td>CPO Plans and Places</td>
<td>$3,450 LDR Opex</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Following adoption of the plan in December 2018, work has progressed on graphic visualisations of key action areas, the front cover photo montage, and the set of photos in the rest of the plan document. Ongoing consultation and feedback with the working group on these aspects has proceeded, in line with the December resolution of the local board. The document content has been completed and submitted to the Mayor of the local board for approval, prior to final document design. This is expected to be completed and the plan published in Q4.</td>
<td>The Parram Plan has been published. A launch party was held and well attended. On-going plan implementation monitoring is being organised in accordance with FWP BAU. Tony Corner is the key contact. This will be reported annually.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Waitematā Local Board
20 August 2019

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitematā Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019

Page 236
## Work Programme 2018/2019 Q4 Report

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>Activity Name</th>
<th>Activity Description</th>
<th>Lead Entity or CDO</th>
<th>CL: Lease Commencement Date</th>
<th>CL: Lease Expiry Date</th>
<th>CL: Annual Rent Amount</th>
<th>Activity Status</th>
<th>RAG</th>
<th>OQ Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1320</td>
<td>Community building, 271 Victoria Street, Freemans Bay, Lease to Circularity Trust</td>
<td>Renew building lease to Circularity Trust</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/7/2013</td>
<td>1 x 5 years</td>
<td>30/06/2023</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1323</td>
<td>Jullive Building, Parnell Community Centre, 545 Parnell Road, Lease to Parnell Community Trust</td>
<td>Lease to Parnell Community Trust</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/7/2016</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>30/06/2019</td>
<td>$8,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134</td>
<td>Levy Gymnasium, Ponsonby Community Centre, 30 St Marys Bay Road, St Marys Bay, Lease to Ponsonby Community Centre Incorporated</td>
<td>Lease to Ponsonby Community Centre Incorporated</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/7/2016</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>30/06/2019</td>
<td>$8,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1325</td>
<td>Sea Scout Den, 55 West End Road, Howick, Lease to The Scout Association of New Zealand - Howick Sea Scouts</td>
<td>Renew ground lease to: The Scout Association of New Zealand - Howick Sea Scouts</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/8/2003</td>
<td>2 x 5 years</td>
<td>31/06/2018</td>
<td>$250,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2565</td>
<td>Auckland Domain 100 Stanley St Parnell, Lease to Auckland Bowling Club Incorporated</td>
<td>Renew lease to Auckland Bowling Club Incorporated</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/4/2012</td>
<td>1 x 7 years</td>
<td>31/03/2026</td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2659</td>
<td>Francis Reserve, 4 Werneck St, Grey Lynn : No current lease</td>
<td>Proposed expressions of interest to occupy the former work depot garage</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/1/1900</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>30/06/1900</td>
<td>$0</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2661</td>
<td>25 Prince Street, Auckland: Lease to Frank Sargent Trust</td>
<td>Renewal of ground and building lease to Frank Sargent Trust. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/8/2007</td>
<td>2 x years</td>
<td>30/09/2023</td>
<td>$500,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2662</td>
<td>124 Wellington St, New Lease Auckland Playcentres Association Inc - Franklin Road</td>
<td>Renew ground lease to Auckland Playcentres Association Inc - Franklin Road. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/3/2002</td>
<td>2 x 5 years</td>
<td>30/11/2017</td>
<td>$250,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Activity Name</td>
<td>Activity Description</td>
<td>Lead Unit or COO</td>
<td>CL: Lease Commencement Date</td>
<td>CL: Lease Expiry Date</td>
<td>CL: Annual Rent (excluding GST)</td>
<td>Activity Status</td>
<td>RAG</td>
<td>Q3 Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2663</td>
<td>Head Park, 192 Parnell Rd, Parnell</td>
<td>Lease to Royal New Zealand Plunket Society Incorporated. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/1/1990</td>
<td>30/06/2013</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Staff will prepare material to enable the public notification for an expression of interest. This is in anticipation of the completion of building renovation and alteration works. This item cannot be progressed until the building renovation and alteration works are completed. Staff is yet to prepare material to enable the public notification for an expression of interest. This is in anticipation of the completion of building renovation and alteration works. Staff to lease with work programme lead on update on the physical works item deferred to 2019/20 work programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2664</td>
<td>S4 S Parnell Rd, Parnell</td>
<td>Lease to Royal New Zealand Plunket Society Incorporated. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>2017/06/10</td>
<td>31/06/2016</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Staff have discussed with Service Strategy and Integration a new lease with a term to match the building head lease. Will not affect other service provision on the site. The board passed a resolution on 16 April 2019 to approve a new lease at the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2665</td>
<td>Bayfield Park, 10 West End Road, Hornby</td>
<td>Renewal building lease to Hornby Poneke Tennis Club Incorporated. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/1/2001</td>
<td>30/06/2016</td>
<td>$15,000</td>
<td>On Hold</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Staff to engage with internal stakeholders to progress the lease. The item is dependent on the outcome of stakeholder engagement with the group. This item is placed on hold pending discussions between Parks Sports and Recreation and the club regarding lease expiry date. This may result in requiring a variation to the lease expiry date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2666</td>
<td>Cox’s Bay Reserve, 44-66 West End Road,</td>
<td>New lease to West End Lawn Tennis Club Inc.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>16/01/2002</td>
<td>15/01/2017</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Ocean</td>
<td>This item was completed in quarter two. This item was completed in quarter two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2667</td>
<td>Grey Lynn Park, 55-61 Edgar Street, Grey Lynn</td>
<td>Renewal ground lease to Richmond Rugby League Club Incorporated. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>8/12/2005</td>
<td>7/12/2020</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Staff are yet to compile the Dead of Renewal and await the club’s report back on dealing with urgent building works identified in the council’s condition assessment. Staff to follow up with club regarding progress on the urgent building works. Item deferred to 2019/20 work programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2668</td>
<td>Freeman’s Bay Community Centre, 52 Heathcote St, Freemans Bay</td>
<td>Renewal building lease to Freemans Bay Community Trust Incorporated. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/12/2006</td>
<td>30/09/2021</td>
<td>$50,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Staff to report the group to report on community outcomes before progressing the streamlined lease renewal. The board has approved this as a streamlined lease renewal memo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2669</td>
<td>Freeman's Bay Community Centre, 52 Heathcote St, Freemans Bay</td>
<td>Renewal building lease to The Children’s Autism Foundation. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>1/12/2012</td>
<td>31/12/2022</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>Completed</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>This item was completed in quarter two. This item was completed in quarter two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2670</td>
<td>Albert Park, 33-43 Princes Street, Auckland</td>
<td>Call for expressions of interest to occupy the former Canterbury’s Cottage Albert Park. Deferred from the 2017/2018 work programme.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>9/11/1800</td>
<td>3/01/2000</td>
<td>$0.00</td>
<td>Cancelled</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Clarity is still being sought in respect of the proposed occupancy. Community Leasing is unable to facilitate a lease or a licence for the site due to the overriding legislative constraints. The board has given direction to Community Places to progress this item. On 25 June 2019, the board gave Community Places direction to take this item and develop its proposed option of mixed use. This item is no longer a community leasing item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2671</td>
<td>313 Queen Street, Auckland</td>
<td>Expressions of interest to occupy the space.</td>
<td>CF: Community Leases</td>
<td>8/1/1900</td>
<td>8/1/1900</td>
<td>$0.00</td>
<td>Deferred</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Staff will complete assessment of applications and have this reviewed by Local Board Services and Strategic services in quarter four. Staff has worked closely with the board and preparing a business meeting report to the board’s August 2019 business meeting. Staff has worked closely with the board and preparing a business meeting report to the board’s August 2019 business meeting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auckland Council’s Year End and Quarterly Performance Report: Waitematā Local Board for quarter four 2018/2019
Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. The Auckland Council Annual Report 2018/2019 is being prepared and needs to be adopted by the Governing Body by 26 September 2019. As part of the overall report package, individual reports for each local board are prepared.
3. Auckland Council currently has a series of bonds quoted on the New Zealand Stock Exchange (NZX) Debt Market maintained by NZX Limited. As council is subject to obligations under the NZX Main Board and Debt Market Listing Rules and the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 (FMCA), local boards may not release annual financial results in any form. Therefore, the attached annual report is being presented as confidential.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) adopt the 2018/2019 Waitematā Local Board Annual Report as set out in Attachment A.

b) note that any proposed changes will be clearly communicated and agreed with the chairperson before the report is submitted for adoption by the Governing Body by 26 September 2019.

c) note that the draft 2018/2019 Waitematā Local Board Annual Report (refer to Attachment A to the agenda report) will remain confidential until after the Auckland Council group results for 2018/2019 are released to the New Zealand Stock Exchange which are expected to be made public by 30 September 2019.

Horopaki
Context
4. In accordance with the Local Government (Auckland Council) Act 2009 and the Local Government Act 2002, each local board is required to monitor and report on the implementation of its 2018/2019 Local Board Agreement. This includes reporting on the performance measures for local activities, and the overall Financial Impact Statement for the local board.

5. In addition to the compliance purpose, local board annual reports are an opportunity to tell the wider performance story with a strong local flavour, including how the local board is working towards the outcomes of their local board plan.

6. Auckland Council currently has a series of bonds quoted on the NZX Debt Market (quoted bonds) maintained by NZX Limited. As a result, the council is subject to obligations under the NZX Main Board and Debt Market Listing Rules (listing rules) and the Financial Markets Conduct Act 2013 (FMCA). Under these obligations, local boards may not release annual financial results in any form.
financial results in any form, including publishing their agenda/minutes containing their results, until council group results are released to the NZX on 27 September 2019. Therefore, the attached annual report is being presented as confidential.

Tātaritanga me ngā tohutohu
Analysis and advice
7. The annual report contains the following sections:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mihi</td>
<td>The mihi relates to the local board area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Message from the chairperson</td>
<td>An overall message introducing the report, highlighting achievements and challenges, including both financial and non-financial performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local board members</td>
<td>A group photo of the local board members.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our area</td>
<td>A visual layout of the local board area, summarising key demographic information and showing key projects and facilities in the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance report</td>
<td>Provides performance measure results for each activity, providing explanations where targeted service levels have not been achieved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funding information</td>
<td>Financial performance results compared to long-term plan and annual plan budgets, together with explanations about variances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local flavour</td>
<td>A profile of either an outstanding resident, grant, project or facility that benefits the local community.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā whakaaweawe me ngā tirohanga a te rōpū Kaunihera
Council group impacts and views
8. Council departments and council-controlled organisations comments and views have been considered and included in the annual report in relation to activities they are responsible for delivering on behalf of local boards.

Ngā whakaaweawe ā-rohe me ngā tirohanga a te poari ā-rohe
Local impacts and local board views
9. Local board feedback will be included where possible. Any changes to the content of the final annual report will be discussed with the chairperson.

Tauākī whakaaweawe Māori
Māori impact statement
10. The annual report provides information on how Auckland Council has progressed its agreed priorities in the Long-term Plan 2018-2028 over the past 12 months. This includes engagement with Māori, as well as projects that benefit various population groups, including Māori.
Ngā ritenga ā-pūtea
Financial implications
11. The annual report reports on both the financial and service performance in each local board area.

Ngā raru tūpono me ngā whakamaurutanga
Risks and mitigations
12. The annual report is a legislatively required document. It is audited by Audit New Zealand who assess if the report represents information fairly and consistently, and that the financial statements comply with accounting standard PBE FRS-43: Summary Financial Statements. Failure to demonstrate this could result in a qualified audit opinion.

13. The annual report is a key communication to residents. It is important to tell a clear and balanced performance story, in plain English, and in a form that is accessible, to ensure that council meets its obligations to be open with the public it serves.

Ngā koringa ā-muri
Next steps
14. The next steps for the draft 2018/2019 Annual Report for the local board are:
   • Audit NZ review during August and September 2019
   • report to the Governing Body for adoption on 26 September 2019
   • release to stock exchanges and publication online on 27 September 2018
   • physical copies provided to local board offices, council service centres and libraries by the end of October 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Draft 2018/2019 Waitematā Local Board Annual Report (Under Separate Cover) - CONFIDENTIAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina
Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>David Gurney - Manager Corporate Performance &amp; Reporting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Kevin Ramsay - General Manager Corporate Finance and Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Victoria Villaraza - Acting General Manager, Local Board Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback on Productivity Commission inquiry into local government funding and financing draft report

File No.: CP2019/14353

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To enable the local board to receive the decision made under urgency to provide feedback on the Productivity Commission inquiry into local government funding and financing draft report.

Whakarāpopototanga matua / Executive summary
2. Central Government has asked the Commission to undertake an inquiry into local government funding and financing and, where shortcomings in the current system are identified, to examine options and approaches for improving the system.
3. The Commission's issues paper was released on 6 November 2018. The Waitematā Local Board provided informal feedback on the issues paper (Attachment C).
4. On 4 July 2019, the Commission released its draft report relating to the inquiry into local government funding and financing.
5. Local boards were invited to provide views and feedback on the draft report by 29 July 2019, which will be taken into consideration into draft council’s submission.
6. The Finance and Performance Committee will consider the Auckland Council submission at its 20 August 2019 meeting.
7. As the Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting was not until the 20 August 2019, the local board could not resolve on their feedback by the deadline. Therefore, the agreed urgent decision process was followed (Attachment A).

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:
a) receive the urgent decision dated 29 July 2019

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback on the Productivity Commission inquiry into local government funding and financing</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board feedback on Productivity Commission inquiry into local government funding and financing draft report</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board informal feedback on Productivity Commission Issues Paper</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Authorisers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simon Tattersfield - Senior Local Board Advisor - Waitematā</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
URGENT DECISION OF THE
Waitematā Local Board

Feedback on the Productivity Commission inquiry into local
government funding and financing

AUTHORITY TO EXECUTE THIS URGENT DECISION

Urgent Decision Process WTM/2016/181

a) That the Waitematā Local Board:
   i) adopts the urgent decision process for matters that require a decision where it is not
   practical to call the full board together and meet the requirement of a quorum.
   ii) delegates authority to the Chair and Deputy Chair or any person acting in these roles to
   make an urgent decision on behalf of the local board.
   iii) requests that all urgent decisions be reported to the next ordinary meeting of the local
   board.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1. Central Government has asked the Commission to undertake an inquiry into local
government funding and financing and, where shortcomings in the current system are
identified, to examine options and approaches for improving the system.
2. The Commission's issues paper was released on 6 November 2018. The Waitematā Local
Board provided informal feedback on the issues paper.
3. On 4 July 2019, the Commissions released its draft report relating to the inquiry into local
government funding and financing.
4. Local boards were invited to provide views and feedback on the draft report by 29 July
2019, which will be taken into consideration into draft council's submission.
5. The Finance and Performance Committee will consider the Auckland Council submission at
its 20 August 2019 meeting.

RECOMMENDATIONS

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) approve the feedback, as contained in Attachment A, on the Productivity Commission's
   inquiry into local government funding and financing.
REASON FOR URGENCY

6. The case for an urgent decision is made due to local board feedback being required by the 29 July 2019 in order for it to be incorporated into the council’s submission.
7. The Finance and Performance Committee will consider the Auckland Council submission at its 20 August 2019 meeting.
8. The Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting will be held on 20 August 2019 meaning the local board cannot wait until then to resolve on their feedback.
9. The urgent decision will be reported to the local board during their 20 August 2019 meeting.

DISCUSSION

10. The Government has asked the Productivity Commission to undertake an inquiry into local government funding and financing. The Government wants to understand the factors driving local authorities’ costs, now and into the foreseeable future. It also wants to know whether current funding and financing arrangements are efficient, sustainable and affordable.
11. This July 2019 draft report sets out the Commission’s assessment of the cost pressures faced by local authorities. It presents draft recommendations for new funding tools, where current funding and financing arrangements are insufficient to meet key pressures. It also proposes several improvements to the way councils manage cost pressures, make decisions, and deliver and fund their services.
12. The Commission is currently seeking submissions on the draft report which are due by 29 August 2019 to help inform the final report to the Government due 30 November 2019.
13. A submission from the Waitematā Local Board is attached and will form part of the submission from Auckland Council.

GENERAL

14. The recommendation contained in this report falls within the local board’s delegated authority.

DECISION

AUTHORISED FOR RELEASE

Simon Tattersfield
Acting Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor, Waitematā Local Board

SIGNATORIES

Pippa Coom
Chair, Waitematā Local Board
Richard Northe
Elected member Waitematā Local Board (under written delegation)

DATE: 29 July 2019
Memorandum

To: Chair, Finance and Performance Committee
Cc: All Waitematā Local Board members
Subject: Feedback on the Productivity Commission inquiry into local government funding and financing – Draft Report
From: Waitematā Local Board

Purpose

1. To provide Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on the Productivity Commission inquiry into local government funding and financing – draft report.

Context/Background

2. Central Government has asked the Commission to undertake an inquiry into local government funding and financing and, where shortcomings in the current system are identified, to examine options and approaches for improving the system.
3. The Commission’s issues paper was released on 6 November 2018. The Waitematā Local Board provided informal feedback on the issues paper as set out in Attachment A of this memo.
4. On 4 July 2019, the Commission released its draft report relating to it’s inquiry into local government funding and financing.
5. Local boards are given the opportunity to provide formal feedback on the draft report by 29 July 2019.
6. Submissions on the inquiry close 29 August 2019. Staff will prepare a submission for the Finance and Performance Committee’s consideration at its meeting on 20 August 2019. Local board views and feedback will be considered as part of the submission.

Waitematā Local Board Feedback

7. We agree with the Productivity Commission’s view that a high-performing local government is vital for community wellbeing and that the current funding and financing framework is broadly sound.
8. We agree that the “benefit principle” is an appropriate basis for deciding who should pay for local government services, but note Councils must give at least equal weight to factor the “ability to pay” as a fundamental consideration.
Discussion

9. The Productivity Commission has identified four key areas where the existing funding model is insufficient to address cost pressures, and new tools are required:
   I. supplying enough infrastructure to support rapid urban growth;
   II. adapting to climate change;
   III. coping with the growth of tourism; and
   IV. the accumulation of responsibilities placed on local government by central government.

I. New funding and financing tools for growth infrastructure

10. As the city’s employment hub, 186,000 jobs are located in Waitematā. The city centre alone accounts for one in seven jobs in Auckland. It is estimated that we have 100,000 commuters coming into the city centre each day, with approximately half of commuters using public transport, cycling or walking.

11. These factors put substantial pressure on the transport network, infrastructure and local community facilities e.g. there is limited provision of public amenities in the city centre to cater for the large number of daily workers and visitors and increasing numbers of rough sleepers. Community facilities, such as our libraries, parks, civic space and recreation facilities are used by people who travel into the city each day in addition to the 57,000 city centre residents.

12. The Waitematā Local Board notes its support for the new funding and financing tools for growth infrastructure to support Auckland’s rapid urban growth including, special purpose vehicles to relieve debt limit pressures, a new funding source from central government and a tax on vacant land. The last mechanism is considered an important option to disincentivise land banking practices and improve supply of land for housing and other urban development. This is also fairer than a move to rating on unimproved value rather than capital value because an unimproved rating system incentivises the building of mansions rather than affordable homes as the rates charges are the same under unimproved value.

13. We support value capture funding tools where property owners benefit from upzoning and infrastructure investment by Council. As previously submitted this practice is successfully applied in many US cities and enables major increases in land values that are generated by public activity, such as the building of infrastructure that directly and substantially benefits private landowners, to have part of these windfall gains returned to Councils. This could be achieved by directly levying this uplift in land values. At the core of the Waitematā Local Board area the city rail link is an investment in billions of public money whereby the properties and business along the route are suffering from construction, but those that survive will consequently gain millions in value uplift.
14. A similar case can be made for allowing local authorities to utilise tax increment funding. This would allow local authorities to borrow against the future income from capital value caused by infrastructure without this resulting in a credit downgrade.

15. The ability to apply development contributions should be extended to all Council provided social and physical infrastructure and accessed earlier in the development process.

II. Adapting to climate change
16. We support appropriate government funding for Councils that are particularly affected by climate change, including through the loss of coastal infrastructure, and/or have the least resources to respond effectively.
17. We also support developing funding tools that ensure an appropriate contribution from those bodies that pollute or exacerbate climate change.
18. A regional fuel tax and/or congestion charging are appropriate, in part for this reason.

III. Coping with the growth of tourism
19. Auckland is both New Zealand’s main international gateway (by air and sea), and an ever stronger standalone destination. For example, the city centre is expected to receive 127 cruise ship visits during the 2018/2019 season, an increase of 17 compared to the previous year.
20. The Waitematā Local Board supports charges on tourists, including applying an accommodation levy, such as a bed tax, and user pays for the infrastructure facilities that are heavily used by visitors and tourists, to ensure the cost of infrastructure demand is better shared. Government legislation in support of such charges is supported.
21. The new airport arrival tax is supported in this context and should be increased in future.
22. A share of GST related to the proportion of spending in that Council area from visitors and tourists is also justified.

IV. The accumulation of responsibilities place on local government by central government
23. We submit that where central government has delegated a function for which the cost of delivery or regulation is substantial then the government needs to make a substantial funding contribution accordingly.
Other matters

Equity and affordability

24. We agree with the Productivity Commission that rates based on property values are a reasonable and fair source of local government revenue. For most families their residential property is the main source of, and a fair indication of, that family’s wealth. Given that nearly all other taxes and levies in NZ are based on income and spending it is useful and fair to have a major source of public revenue based on wealth. These are the sort of considerations for why we reiterate our view that the current limitation on the level of the UAGC to 30 per cent of rates must be retained. This is to preserve rating as a tax on wealth and take into account ability to pay. We think it is important to retain Council’s ability to apply differentials to their rating system, particularly for businesses as rates are exempt from tax as a business expense.

25. We agree with the Productivity Commission’s views that a nationwide rates postponement scheme should be introduced for people who are asset rich but income poor. Otherwise Councils will be discouraged from providing essential infrastructure knowing some ratepayers could not afford their rates contribution.

Attachment A – Waitematā Local Board informal feedback on the Productivity Commission Issues Paper – Local Government Funding and Financing
ATTACHMENT A

Memorandum

15 February 2019

To: Chair, Finance and Performance Committee
   Desley Simpson, Deputy Chair, Finance and Performance Committee

Cc: Sandra Gordon, Governance Advisor
    All Waitematā Local Board members

Subject: Feedback on the Productivity Commission Issues Paper - Local Government Funding and Financing

From: Waitematā Local Board

Purpose

To provide Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on the Productivity Commission Issues Paper – Local Government Funding and Financing for consideration by the Finance and Performance Committee

Summary

- The levels of homelessness across the Auckland region continues to increase. Auckland Council plays an important role in responding to homelessness, which needs to be recognised and funded by government through interest free loans and, where a good business case has been submitted, by capital grants towards council and council-supported housing projects. The policy of only providing assistance where council has given majority shareholding to a community housing or private provider should cease.

- An increasing population brings diversity and interest to Waitematā, but also places pressure and demand on resources, infrastructure, community facilities and the environment.

- Central government, local residents, businesses and residents continue to have rising standards and new interests that need to be responded to. This inevitably leads to higher local government spending

- Climate change also brings two sources of extra costs. One is moving and rebuilding infrastructure along our coast, particularly the expensive coastal infrastructure in the central city. The second is encouraging and enabling a low carbon economy and society through a range of advisory and implementation measures.

- Appropriate environmental taxes need to be available as potential sources of income for local authorities

- Wide implementation of rates remission and postponement is essential so the asset rich but income poor do not suffer and rates levels can be set at the appropriate levels to maintain the quality of life in all communities.

- There is considerable scope for Value Capture to be introduced in New Zealand to enable the whole of the community to gain benefit from significant investments in infrastructure that provide a financial benefit to private landowners such as the development of Central Rail Link in Auckland City Centre.
Through the creation of jobs, providing advice, co-ordination and working with businesses to get through regulations and access markets, councils contribute towards achieving sustainable local economic development. Local government should be recompensed and rewarded for this from relevant central government funds such as a share of taxation or grants.

Central Auckland is one of many areas that provide infrastructure and events for tourists and visitors. Councils should be able to obtain a contribution from them through a bed tax, airport arrival levy and a share of GST.

**Issues and Options Paper Key Topics**

**Local government in New Zealand**

Homelessness is complex and results from multiple factors. However, a key driver and therefore consideration when reviewing the differing circumstances that are relevant for understanding local government funding and financing issues includes a substantial lack of social and affordable housing.

The levels of homelessness across the Auckland region increased by 26 percent between the 2006 and 2013 censuses. According to the 2013 census figures, 20,296 people were homeless in Auckland and 29 percent were aged between 15 and 24 years. Based on the average increase between censuses, and excluding all other factors, homelessness could stand at 23,409 in 2017, and 26,522 by 2021.

The findings of Ira Mate, Ira Tangata: Auckland’s Homeless Count show that on 17 September, at least 336 people were living without shelter and 2,874 people were in temporary accommodation. It is estimated that we have 800 people living without shelter based on a validation exercise.

Auckland Council plays an important role in responding to homelessness, including leading and coordinating development of a regional, cross-sectoral homelessness plan and funding a range of initiatives that support people who are experiencing homelessness. Future investment is required to support an operational response to homelessness in Auckland.

Auckland Council has provided advice and financial guarantees for social service agencies, community housing providers and iwi to assist and enable them to provide affordable and social housing.

Local Government in New Zealand has historically been a major provider of social and affordable housing, partly to prevent and combat homelessness. This has been particularly the case with providing pensioner housing for older residents with low income and assets. Some councils have also provided rental housing for low income workers, particularly their own staff.

The advantages of council provision of pensioner and other rental housing includes local knowledge of the needs and wants of individual tenants and of local communities; speed of provision, flexibility and innovation. It is important that such housing is close to vital health, community and social services, which is the case for the Waitemata Local Board area.

These vital roles should be funded by government by interest free loans and, where a good business case has been submitted, by capital grants towards council and council-supported housing projects. The policy of only providing assistance where council has given majority shareholding to a community housing or private provider should cease.

**How funding and financing currently works**

Exacerbator pays, polluter pays and appropriate environmental taxes need to be available as potential sources of income for local authorities.
Auckland’s current fuel tax is a very good example of this. It is readily and equitably charged on those who use the transport network and enables valuable improvements to be paid for at the time of provision. It ought to be a tool available for any other region that wants to use it. Congestion charging and road pricing should also be an available option once technically feasible.

Provision for financial contributions should be retained on the same basis as is also the use of weight-related and volumetric charges for waste and volumetric charges for water supply.

Borrowing is appropriate for building or restoring long-term assets as it enables time-appropriate provision and affordability and appropriately applies intergenerational equity for the users of the assets concerned.

**Pressure points**

Statistics New Zealand forecasts that the Waitematā Local Board 2017 population of 108,500 will hit 130,200 by 2033, a 21 per cent increase. The increasing population brings diversity and interest to Waitematā, but also places pressure and demand on resources, infrastructure, community facilities and the environment.

Growing ethnic diversity in the Waitematā Board area has, for example, generated a substantially increased demand for providing indoor sports and recreational facilities for people who prefer to take part in badminton, table tennis, squash and basketball more than for rugby and netball. The aging population has made it compelling that public facilities are fully accessible and safe for all age groups and abilities.

As the city’s employment hub, Waitematā provides 186,000 jobs. The city centre alone accounts for one in seven jobs in Auckland. It is estimated that we have 100,000 commuters coming into the city centre, with approximately half of these using public transport, cycling or walking.

Auckland is both New Zealand’s main international gateway (by air and sea), and an ever stronger standalone destination. For example, the city centre is expected to receive 127 cruise ship visits during the 2018/2019 season, an increase of 17 compared to the previous year.

These factors put substantial pressure on the transport network, infrastructure and local community facilities e.g. there is limited provision of public amenities in the city centre to cater for the large number of daily workers, visitors and rough sleepers.

Waitematā features many of Auckland’s earliest buildings and suburbs. This historic legacy gives our suburbs their unique character; one that varies across the local board area and creates distinctive urban villages such as Parnell, Ponsonby and Grey Lynn.

We know the value our community places on our public and private heritage assets. Good stewardship of heritage buildings, including finding long-term uses, will provide a viable and sustainable future for many of these prized assets but investment is required to achieve this.

The new national system for managing earthquake-prone buildings is now operative. Waitematā Local Board area has 50% of all earthquake prone buildings with 795 buildings already assessed as ‘earthquake prone’. Of these a number are valued public community facilities, which will require significant investment to meet the national standards over the next 10-30 years.

Central Auckland, like Queenstown, has a large and increasing number of tourists and visitors accessing accommodation, hospitality and Council services like community buildings, events, roads and public transport. These visitors do not make a contribution to the substantial costs that they incur.

As the Shand Committee recommended issues of fairness generate a strong case for new funding.
systems derived from tourists and visitors. These include a levy on temporary accommodation providers (Bed Tax); a larger airport arrival tax; and a fair share of GST.

The Waitematā Local Board also has to respond to rising standards expected from central government, local residents, businesses and residents. The higher minimum standards required by Government and Parliament have been well documented and we agree they are a major source of demands for higher local government spending. However, as with consumers of private goods and services, our people and businesses request and sometimes demand higher standards and variety. They want all weather playing surfaces, more variety and better quality play equipment, more exciting and engaging events, better equipment in recreation centres, safer roads and footpaths, more public transport and more responsive and supportive regulatory services. They also make it clear they want council to support economic development and jobs, stadia and health services in rural areas and community development in urban areas. Some of these resource intensive requests are related to increased diversity but others are natural expectations from the community.

Councils are needing to pay more as they contribute to the implementation of Treaty of Waitangi settlements.

Climate change also brings two sources of extra costs. One is moving and rebuilding infrastructure along our coast, particularly the expensive coastal infrastructure in the central city. The second is encouraging and enabling a low carbon economy and society through a range of advisory and implementation measures.

For those who are asset rich but income poor rates remission and, more importantly, rates postponement must be implemented more closely to universality for those who qualify. This is so that councils can charge the fair property value rates, which should continue to be the main source of Council revenue. Property values are closely related to the provision of local government infrastructure and services to those properties.

New Zealand taxes income relatively heavily, while having relatively low taxes on wealth, assets and property. This imbalance is a major contributor to wealth and income inequality and poverty in New Zealand. So wide implementation of rates remission and postponement is essential so the asset rich but income poor are not excessively disadvantaged and then rates levels can be set at the appropriate levels to maintain the quality of life in all communities. The Shand Report found these provisions at that time provided only 0.3 to 0.7% of total rates revenue. It should be at least 10 times higher.

Future Funding and Financing

As the Productivity Commission has already concluded in its 2015 and 2017 reports there is considerable scope for Value Capture to be introduced in New Zealand, as already applies in many United States cities. This would enable major increases in land values generated by public action, such as investments in infrastructure that directly benefit private landowners, to have part of the windfall gains returned to councils. This could be achieved by directly levying this uplift in land values. At the core of the Waitematā Local Board area the Central Rail Link is costing billions in public investment and all the businesses along the route will consequently gain billions in value uplift. The whole of the community should be enabled to gain benefit from that windfall.

A similar case can be made for allowing local authorities to utilize tax increment funding. This would enable a local authority to forecast the increase in revenue or in capital value that would result from its
infrastructure investment and to be able to borrow against that future income without this resulting in a credit downgrade.

There ought to be public financing to encourage, enable and respond effectively to councils that seek to provide appropriate infrastructure and sustainable economic development. Development contributions need to be extended to cover all useful infrastructure. It also needs to be recognised that such contributions are only received well after the capital costs are incurred. Councils can do a lot to contribute effectively to sustainable local economic development and job creation through advice, co-ordination and working with businesses to get through regulations and access markets and they should be recompensed and rewarded for this from relevant central government funds such as a share of taxation or grants.
Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback on Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount

File No.: CP2019/14898

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To enable the local board to receive the decision made under urgency to provide feedback on The Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount

Whakarāpopototanga matua / Executive summary
2. Central Government is looking to take action to protect our climate by reducing greenhouse gas emissions and aim to prioritise transport emissions reductions, which are the fastest growing source of emissions in New Zealand, accounting for nearly 20% of all CO2 greenhouse gases produced.

3. This includes significantly improving the fuel efficiency, and thereby reducing the emissions, of light vehicles as they account for nearly 70% of all transport emissions. Central Government seeks meaningful change to reduce vehicle emissions by introducing a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount, which would apply to all new and used light vehicles first registered in New Zealand after 2021.

4. The Ministry of Transport produced a discussion document designed to seek feedback on these two proposals to reduce emissions in the light vehicle fleet (cars, SUVs, utes, vans, light trucks).

5. Auckland Council provided a draft submission on the two proposals for local boards to provide feedback on by 8 August 2019.

6. The Auckland Council draft submission will be considered by the Environment and Community Committee on 13 August 2019. The final deadline for submissions to Central Government is 20 August 2019.

7. As the Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting was not until the 20 August 2019, the local board could not resolve on their feedback by the deadline. Therefore, the agreed urgent decision process was followed.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) receive the urgent decision dated 8 August 2019 as set out in Attachment A of this report.
Waitematā Local Board
20 August 2019

Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback on Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount

Page 260

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board feedback on The Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Heather Skinner - Local Board Advisor Waitematā Local Board</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
URGENT DECISION OF THE
Waitematā Local Board

Feedback on the Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount

AUTHORITY TO EXECUTE THIS URGENT DECISION

Urgent Decision Process WTM/2016/181

a) That the Waitematā Local Board:
   i) adopts the urgent decision process for matters that require a decision where it is not practical to call the full board together and meet the requirement of a quorum.
   ii) delegates authority to the Chair and Deputy Chair or any person acting in these roles to make an urgent decision on behalf of the local board.
   iii) requests that all urgent decisions be reported to the next ordinary meeting of the local board.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1. Central Government is looking to protect the climate by reducing greenhouse gas emissions and aims to prioritise transport emissions reductions, which are the fastest growing source of emissions in New Zealand, accounting for nearly 20% of all CO2 greenhouse gases produced. This includes significantly improving the fuel efficiency, and thereby reducing the emissions of light vehicles as they account for nearly 70% of all transport emissions.

2. Central Government is seeking meaningful change to reduce vehicle emissions by introducing a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount, which would apply to all new and used light vehicles first registered in New Zealand after 2021.

3. The Ministry of Transport has produced a discussion document designed to seek feedback on these two proposals to reduce emissions in the light vehicle fleet (cars, SUVs, utes, vans, light trucks).

4. Auckland Council have provided a draft submission on the two proposals for local boards to provide feedback on by 8 August 2019.

5. The Auckland Council draft submission will be considered by the Environment and Community Committee on 13 August 2019.
RECOMMENDATIONS

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) approve the feedback, as contained in Attachment A, Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount

REASON FOR URGENCY

6. The case for an urgent decision is made due to local board feedback being required by the 8 August 2019 for it to be incorporated into the council’s submission.
7. The Environment and Community Committee will consider the Auckland Council submission at its 13 August 2019 meeting.
8. The deadline for submissions to Central Government is 20 August 2019.
9. The Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting will be held on 20 August 2019 meaning the local board cannot wait until then to resolve on their feedback.
10. The urgent decision will be reported to the local board at their 20 August 2019 meeting.

GENERAL

11. The recommendation contained in this report falls within the local board’s delegated authority.

DECISION

AUTHORISED FOR RELEASE

Trina Thompson
Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor, Waitematā Local Board

SIGNATORIES

Pippe Coom
Chair, Waitematā Local Board

Shale Chambers
Deputy Chair, Waitematā Local Board

DATE: 8 August 2019
Memorandum

To: Environment and Community Committee
Cc: All Waitematā Local Board members
Subject: Moving light vehicle fleet to low-emissions: discussion paper on Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount
From: Waitematā Local Board

Purpose

1. To provide Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on the Ministry of Transport’s proposal to introduce a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount.

Context/Background

2. Central Government is looking to take action to protect our climate by reducing greenhouse gas emissions and aim to prioritise transport emissions reductions, which are the fastest growing source of emissions in New Zealand, accounting for nearly 20% of all CO2 greenhouse gases produced.

3. This includes significantly improving the fuel efficiency, and thereby reducing the emissions, of light vehicles as they account for nearly 70% of all transport emissions. Central Government seeks meaningful change to reduce vehicle emissions by introducing a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount, which would apply to all new and used light vehicles first registered in New Zealand after 2021.

4. The Ministry of Transport has produced a discussion document designed to seek feedback on these two proposals to reduce emissions in the light vehicle fleet (cars, SUVs, utes, vans, light trucks).

5. Auckland Council have provided a draft submission on the two proposals for local boards to provide feedback on by 8 August 2019.

6. The Auckland Council draft submission will be considered by the Environment and Community Committee on 13 August 2019.

7. The final deadline for submissions to Central Government is 20 August 2019.

Waitematā Local Board Feedback

The Waitematā Local Board:

a) notes the Waitematā Local Board Plan 2017 includes a commitment to the goal of setting a target of zero nett emissions by 2050.
b) notes that at the Waitematā Local Board 4 June 2019 business meeting, the local board passed a resolution urging the Governing Body to declare an ecological and climate emergency for the Auckland region to trigger faster action to reduce emissions and bring about zero nett emissions by 2050. The Environment and Community Committee unanimously voted to declare a climate emergency at its 11 June 2019 meeting.

c) notes that 43.6 per cent of Auckland’s emissions profile is made up of transport emissions and that urgent changes are required in the transport industry if there is to be a reduction in human-made emissions that are leading to climate change.

d) supports the intent of the proposed Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount set out in the discussion paper, which aims to improve average vehicle fuel efficiency and encourage the purchase of electric, hydrogen and zero emission vehicles.

e) supports the alignment of this proposal with the Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill

f) recommends that amendments be made to the proposals to bring forward the timelines as greater urgency is required to reduce nett emissions.

g) supports Auckland Council’s recommendation to set stronger future emissions targets beyond 2025.

h) acknowledges the vital importance of supporting public and private transitions from a carbon-based transport network to a zero emissions smart network.

i) recommends that the New Zealand Government establish a national grant scheme for local government that supports asset base renewals to fast track the transformation of all city transport activity to zero emissions.

j) recommends Auckland Council lead by example to achieve zero emissions by introducing strict targets on fuel efficiency on all council fleet, contractors and Council Controlled Organisations.

Clean Car Standard Proposal

k) recommends the progressive introduction of a Clean Car Standard for all vehicles on New Zealand roads.

l) recommends restricting all imported vehicles that do not comply with new emissions standards

m) supports Auckland Council’s concern that the average emissions target of 105 gCO2/km is not low enough to meet the region’s and New Zealand’s climate commitments.

n) supports Auckland Council’s concern that the exemption of people who import three or less vehicles from the clean car standard can lead to loopholes and any loopholes created by the exemption be removed.

o) supports a penalty scheme for non-compliance with the emissions target and for misreporting data.
p) supports Auckland Council’s recommendation that the banking mechanism proposed to give suppliers flexibility in meeting emission targets be limited to allow banking of emission savings possible within only one year following the year of over-achievement instead of the following three years.

q) supports the sanction of disqualification from being a registered motor vehicle dealer if a supplier deliberately attempts to evade meeting annual targets.

r) recommends a fuel efficiency standard being applied to operators of all modes of transport (land, air and sea) with appropriate incentives and penalties to transform all sectors to reducing carbon emissions.

Clean Car Discounts Proposal

s) supports the feebate scheme proposed for Clean Car Discounts.

t) supports Auckland Council’s recommendation that a sub-regional, Auckland-focused social impact assessment is undertaken as soon as possible to inform decision-making and to gain a better understanding of the impacts of these proposals on Auckland’s communities.

u) supports Auckland Council’s emphasise that low emission light vehicles are only part of the solution to a net zero future, and recommend a scheme that includes incentivisation for low emission buses and e-bikes.

v) supports Auckland Council’s recommendation to introduce a subsidy for zero emission buses, which would enable a closer price parity.
Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback on Ministry of Transport's proposal to introduce 
a Clean Car Standard and Clean Car Discount
Waitematā Local Board feedback on the proposed Auckland Council Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015.

File No.: CP2019/14365

Te take mō te pūrongo
Purpose of the report
1. To receive the Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on the proposed Auckland Council Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015.

Whakarāpopototanga matua
Executive summary
2. The Local Government Act 2002 requires council to review its bylaws to determine whether they are effective, efficient and still needed.
4. The purpose of the bylaw is to set rules to manage and minimise waste, protect public health and safety and manage litter and nuisance. The bylaw also provides operational controls for the separation, placement and collection of waste and disposal of waste to cleanfills and managed fills.
5. A Statement of Proposal containing a new Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 was adopted for public consultation. Amendments to the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Spaces Bylaw 2015 were also proposed to better align with the requirements of the proposed new bylaw.
6. At the 21 May 2019 business meeting, the Waitematā Local Board received the Waste Bylaw Statement of Proposal and delegated authority to the Environment and Infrastructure Portfolio lead and co-portfolio holder to provide feedback on behalf of the local board (resolution number WTM/2019/93).
7. The Hearings Panel received local board input at a session held on 26 July 2019. Waitematā Local Board’s feedback was presented to the panel by Member Richard Northey and Chair Pippa Coom.
8. The Hearing Panel will now deliberate and make recommendations to the Governing Body. A final decision on any new bylaw and amendments will be made on 22 August 2019.

Ngā tūtohunga
Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) receive the Waitematā Local Board feedback on the proposed Auckland Council Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015.
Waitematā Local Board feedback on the proposed Auckland Council Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015.

Ngā tāpirihanga
Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board feedback on the proposed Auckland Council Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015.</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina
Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Heather Skinner - Local Board Advisor Waitematā Local Board</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Memorandum

26 July 2019

To: Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 review Hearings Panel

Cc: All Waitematā Local Board members


From: Waitematā Local Board

Purpose

1. To provide Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on the proposed Auckland Council Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015.

Context/Background

2. The Local Government Act 2002 requires council to review its bylaws to determine whether they are effective, efficient and still needed.


4. The purpose of the bylaw is to set rules to manage and minimise waste, protect public health and safety and manage litter and nuisance. The bylaw also provides operational controls for the separation, placement and collection of waste and disposal of waste to cleanfills and managed fills.

5. A Statement of Proposal containing a new Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 was adopted for public consultation. Amendments to the Auckland Council Trading and Events in Public Spaces Bylaw 2015 were also proposed to better align with the requirements of the proposed new bylaw.

6. At the 21 May 2019 business meeting, the Waitematā Local Board received the Waste Bylaw Statement of Proposal and delegated authority to the Environment and Infrastructure Portfolio lead and co-portfolio holder to provide feedback on behalf of the local board (resolution number WTM/2019/03).
7. A panel will consider any feedback, deliberate and make recommendations to the Governing Body at a Hearing to be held on 26 July 2019.

8. A final decision on any new bylaw and amendments will be made on 22 August 2019.

Public feedback for the Waitematā Local Board area

A total of 49 submissions were received for the Waitematā Local Board area.

Of the submissions that identified as being from the Waitematā Local Board area:

i. 93% that submitted on Proposal 1 supported the proposal to clarify where and how a person must dispose of or discard material.

ii. 20% that submitted on Proposal 2 supported the proposal to clarify how a person may dispose of or discard material on premises they own or occupy. The main reason for this lack of support, and indeed opposition is related to the concern that the proposal undesirably restricts composting activities (clause 8 of the Bylaw)

iii. 91% that submitted on Proposal 3 supported the proposal to clarify that any owner and person responsible for a premises must provide adequate areas for storage and collection of disposed of or discarded material.

iv. 91% that submitted on Proposal 4 supported the proposal to clarify that council may make controls about management and minimisation of disposed of or discarded material.

v. 80% that submitted on Proposal 5 supported the proposal to clarify that waste collectors and operators of waste management facilities, resource recovery facilities and donation collection bins require an approval to operate from council.

vi. 80% that submitted on Proposal 6 supported the proposal to use the definition of cleanfill material as provided in the Auckland Unitary Plan and clarify the timeframe in which a person must apply for a new approval.

vii. 93% that submitted on Proposal 7 supported the proposal to clarify that a waste management and minimisation plan is required for trading, events and filming in council controlled public places.

viii. 93% that submitted on Proposal 8 to clarify that a waste management and minimisation plan is required for certain existing and planned multi-unit developments.

ix. 92% that submitted on Proposal 9 supported the proposal to minimise potential for shopping trolleys to become waste and introduce new rules for businesses which provide shopping trolleys for public use.

x. 83% that submitted on Proposal 10 supported the proposal to minimise potential for unaddressed mail to become waste and clarify rules for mail delivery.
xi. 100% that submitted on Proposal 11 supported the proposal to clarify that council may require certain information when evaluating an application for an approval, approve or decline the application and stipulate conditions for an approval.

xii. 100% that submitted on Proposal 12 supported the proposal to clarify that the duration of an approval is no more than five years, approval conditions may be reviewed, and transfer of approvals is not allowed.

xiii. 91% that submitted on Proposal 13 supported the proposal to clarify action council may take to enforce this Bylaw and statutory powers and penalties

xiv. 90% that submitted on Proposal 14 supported the proposal to clarify what happens to existing accords, controls, approvals, applications and inquiries under the Solid Waste Bylaw 2012.

Waitematā Local Board Feedback

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) notes its commitment to the goal of net zero greenhouse gas emissions by 2050 (or preferably earlier) and Zero Waste by 2040.

b) notes it has continuously funded a number of projects focused on minimising waste and helping communities to adopt low carbon lifestyles, including the Compost Food Waste Initiative and the Zero Waste Trial in parks.

c) notes it has a number of key advocacies related to waste management and minimisation. In the Local Board Agreement 2019/2020, the local board advocates to the Governing Body to:

- deliver the Central Community Recycling Centre supported by Waitematā, Albert-Eden and Pukekohe local boards at the site identified on the Great North Road site, which is a critical part of council’s adopted Waste Management and Minimisation Plan forward work programme
- support mechanisms to eliminate single use disposable plastic items
- support the introduction of a container deposit scheme to reduce litter, increase recycling streams and provide a source of community funds
- support the decentralisation of food waste collection to support individuals composting at home and local urban food farming
- advocate to central government for an increase in the waste levy to $140 per tonne.

d) supports the purpose of the Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019, which is to manage and minimise waste, protect the public from health and safety risk and nuisance and to manage the use of council-controlled public places.

e) proposes extending the purpose of the Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw 2019 to include “reduce the harm from greenhouse gas emissions produced by waste, which contribute to climate change”.

Page 3 of 5
f) supports the following proposals highlighted in the Statement of Proposal:

- require people to deposit and dispose of waste appropriately (for example, in a kerbside recycling bin, in a public waste bin or to a waste management facility)
- require waste collectors and operators of waste management facilities, resource recovery facilities and donation collection bins (exemptions apply) to obtain an approval (a licence) from council
- clarify that a waste management and minimisation plan is required for all trading, events and filming in council-controlled public places with the purpose of applying a consistent approach to the use of council-controlled public places and make the rules clearer and easier to understand. In relation to this proposal, the board supports zero waste being an easy, inexpensive and ‘business as usual’ option for event organisers to implement and for all council and council-controlled organisations funded events to be Zero Waste.
- clarify that a waste management and minimisation plan is required for any existing (exemptions apply) or planned multi-unit developments.
- clarify the rules to minimise the potential for shopping trolleys and unaddressed mail to come waste.

g) supports the proposed amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw 2015 to provide clearer alignment between the proposed new waste bylaw and the existing trading and events bylaw.

h) strongly opposes any potential restrictions in Clause 8 that would limit the ability of local communities to engage in composting practices

i) notes its concern about the following implications from Clause 8, stressing that the proposed clause seems to be contradictory to council’s own advocacy and activities undertaken by the Waste Solutions team:

- The clause as proposed would effectively limit or prevent the current practice of individuals composting food scraps and other organic material that is not generated in their own home. For example, Share Waste, a free initiative by The Compost Collective to connect people with composting hubs, would become illegal. The project links people who would like to compost food scraps or green scraps but don’t have this opportunity in an urban environment like the Waitematā area, with neighbours who have a composting bin or worm farms and are willing to receive the waste. Currently the Auckland Council website has a link to the Compost Collective website directing people to find out more about council funded composting. The Compost Collective was initiated through seed funding from the Auckland Council Waste Minimisation and Innovation Fund
- Composting should not be limited to food scraps and green waste and should contemplate other materials such as used coffee grounds from cafes, cardboard and
The Waitematā Local Board is concerned about its ability to deliver its Compost Food Initiative adopted in the 2019/2020 work programme, if Clause 8 is not modified.

j) recommends the following amendment to Clause 8 (1) A person may dispose of or discard waste by burial on premises that person occupies or owns if –
   • Amendment to clause (c) - the waste is food scraps or green waste from domestic activity on the same premises and the premises is in a rural area or in an urban area if the waste is fermented using the bokashi method first.

k) recommends the following addition to Clause 8 (1) A person may dispose of or discard waste by burial on premises that person occupies or owns if –
   • Additional clause (e) - allowed through other consented composting process.

l) recommends the following amendments to Clause 8 (2) A person may dispose of or discard material by composting if –
   • Amendment to clause (b) - the material is from activity on the same premises that it is composted on or the material is composted at a community garden as part of a community composting initiative.
Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To enable the local board to receive the decision made under urgency to provide feedback on Auckland Council’s submission to the government’s proposed Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities Bill.

Whakarāpopototanga matua / Executive summary
2. The Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill (the Bill) was introduced to Parliament on 31 May 2019. The Bill establishes Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities as a new Crown entity bringing together Housing New Zealand Corporation (HNZC), HLC (Homes. Land. Community.) and the KiwiBuild Unit of the Ministry for Housing and Urban Development.
3. The Bill is the first of two pieces of legislation applying to the new entity. A further Bill is expected in the third quarter of this year which will set out the powers that Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities can assume to enable it to undertake urban development in specified development areas.
4. At its 2 July 2019 meeting, the Planning Committee approved a draft submission to the Bill “subject to receiving input from local boards which will be appended to the submission”.
5. The final deadline to receive local board feedback to be appended to the Auckland Council submission was 9 July 2019.
6. As the Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting was not until the 16 July 2019, the local board could not resolve on their feedback by the deadline therefore, the agreed urgent decision process was followed.
7. Due to timing constraints with the closing of the agenda for the 16 July 2019 business meeting, this urgent decision report was scheduled to be received at the 20 August 2019 business meeting.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:
 a) receive the urgent decision dated 8 July 2019

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board's feedback to council's submission on Kainga Ora-Homes and Communities Bill</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Corina Claps - Senior Local Board Advisor - Waitematā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
URGENT DECISION OF THE
Waitematā Local Board
Submission on the Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities Bill

AUTHORITY TO EXECUTE THIS URGENT DECISION

Urgent Decision Process WTM/2016/181

a) That the Waitematā Local Board:

i) adopts the urgent decision process for matters that require a decision where it is not practical to call the full board together and meet the requirement of a quorum.

ii) delegates authority to the Chair and Deputy Chair or any person acting in these roles to make an urgent decision on behalf of the local board.

iii) requests that all urgent decisions be reported to the next ordinary meeting of the local board.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1. The Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill (the Bill) was introduced to Parliament on 31 May 2019. The Bill establishes Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities as a new Crown entity bringing together Housing New Zealand Corporation (HNZC), HLC (Homes. Land. Community,) and the KiwiBuild Unit of the Ministry for Housing and Urban Development.

2. At its 2 July 2019 meeting, the Planning Committee approved a draft submission to the Bill "subject to receiving input from local boards which will be appended to the submission".

3. The Bill is the first of two pieces of legislation applying to the new entity. A further Bill is expected in the third quarter of this year which will set out the powers that Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities can assume to enable it to undertake urban development in specified development areas.

RECOMMENDATIONS

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) approve the feedback, as contained in attachment A under section
Waitematā Local board feedback, on council’s submission to the government’s proposed Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill.

REASON FOR URGENCY

4. The case for an urgent decision is made due to local board feedback being required by the 9 July 2019 in order for it to be incorporated into the Auckland Council submission.

5. The Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting will be held on 16 July 2019 meaning the local board cannot wait until then to resolve their feedback.
6. Due to timing constraints, the urgent decision will be reported to the local board at its 20 August 2019 meeting.

DISCUSSION

7. The Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill (the Bill) was introduced into Parliament on 31 May 2019. The Bill establishes Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities as a new Crown entity by:
   - disestablishing HNZC and HLC
   - putting HNZC and HLC’s assets into Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities
   - repealing the Housing Corporation Act 1974
   - putting some of the functions and assets related to KiwiBuild that currently sit in the Ministry for Housing and Urban Development into Kāinga Ora - Homes and Communities
   - setting up a new board of 6-8 members.

8. Submissions on the Bill close on 11 July 2019. The intention is that it will come into force on 1 October 2019.

9. The Bill is the first of two pieces of legislation applying to the new entity. A further Bill is expected in the third quarter of this year which will set out the powers that Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities can assume to enable it to undertake urban development in specified development areas.

10. Auckland Council will have a keen interest in the powers of the urban development authority and how they can be applied. These are matters that will be dealt with in the second Bill which will be the subject of a separate submission later this year.

11. The objective of the new entity is to "contribute to sustainable, inclusive and thriving communities that:
   - provide people with good quality, affordable housing choices that meet diverse needs; and
   - support good access to jobs, amenities and services; and
   - otherwise sustain or enhance the overall economic, social, environmental and cultural wellbeing of current and future generations."

12. The entity has two key functions;
   - being a public housing landlord
   - leading and co-ordinating urban development.

13. A key aspect of the Bill is the introduction of a Government Policy Statement (GPS) on housing and urban development. This GPS will set out:
   - the Government’s overall direction and priorities for housing and urban development
   - how the Government expects Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities to manage its functions and operations to meet the Government’s directions and priorities
   - how the Government expects other agencies to support that direction and those priorities
   - the Government’s expectations relating to Māori interests, partnering with Māori and protections for Māori interests.
General

14. The recommendation contained in this report falls within the local board's delegated authority.

DECISION

AUTHORISED FOR RELEASE

[Signature]

Simon Tattersfield
Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor, Waitematā Local Board

SIGNATORIES

[Signature]

Pippe Coom
Chair, Waitematā Local Board

[Signature]

Richard Northey,
Elected member Waitematā Local Board

DATE: 8 July 2019
Memorandum 4 July 2019

To: Planning Committee
Cc: All Waitematā Local Board members
Subject: Feedback on The Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill

From: Waitematā Local Board

Purpose
1. To provide Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on council’s submission to The Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill for consideration by the Planning Committee.

Context/background
2. The Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill (the Bill) was introduced in to Parliament on 31 May 2019. The Bill establishes Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities as a new Crown entity bringing together Housing New Zealand Corporation (HNZC), HLC (Homes, Land, Community,) and the KiwiBuild Unit of the Ministry for Housing and Urban Development.
3. The Bill is the first of two pieces of legislation applying to the new entity. A further Bill is expected in the third quarter of this year which will set out the powers that Kāinga Ora-Homes and Communities can assume to enable it to undertake urban development in specified development areas.
4. Local boards have been informed of the opportunity to provide feedback that will be appended to the submission.
5. In April 2017, Waitematā Local Board provided formal input to the Urban Development Authorities Discussion. At the time the local board welcomed the government’s interest in urban renewal but opposed the Urban Development Authorities as proposed.

Waitematā Local Board feedback

The Waitematā Local Board is generally supportive of council’s submission to The Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities Bill and would like to propose changes and additions to the document as listed below.

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) suggests the following changes to the section Introduction:
   • slightly rephrase the third sentence of the second paragraph so that it reads: “We would be very happy to assist with the preparation of that Bill including the provisions relating to Māori interests because we believe that would be useful.”
- addition of three words in the second sentence of the third paragraph so that it reads: “This will avoid duplication and create efficiencies in collaboration, coordination, effectiveness and breadth of expertise.”
- addition of “health and safety” to the implications for local authorities and their CCOs, so that the second bullet point reads: “This could have significant health and safety, operational and financial implications for local authorities and their CCOs.”
- addition of the following sentence to the last bullet point: “If at all possible, the work and activities of Kāinga Ora should always be consistent with these plans and strategies.”
- addition of the words in italics to the second set of bullet points:
  - including operating principles that recognise the overlapping functions effectively
  - including explicit requirements for Ministers and Departments to engage with local
b) suggests the following changes to the section Interpretation (clause 5):
- extend the list of exclusions for the definition of “agencies” to include “community sector providers and other non-governmental organisations”
c) suggests the following changes to the section Membership of Board of Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities (clause 10)
- extend the list of actors whose perspectives need to be reflected in the board to include “community sector housing providers”
d) under the section Objective of Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities (clause 12), proposes that the purpose could be “to work with other agencies to provide, or ensure the provision of, good quality affordable healthy housing choices that meet diverse needs and well-functioning sustainable urban environments and economies.”
e) suggests the following changes to the section Functions of Kāinga Ora – Homes and Communities (clause 13):
- clarify that in the first paragraph when the submission says “how the new entity will work with them” it means “the sector”, meaning local government
- reinforce in the fourth paragraph that clause 13 “needs to” be strengthened by making a specific reference to ‘universal design’
- add in the fourth paragraph the words “universal access” so that the sentence ends with: “which will be essential to delivering a quality urban environment, universal access and inclusive communities”
- add in the fifth paragraph the word “values” so that it reads: “We support operating principle 13(1)(h) and suggest the addition of “including the aspirations and values reflected in any adopted spatial plan or development strategy that the community has been consulted on” after the words “urban development.”
f) suggests the following changes to the section Operating Principles (clause 14):
- add the word “interests” to the first sentence of the first paragraph so it reads: “The council supports 14(1)(a)-(f) and the broad focus on quality housing, tenant wellbeing, and community connections and interests.”
- in the second paragraph, add the word “sustainable” before ‘value for money’
- in the third paragraph, reinforce that communities should have access to “adequate and meaningful” employment opportunities
• emphasise council’s support to the inclusion of an additional operating principle in this section about universal design by adding the word “strongly”
• in the fifth paragraph include “public toilets” to the examples of community amenities and infrastructure
• in the last paragraph of this section, add one final comment so that the last sentence reads: “Auckland council is currently working with Housing New Zealand and HLC on a number of development projects and we would be concerned if this was interrupted because there was not a sufficiently clear reference to collaboration with local authorities.”

g) stresses the importance of ensuring consistency between the Government Policy Statement (GPS) and climate emergency planning an action. In line with this, we suggest the addition of the following text as a second paragraph to the section GPS on housing and urban development (clauses 22-29):

• “It should be a statutory requirement that the GPS is consistent with the obligations and policies of central and local governments with respect to the climate change emergency, including sea level rise.”

h) notes its concern that if council incurs in a substantial loss of revenue, its ability to provide and maintain adequate and appropriate infrastructure could be affected. Therefore the following change is proposed in section Other matters – Development Contributions: “Given that the new entity is expected to deliver a large proportion of the total new dwellings in Auckland in the future, this would represent a substantial loss of revenue for the council, consequently affecting its ability to provide and maintain adequate and appropriate infrastructure, if the new entity was found to share the Crown’s exemption from paying development contributions.”
Urgent Decision - Waitematā Local Board feedback to Auckland Council's submission on proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill

File No.: CP2019/13032

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To enable the local board to receive the decision made under urgency to provide feedback on Auckland Council’s submission to the government’s proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill.

Whakarāpopototanga matua / Executive summary
2. The proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill was developed in January 2018 as part of a global effort under the Paris Agreement to limit the global average temperature increase to 1.5° Celsius above pre-industrial levels.
3. Originally the Zero Carbon Bill was to be a separate piece of legislation, however it now will be introduced as an amendment to the current Climate Change Response Act 2002. The amendment is to ensure all key climate legislation is encompassed within one Act.
4. A draft submission from Auckland Council and CCOs was prepared with input across council departments, CCOs and discussions with mana whenua.
5. Local boards were invited to provide feedback by 10 July 2019, for it to be appended to the council’s submission.
6. The Environment and Community Committee endorsed the draft Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill at its meeting on 10 July 2019.
7. As the Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting was not until the 16 July 2019, the local board could not resolve on their feedback by the deadline therefore, the agreed urgent decision process was followed.
8. Due to timing constraints with the closing of the agenda for the 16 July 2019 business meeting, this urgent decision report was scheduled to be received at the 20 August 2019 business meeting.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:
a) receive the urgent decision dated 8 July 2019

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>Waitematā Local Board's feedback on council’s submission to the proposed Climate Change Response Amendment Bill</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

Authors | Corina Claps - Senior Local Board Advisor - Waitematā
URGENT DECISION OF THE
Waitematā Local Board
Submission on the proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill

AUTHORITY TO EXECUTE THIS URGENT DECISION

Urgent Decision Process WTM/2018/181

a) That the Waitematā Local Board:
   i) adopts the urgent decision process for matters that require a decision where it is not practical to call the full board together and meet the requirement of a quorum.
   ii) delegates authority to the Chair and Deputy Chair or any person acting in these roles to make an urgent decision on behalf of the local board.
   iii) requests that all urgent decisions be reported to the next ordinary meeting of the local board.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1. The proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill was developed in January 2018 as part of a global effort under the Paris Agreement to limit the global average temperature increase to 1.5°C Celsius above pre-industrial levels.

2. Originally the Zero Carbon Bill was to be a separate piece of legislation, however it now will be introduced as an amendment to the current Climate Change Response Act 2002. The amendment is to ensure all key climate legislation is encompassed within one Act.

3. A draft submission from Auckland Council and CCOs was prepared with input across council departments, CCOs and discussions with mana whenua.

4. Local boards were invited to provide input which will be appended to council’s submission.

RECOMMENDATIONS

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) approve the feedback, as contained in attachment A, on the government’s proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill.
REASON FOR URGENCY

5. The case for an urgent decision is made due to local board feedback being required by the 10 July 2019 in order for it to be incorporated into the council's submission.

6. The Environment and Community Committee will adopt the draft Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill submission at its 10 July 2019 meeting.

7. The Waitematā Local Board’s next scheduled business meeting will be held on 16 July 2019 meaning the local board cannot wait until then to resolve on their feedback.

8. The urgent decision will be reported to the local board during their 20 August 2019 meeting.

DISCUSSION

9. The purpose of the amendment bill is to provide a framework by which New Zealand can develop and implement clear climate change policies that contribute to the global effort under the Paris Agreement to limit the global average temperature increase to 1.5°C Celsius above pre-industrial levels.

10. The main components of the bill include a new 2050 target and emissions budgets, establishment of an independent Climate Change Commission and the inclusion of adaptation.

11. A draft submission from Auckland Council and CCOs was prepared with input across council departments, CCOs and discussions with mana whenua. Main points include:
   - Support the establishment of an independent body to oversee and advise on New Zealand's climate change commitments.
   - Advocate for a single target approach of net zero emissions (inclusive of all gases) by 2050. However, due to the current lack of scientific consensus on the correct warming impact of methane, the submission focusses on the split target approach.
   - Support the use of emissions budgets and plans, and the visibility and predictability that three consecutive five-year emissions budgets provide.
   - Support the inclusion of adaptation in the bill and the 6-year refresh of a national climate change risk assessment and adaptation plan to ensure the most significant risks are addressed in responsible timeframes.
   - Recommendation for stronger consideration of a just and equitable transition.
   - Recommendation for stronger inclusion of Te Ao Māori expertise and appropriate representation of Māori.
   - Advocate for a close partnership and support for local government.
   - Recommend funding support to be provided from a national level for local implementation of resilience measures.
   - Concerns raised about the ambiguity and limited consequences for failure to reach the 2050 targets and emissions budgets.

12. Climate change poses a significant issue for all of Auckland, and it will impact our most vulnerable. The recent declaration of a Climate Emergency highlights how critical it is to take urgent action to transition towards a net zero future. Taking action on climate change mitigation and adaptation offers a range of co-benefits to put us on a path toward a cleaner, fairer and more prosperous Auckland, while inaction raises serious risks to infrastructure, economy and health.
General

13. The recommendation contained in this report falls within the local board’s delegated authority.

DECISION

AUTHORISED FOR RELEASE

[Signature]

Simon Tattersfield
Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor, Waitematā Local Board

SIGNATORIES

[Signature]

Pippa Coom
Chair, Waitematā Local Board

[Signature]

Richard Northey,
Elected member Waitematā Local Board

DATE: 8 July 2019
Memorandum

8 July 2019

To: Penny Hulse, Environment and Community Committee
Cc: All Waitematā Local Board members
Subject: Feedback on the proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill
From: Waitematā Local Board

Purpose

1. To provide Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on the proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill for consideration by the Environment and Community Committee.

Context/background

2. The proposed Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill was developed in January 2018 as part of a global effort under the Paris Agreement to limit the global average temperature increase to 1.5°C above pre-industrial levels.

3. Originally the Zero Carbon Bill was to be a separate piece of legislation, however it now will be introduced as an amendment to the current Climate Change Response Act 2002. The amendment is to ensure all key climate legislation is encompassed within one Act.

4. Local boards were invited to provide input on Auckland Council’s submission on the Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Amendment Bill.

Waitematā Local Board feedback

That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) supports in principle the Climate Change Response (Zero Carbon) Bill which calls for zero emissions in most areas except agricultural methane emissions by 2050 as a mechanism to reduce global warming to 1.5 degrees Celsius, noting that if Aotearoa New Zealand is to reach the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change’s goal, the sooner that carbon neutrality is
reached the better and every reasonable and practicable effort should be made to achieve this by 2040 including a significantly lower than proposed level of agricultural emissions

b) notes that, in line with the bill, our Local Board Plan 2017 includes a commitment to the goal of setting a target of zero nett emissions by 2050

c) notes that we have continuously supported a number of emissions reduction projects since we adopted our Low Carbon Action Plan in 2015, including the Low Carbon Network, Low Carbon Lifestyles, Low Carbon Multi-unit Dwelling, Low Carbon Schools and the Compost Food Waste Initiative

d) notes that at our 4 June 2019 business meeting we passed a resolution urging the Governing Body to declare an ecological and climate emergency for the Auckland region to trigger faster action to reduce emissions and bring about zero nett emissions by 2050 to avoid catastrophic climate impacts

e) notes that we subsequently presented this request at the 11 June 2019 meeting of the Environment and Committee, who unanimously declared an environmental and climate emergency

f) notes our commitment to deliver a well-designed transport network that includes walking, cycling and quality public transport to improve health and air quality while reducing congestion and carbon emissions

g) notes that air quality and traffic congestion are particularly concerning in the Waitematā area, with transport and shipping as the major polluters in the city centre. Because both cargo and cruise ships burn bunker fuel, which produces particulates and gases that are particularly polluting, harmful to human health and impactful to climate change, including while berthed at the wharves in Central Auckland, Ports of Auckland and governmental measures should be taken to reduce or eliminate these actions while berthed at or near a port

h) requests Auckland Transport to effectively utilise the procurement process to ensure a shift to clean energy, affordable and efficient public transport and to ensure a just transition for transport workers who may be impacted by shifting to clean technology in their jobs

i) supports the role of an independent body to advise and monitor New Zealand’s climate change commitments, as proposed in the bill or preferably by 2040

j) supports the move for central government to invest and work alongside industries to reach the proposed targets and ensure that industry is not pushed offshore where emissions legislation may be weaker, resulting in loss of global climate change action

k) requests that an adequate level of funding support is provided from a national level for local government implementation of adaptation and resilience measures

l) supports a stronger enforcement ability within the bill to ensure the country transitions to a net zero future by 2050
Chair’s Report

File No.: CP2018/18687

Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report
1. To provide an update on projects, meetings and other initiatives relevant to the local board’s interests.
2. To provide a report back from the LGNZ Conference 2019.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation
That the Waitematā Local Board:
a) receive the Chair’s report for the period August 2019, including the report back from the LGNZ Conference 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A0</td>
<td>P. Coom - Waitematā Local Board Chair’s Report August 2019</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Pippa Coom - Chair, Waitematā Local Board</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chair’s monthly report

This is my penultimate monthly report after almost 9 years on the Waitematā Local Board.

It covers the highlights for the period 9 July until 12 August 2019. It is on the agenda for the local board business meeting held on 20 August 2019.

Achievements report

Every financial year the Waitematā Local Board produces a summary of achievements from the year. Thanks to Shale Chambers initiating an Achievements Report in 2011 we are the only local board to have published a report each year.

The Achievements Report contains summaries of projects and initiatives completed over the past year with the help and support of a wider range of community members, stakeholders, iwi partners, staff and volunteers. The 2018/19 report has been printed and is now online.

LGNZ conference report back

I attended the annual Local Government New Zealand (LGNZ) conference in Wellington 7-9 July as a LGNZ National Council member representing local boards and as one of four Auckland Council delegates to the AGM.

The 2019 conference theme "Riding the localism wave: Putting communities in charge" was focused on communities and empowering them to take charge of their social, economic, environmental and culture well-being through localism.

My conference report back at Attachment 1. Photo above: the Mayors and Chairs of New Zealand at the conference (I joined the photo on behalf of Auckland’s Local Board chairs).
High Street pedestrianisation

The Waitematā Local Board has been a long-time champion for the pedestrianisation of Queen Street. It is an advocacy position in the Local Board Plan 2017. It has also been prioritised in the Auckland City Centre Advisory Board supported work programme funded by the targeted rate.

On July 26 Mayor Goff announced that High Street is moving towards pedestrianisation with the start of "tactical urbanism" trials like pocket parks before construction gets underway. Photo right supporting the Mayor’s announcement with Councillors Darby and Crane, Heart of the City Board member.

As the Federal Street contra flow cycle lane has shown (marked out with planter boxes and paint) we know that tactical urbanism works. With the massive growth in users of e-bikes and e-scooters and ever congested footpaths that must be prioritised for feet we just need to get on with more trials and temporary bike lanes to create a safe network for everyone.

Plastic Free July

Plastic Free July heralded in some lasting changes that are going to have an impact including the Local Board supported ban on single use plastic bags.

One of my favs is making use of refill stations. Auckland Council has joined the ‘refillution’ with selected libraries and all pools and leisure centres registering as official ‘RefillNZ Stations’. In Waitemata we’ve also been working on installing drinking fountains at playgrounds and in piazzas, so it is never necessary to buy plastic water bottles. (The photo right is of drinking station at the Grey Lynn shops)

Transport updates

Parking on berms

As I reported last month, I spoke at the Local Government New Zealand AGM in support of a remit seeking a change to the berm parking rules.

The kerbed area of the footpath sitting between the pavement and road that is often planted with grass and trees is known as the “berm”. In the urban areas of Auckland it is a long standing custom that this area is not for parking vehicles except in emergencies.
It is recognised as an extension of the paved footpath where kids walk to school in bare feet on hot days. Parking on the berm can cause damage to underground utilities, damage to trees and creates safety issues for pedestrians and drivers.

Unfortunately, Auckland Transport has taken the position that berm parking is not an enforceable offence unless “no parking” signage is in place. This is nonsensical when applied to the hundreds of kilometres of urban roads with berms that need to be kept clear for pedestrians. Nor is it desirable or cost effective to install signage especially in areas where the berm is a long-accepted part of the footpath.

Until recently I have supported Auckland Transport’s recommendation that a rule change is required to remove the requirement for signage. However more recently I have reviewed the relevant provisions myself. I’ve come to the view that all the necessary rules are already in place and it is just a matter of Auckland Transport taking a firm position that berm parking is not acceptable where the berm is clearly part of the footpath. I am not proposing a sweeping berm parking “ban”. I would just like Auckland Transport to act on complaints, under the existing rules, where parking on the berm is happening to avoid on street parking charges, causing a safety issue or damaging public property (such as in the photo right).

**Return of a bus service to Williamson Ave**

Thanks to a campaign led by Sophia Frances Fiossetti and with the support of the Waitamata Local Board, Auckland Transport has agreed to re-instate a bus service on Williamson Ave from 18 August 2019.

I’ve organised an event with Sophia to celebrate the first No.134 bus from Henderson to be re-routed from Great North Road.

**Victoria Park underpass light installation**

Lighting is coming to the Victoria Park underpass. This is a project I’ve been working away at for some time so really delighted that we’ve finally secured the budget and the installation is underway. Once the Dalby St upgrade opens we’ll have a safe, smooth and attractive pathway from Ponsonby Road to Wynyard Quarter via Franklin Road.
Karangahape Road enhancement project

Work on the Karangahape Road Enhancements project got underway on 29 July. It coincided with the release of the annual cycling data showing that cycling numbers have grown by 8.9 per cent in a year. 3.77 million cycle movements were recorded for the year of July 2018 to June 2019, an increase of 8.9 per cent on the previous 12 months.

The winter weather has also not stopped people riding. Across 26 Auckland Transport cycle counters, 272,000 cycle movements were recorded in June 2019, an increase of 16.7 per cent when compared to June 2018.

School safety

In November 2018 I was invited by a Marist Primary mum on the school run to see just how tricky it was to walk, scoot and cycle to school because of the lack of a safe crossing. Thanks to her lobbying, support from the school and the Waitematā Local Board, Auckland Transport has installed a zebra crossing outside the school gate.

I was invited back again on the morning of 4 August to see what a difference the new crossing on Keelmaha Ave has made to ensuring a safe journey to school. (photo right)

Waitematā Freemans Bay Park

This community-led project is transforming the newly named Waitematā Freemans Bay park.

An enthusiastic group of locals showed up at a community planting day on 10 August organised by park designers Mark van Kaashoven and Tony Murrel and the Freemans Bay Residents Association.
Symonds St Cemetery

New paths in the Catholic section of the cemetery funded by the local board are almost complete including new steps to the Grafton Gully shared path.

Myers Park stage two - Mayoral Drive

At our July business meeting the Waitemata Local Board endorsed the preferred concept design for stage two of the Myers Park project – Mayoral Drive underpass, which maintains above ground storage of stormwater, to progress to the developed design phase.

The allocation of $1.85 million additional funding from the city centre targeted rate to the Myers Park stage two project was supported by the Auckland City Centre Advisory Board to enable this long-standing project to move forward. I’m delighted to see this project progress as the local board has been working to improve the underpass and open up the connection to Myers Park since before the Rugby World Cup 2011 when it was on the Fan Trail route.
Waitematā Local Events Development Fund allocation 2019/2020

The Franklin Road Christmas Lights, the Farmers Santa Parade and Auckland International Buskers Festival will all receive support from the local board to carry out their events this year. At the Local Board meeting in July we allocated a total of $73,813.09 for community events. Our Auckland article on Community events get support from Waitematā Local Board (Attachment 2). Another recent article covered other Local Board priorities for 19/20 Parks, arts and community prioritised by Waitematā Local Board (Attachment 3).

Meetings and workshops: 10 July until 13 August 2019

- Recess week for the local board 8 – 12 July
- Meeting with the new Director of the Auckland Art Gallery on 10 July
- Transport portfolio catch up on 10 July
- Auckland Transport quarterly briefing with local boards on 15 July
- Weekly chairs catch up held on 15, 22, 29 July and 5 and 12 August
- Meeting with mana whenua representatives regarding the draft Te Wai Orea Western Park Development Plan on 16 July
- Auckland Transport stakeholder meeting on 16 July
- Waitematā Local Board business meeting on 16 July
- Local Board members cluster workshop on 17 June
- Regular catch up with the GM, Newmarket Business Association on 18 July
- Introductory meeting with reporter Ripu Bhatia, Stuff Auckland Reporter on 19 July
- Meeting on 22 July to hear about the Blind Foundation / Generous Living Group proposal - Parnell Road
- Waitematā Local Board workshops on 23 and 30 July, 6 and 13 August
- Wynyard Quarter Traffic Management Association board meeting on 24 July
- Auckland City Centre Advisory Board workshop and meeting on 24 July
- Presented to the Hearings Panel on the Proposed Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw and amendments to the Trading and Events in Public Places Bylaw with Richard Northey on 26 July
- Trafinz Exec meeting on 31 July
- Meeting with Deborah James, Head of Diversity and Inclusion on 31 July to discuss speaking on behalf of Auckland Council at the International Women’s Caucus on 13 August
- Heads up meeting with ATEED representatives to discuss the significant filming coming to Auckland
- Catch up with Heart of the City CEO on 1 August
- Meeting with Isthmus group and the Chair of the Domain Committee regarding the Design Concept for Court of Honour, Auckland Domain
- Meeting with Auckland Transport’s Exec GM Risk and Assurance on 5 August to discuss AT’s berm parking position
- Meeting with RFA’s Head of Strategy to discuss the Aotea Square masterplan process
- City Rail Link Community Liaison Meeting on 5 August
- Meeting with 254 Ponsonby Park group and the project team on next steps for delivering the project on 7 August
- Ponsonby Business Association committee monthly meeting on 8 August
- Monthly catch up with city centre residents group representative on 8 August
- Chairs Forum on 12 August
- Local Board cluster “wha” catch up on 12 August
Events and functions: 10 July until 13 August 2019

- Spoke at the Low Carbon Network meeting at Sustainable Coastlines on 10 July
- Campaign for Better Transport AGM on 16 July
- Auckland Conversations: The Future of Auckland: Is density a dirty word? on 17 July
- Auckland International Film Festival opening night at the Civic on 18 July at the invitation of ATEED
- Interview on bFM on 19 July with local board member Adriana Christie
- Pollinator Path working bee on 20 July organised by Andrea Reid. Photo right of the group of awesome volunteers who had fun tidying up and adding a few more plants at Hakanoa Reserve, the first pathway of the Pollinator Paths (I popped by in support)
- Nga Puke on 24 July at the Herald Theatre at the invitation of Auckland Live and WAITI Productions
- Presentation to Parnell Rotary on 24 July Parnell Rotary on the new Parnell Plan and city transformations including a proposed boulevard for The Strand. It was a great opportunity to share the positive changes happening in central Auckland and lovely to see former Waitakere Youth Collective member Nurain Ayesha Janah there. (In the photo right with Colin and David from the club).
- Destination AKL - One Year On presentation organised by ATEED at Ellerslie Racecourse on 25 July
- Turama Festival in Albert Park on 28 July
- AKL Street Talks event on 30 July at the Central Library about that most contested of spaces - the humble footpath with a panel of perspectives.
- Urbanerds AUCKLAND meet up on 31 July
- Bike Auckland’s Bike Breakfast supported by the K’Rd Business Association on 1 August
- GLBA networking function on 1 August at the Surrey Hotel
• Celebration for Kaumatua Matt Maihi on 2 August at Ngāti Whātau Orākei Marae. It was very special to join the celebrations for Kaumatua Matt Maihi (photo right). He has dedicated years of service to his marae, iwi and community, Matt has been a big part of numerous Council significant events.
• New Zealand’s “Fittest Cities” launch by AIA Vitality on 5 August
• Art unveiling in the Historic South British Building lobby on 5 August
• Dawn karakia for the 8th anniversary of the opening of Wynyard Quarter on 10 August (photo on next page of the “originals” who were there on opening day 2011)
• Waiaurau Freemans Bay community planting on 10 August
• Joined the official party for the final Citizenship ceremony of this term at the Town Hall on 12 August (photo right)
• Spoke at Te Manukanuku o Hoturoa Marae at the first International Women’s Caucus meeting to be held in Auckland on Auckland Council’s commitment to the Convention on the Elimination of all forms of Discrimination against Women (CEDAW). In the photo with host Denise Ewe, President Pacific Women’s Watch and Head of Diversity & Inclusion Deborah James who put together my presentation (Attachment 4)
• Attended the Auckland Foundation’s first lunchtime seminar at the Northern Club with speakers John Hynds and Sir Stephen Tindall on 13 August
• Te Tuhi artists collective open evening at Parnell Station
• Opening night of PINAY at Basement Theatre (the Waitematā Local Board allocated a quick response grant to the production).
Photo: The "originals" who were there on opening day 2011 taken at the dawn karakia for the 8th anniversary of the opening of Wynyard Quarter on 10 August

Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>LGNZ conference report back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Our Auckland: Community events get support from Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Our Auckland: Parks, arts and community prioritised by Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Speech to the International Women’s Caucus Meeting on Auckland Council’s commitment to gender equity and to the Convention on the Elimination of Discrimination Against Women (CEDAW)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attachment 1

LGNZ conference 7 – 9 July, Wellington: Report back

I attended the annual Local Government New Zealand (LGNZ) conference in Wellington as a LGNZ National Council member representing local boards and as one of four Auckland Council delegates to the AGM. The 2019 conference theme “Riding the localism wave: Putting communities in charge” was focused on communities and empowering them to take charge of their social, economic, environmental and culture well-being through localism.

“Localism” is a global concept reshaping governments around the world, recognising that best outcomes are a result of local people making local decisions about the places they live.

The conference looked at best practice examples of localism, and how we apply the lessons from these to how communities, local government and central government engage with each other.

The conference is the only time each year that the entire local government sector gathers together. Approximately 600 delegates attended, such as mayors, chairs, local board members, chief executives, councillors and senior management from New Zealand’s councils, along with key players from the private sector, business, government and non-government agencies.

The conference is preceded by the LGNZ AGM where remits are voted on in a secret ballot that, once passed, become official policy to be actioned by LGNZ. This report covers my conference highlights drawing on the LGNZ conference media releases and conference programme.
Conference highlights

Local Government New Zealand AGM Remits

A record 21 remits were made official LGNZ policy at LGNZ’s Annual General Meeting on 7 July, from a total of 24 remits that were voted on.

The remits covered issues as varied as climate change, to fireworks, tourist accommodation, building defects, campgrounds, alcohol, road safety and the beauty industry. The large number is testament to LGNZ’s increasing effectiveness in advocating for positive change.

As one of four designated delegates of Auckland Council I spoke in support of seeking an amendment to clause 6.2 of the Land Transport (Road User) Rule 2004 to prohibit parking on urban berms without the need for signage.

Unfortunately, the remit failed with 71 per cent of the sector against partly due to confusion about the meaning of “berm” and the lack of relevance to rural councils.

(NB: Since the conference I have reviewed Auckland Transport’s position on berm parking and no longer agree that a rule change is actually required. The current Rule 6.14 makes it an offence to park on the berm where the berm is clearly part of the footpath zone)

Cr Cathy Casey spoke in support of a firework ban remit That LGNZ works with central government to introduce legislation to ban the sale of fireworks to the general public and end their private use. The remit was passed with 64 per cent support of the sector.

Cr Penny Hulse spoke in support of a climate change remit that called on the Government to include local government representation (as determined by local government) at all levels of policy development, technical risk and resilience assessment, and data acquisition on climate change response policies – with an emphasis on climate adaptation: policy; legal; planning; and financial compensation regimes. The remit was passed with 100 per cent support of the sector.

And Mayor Goff spoke in support of a remit calling on the Government to bring into line camera and officer detected red light running offences with other traffic offences that incur demerit points. The remit was passed with 87 per cent support of the sector.

A highlight for me of the AGM was the support for amendments to the Rules providing for Local Board representation on the National Council of LGNZ. This is something I have been working towards for some time. It was agreed that Auckland Council has three seats on National Council, to be held by:
• The Mayor of Auckland (or an alternate member of the Auckland Council governing body appointed by the Mayor);
• A member of the Auckland Council Governing Body; and
• A member of an Auckland Council local board.

I’ve been on National Council representing local boards since May 2018 in an ex officio capacity as an interim measure.

Another significant rule change that was supported provides that the Chair of Te Maruata is a member of National Council, with full voting rights. Te Maruata Roopu Whakahaere (Te Maruata) is a subcommittee of the National Council comprised of Maori elected members including local board members and Independent Maori Statutory Board members. Cr Bonita Bigham, Chair, Te Maruata spoke at the conference and introduced Dame Tariana’s address.

[Image: New Zealand’s Mayors and Chairs at the conference (I joined the photo on behalf of Local Board Chairs)]

Government’s address] Te kauwhata a te Kāwanatanga

Rt Hon Jacinda Ardern, Prime Minister

In the Government’s address the Prime Minister acknowledged the need for a true partnership between Local and Central government to deliver on the four wellbeings and the opportunities to co-design policy work.

In her speech the PM gave a shout out to her own Mt Albert Electorate local elected representatives, myself and Cr Cathy Casey, who she refers many local government related issues to from her office.
LGNZ President's address | Te kauwhau a te Tumuaki o LGNZ

Dave Cull, President, LGNZ

LGNZ president Dave Cull launched a roadmap to greater localism – “Reinvigorating Democracy: The case for localising power and decision making to councils and communities,” at the opening of the LGNZ conference. It is a plan to revitalise democracy by bringing power back to the people.

New Zealand has a highly centralised government structure that has been found to be a drag on productivity, raises transaction costs, widens inequality, and frustrates individuals and communities who want to improve their own well-being.

As President Cull highlighted in his speech New Zealand has a deep history of localism. Before Europeans arrived in New Zealand, power and authority resided with whanau, hapu and iwi, and it was only with colonisation that government at a national level became a reality.

Hon Dame Teriana Turia, former Leader of the Māori Party in her opening keynote address reminded everyone that “Localism is nothing new” but that it’s been somewhat lost along the way. And that we need to look forward and back as we travel in our waka and ride the localism waves.

The LGNZ’s localism discussion paper sets a proposed framework by which decision making can be handed back to communities in phased and gradual way that ensures greater local decision making is matched by improved capacity and capability of institutions, like councils, to meet these needs.

Developed and refined with the input of hundreds of local elected members, academics, business people, iwi, social sector groups, and civic minded individuals, it is being opened to the wider public for comment and input.

Mr Cull emphasised that greater localism posed a challenge for local government as well, as it required councils to also devolve decision making to communities.

LGNZ is calling for submissions on the discussion paper, which will help LGNZ promote localism during the build up to the 2020 Parliamentary elections. For more information on LGNZ’s decentralisation and localism project, go to www.localism.nz, or to make a submission, please send comments or feedback to LGNZ Principal Policy Advisor Dr Mike Reid at mike.reid@lgnz.co.nz by 15 December 2019.
Minister of Local Government address | Te kauwhau a te Minita mō te Kīwanatanga ā-Rohe

Hon Nanaia Mahuta, Minister of Local Government

Local Government is fortunate to have a very focused, respected and responsive Minister in Hon Nanaia Mahuta. She spoke directly to the theme of the conference and the importance of working together in partnership for the four well beings. She called for greater participation and for young people to have a strong voice.

I first just want to draw on the theme of your conference and a saying known to my people at home “When a reed stands alone it can be easily broken.” But when we are bound together its unbreakable it’s unwavering. When we think about localism and the opportunity to draw on the strengths and talents of our community it’s like the many reeds bound together in terms of trying to realise a greater aspiration for their people.

The Minister acknowledged the overarching challenges that we face. There are serious costs for new infrastructure and funding issues for Councils with very few funding sources other than rates. This is particularly an issue for high growth Councils like Auckland.

While it may feel this way at times, my message to you is that you are not facing these alone. Your challenges are our challenges. There is a proverb Nāu te rourou, nāku te rourou, ka ora ai te iwi – with your food basket and my food basket the people will thrive.

The Government asked the Productivity Commission to identify whether the existing funding and financing arrangements are suitable for enabling local authorities to meet current and future cost pressures. The Commission’s draft submission looking at the new tools councils need to help them deal with specific cost pressures is currently out for consultation until 29 August.

As indicated by the Minister, following the conference, the Government announced the establishment of a drinking water regulator, a move LGNZ has been calling for as a means of strengthening the government’s long-neglected stewardship role in the provision of safe drinking water.

Other speakers who addressed localism directly included:

Alex Walker, Mayor, Central Hawke’s Bay District Council who spoke about the ways her council had been giving people the power to make local decisions. She had an excellent presentation on successful consultation.

Phil O’Reilly, Managing Director, Iron Duke Partners looked at Localism with the question what’s your natural advantage? He raised concerns about elected members and officials lacking competence and that business has the perception councils are not doing the basics well. His advice about what can be done included:
• Build competence
• Reduce business differentials
• Funding reform
• City deals (But noted government unlikely to share a take of GST)
• Shared income – in a fundamentally NZ way

He concluded that councils can enhance communities by competing between themselves for innovation, investment and talent.

Climate change: a priority

The most powerful message of the conference came from Sophie Handford and Raven Maeder, School Strike 4 Climate NZ organisers in conversation with John Mauro, Chief Sustainability Officer, Auckland Council.

If we are not working to better the wellbeing of communities and the environment, why are you here? They told the conference that we have the future in our hands.

If you could boil it down to one thing, what we’re calling for is bold and visionary leadership from everyone in this room.

Local government needs to put mitigation and adaptation at the centre of all planning, development and council operations. We demand that local government put in place comprehensive adaptation plans to safeguard their communities against the effects of climate change. We need to begin building community and ecosystem resilience now.

Councils are on the front line in the battle against climate change, leading on both mitigation and adaptation measures. LGNZ established the mitigation focused ‘Local Government Leaders’ Climate Change Declaration’ in 2015 and a number of councils have called climate change emergencies to increase central government’s focus on establishing a national adaptation framework.

John Mauro, who has since resigned as Chief Sustainability officer, gave an excellent presentation on Auckland Council’s Climate Action Framework that is currently out for feedback until 6 September.
Conference dinner and LGNZ Excellence Awards

At the conference dinner long-serving councillor Penny Hulse was honoured by LGNZ for outstanding contribution to local government in a career spanning 27 years.

The Taivhenua Internal Affairs EXCELLENCE Award for Outstanding Contribution to Local Government was presented to the retiring Waitakere ward councillor at the LGNZ conference dinner.

I provided the following quote to the Local Government Magazine:

Penny is retiring from local government politics on a high after a distinguished 27-year career. She is a passionate advocate for the environment, sustainability and community wellbeing. Her achievements are considerable. In June she achieved another milestone by leading Auckland Council in declaring a climate emergency and a commitment that all council reports must include climate change impact statements. Penny is a fabulous mentor and role model particularly for women in politics. She is held in great esteem for her inclusive, empathetic leadership and strong relationship building across council and the community. She always looks to make a positive contribution and approaches everything with tireless energy and passion.

Conference costs

LGNZ funded one night’s accommodation, my flights and conference registration as a member of National Council.

Auckland Council covered one night’s accommodation and transfers.

Photo right: Lunchtime fun in the inaugural LGNZ Zone of Origin competition. I’m in the crocodile representing Zone One with John Carter, Mayor, Far North District Council, Sheryl Mai, Mayor Whangarei District Council and Jason Smith, Mayor, Kaipara District Council.

The photo at the beginning of this report is of the Auckland Council representatives cheering on the Zone One team!
Attachment 2

Community events get support from Waitematā Local Board

Published: 30 July 2019
Our Auckland

Franklin Road Christmas Lights.

The Franklin Road Christmas Lights, the Farmers Santa Parade and Auckland International Buskers Festival will all receive support from the local board to carry out their events this year.

Franklin Road Christmas Lights organiser Roscoe Thorby says this is the 27th year in a row that the well-loved local event will run.

“Our event is a get-together to thank the community and to celebrate the beginning of the Christmas season. It’s become an iconic event in Auckland; as well as locals we get people coming from all over Auckland,” he said.

Casey Morris, event manager for the Auckland International Buskers Festival, says the event creates a real buzz across Auckland.

The four-day festival will see international street performers entertaining crowds in the city centre over Auckland Anniversary weekend.
“The festival is the glue that holds together the separate Auckland Anniversary events. We see festival-goers stream from site to site, enthralled and delighted by the diverse talent. People love to see the comedy, mime, magic, contortion, acrobatics and the clowns,” she said.

The much-loved Farmers Santa Parade celebrates its 86th anniversary this year.

Pam Glaser, general manager of the Auckland Children’s Christmas Parade Trust which runs the parade, says the multi-generational event has provided Auckland families with years of cherished memories.

“The iconic event thrills and delights hundreds of thousands of families who line the city streets to watch this magical Christmas spectacle. With over 100,000 attendees annually, the Farmers Santa Parade has firmly cemented itself as a staple in Auckland’s event calendar,” she said.

Waitematā Local Board has a range of community grants available throughout the year. Round one of the Waitematā Local Grants is open for applications until 2 August 2019. Find out more on the local board’s webpage https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/grants-community-support-housing/grants/local-board-grants/waitemata-local-board-grants/Pages/grant-details.aspx?ItemID=40
Parks, arts and community prioritised by Waitematā Local Board

Published: 16 July 2019
Our Auckland

Heard Park in Parnell is one of a number of parks in the Waitematā Local Board area that will see improvements over 2019/20.

Parks, places, arts and community have been prioritised by Waitematā Local Board for 2019/20.

The local board has approved its work programme for the year ahead which builds on planning and work undertaken throughout 2018/19.

Chairperson Pippa Coom says there is a number of projects and initiatives in the pipeline, many of which have been planned over a long period.

Parks, places and playgrounds

Highlights for the year ahead include work starting on new changing rooms at Grey Lynn Park, new playgrounds at Home and Outhwaite Reserves, improvements to Parnell’s Heard Park and development of pathways at Basque Park.

The Hobson Bay walkway from Thomas Bloodworth Reserve to Pt Resolution will also be renewed to improve accessibility.
The local board’s One Local Initiative project, Ponsonby Park, remains the major capital project. Detailed designs will be developed and reviewed by the local board for a civic park space at 254 Ponsonby Road.

Māori naming of parks and places (Te Kete Rukuruku) is also a significant feature in the local board’s 2019/20 work programme. Te Kete Rukuruku will be undertaken in partnership with mana whenua to value and promote Auckland’s Māori identity and use of te reo Māori.

**Arts and community**

Ms Coom says the local board will increase funding in 2019/20 for their arts partnership with TAPAC in acknowledgement of their performing arts leadership. Funding will jump from $20,000 to $85,000 to reflect this.

In addition, a new initiative will see funding for a community arts space broker role, connecting artists and creatives with landlords of vacant spaces as well as supporting industry leaders offering mentorship programmes.

Community events continue to be a focus for the local board with $83,000 allocated to an Events Partnership Fund supporting popular local events like Festival Italiano, West End Cup and Grey Lynn Park Festival.

Larger scale signature events, Parnell Festival of Roses and Myers Park Medley, which draw crowds of thousands, will also be supported to run again.

Local community groups will continue to be funded through a contestable community grants process which fosters partnership and collaboration between the local board and its communities.

“Our local board looks forward to the year ahead and continuing to provide outcomes that benefit our communities,” said Ms Coom.
Attachment A

Speech to the International Women’s Caucus Meeting
Te Manukanu o Hoturoa Marae
13 August

Introduction

Tēnā koutou e ngā rau Rangatira mā e huihui mai nei
E te whenoe te tu nei
E nga Mana Whenua me nga Matāwaka,
E nga hau e wha
Tēnā koutou, tēnā koutou
Warm Pacific greetings to you all

- Acknowledgements to the organisers of this important hui today and to our hosts at this beautiful Marae – I understand this is the first time the International Women’s caucus meeting is being held in Tāmaki Makarau.

Congratulations Denise (In the photo with host Denise Ewe, President Pacific Women’s Watch and Head of Diversity & Inclusion Deborah James who put together my presentation)

- I’m really honoured to be here today on behalf of Auckland Council’s champion for CEDAW, Councillor Cathy Casey to talk about Auckland Council’s commitment to gender equity and some of the steps we are taking.

- I’m Chair of the Waitāmātā Local Board (covering Central Auckland) one of four Local Boards that passed resolutions last year in support of the Convention on the Elimination of all forms of Discrimination against Women [Papakura, Waitāmātā, Waitakere Ranges and Albert Eden.]

- Auckland Council has a strong commitment to diversity and inclusion. We adopted our D&I framework- the Inclusive Auckland framework- two years ago and we are working hard to achieve changes right across the board – both internally at Council, and externally in our engagement with and service to all Aucklanders

- Towards the end of last year, our Community Development and Safety Committee made a strong statement of commitment to the Convention on the Elimination of Discrimination Against Women (CEDAW).
Council endorsed the CEDAW goals as providing a strong framework to advance political and economic equality for women in NZ. We also endorsed a number of quite diverse Council work programs as helping to deliver on some of the key CEDAW goals.

The Committee Chair Councillor Cathy Casey, wrote to the Minister for Women Julie Anne Genter to express Council’s commitment to CEDAW and support for the Government’s work programs to achieve CEDAW goals and received a reply from the Minister at the end of last year.

We have just had our first monitoring report on these work programmes. This morning I am going to run through the highlights from that report under headings that cover a wide range of council activity and align with some of the key CEDAW goals.

Public and Political life (Article 7)

Auckland Council is proud to be the first Council in Aotearoa to commit to actively supporting the CEDAW goals.

The local government elections will be held in October 2019. At the 2016 elections 41 per cent of all candidates and 49 per cent of elected candidates were women¹. Currently 33 per cent of governing body members and 53 per cent of all local board members are women (of the local board chairs like me – half are women). This compares favourably with the rest of New Zealand’s local government entities.

While none of us can predict what will happen with this year’s election, Auckland Council’s election team is engaging with a wide range of community partners to reach Auckland’s diverse communities and to encourage all Aucklanders to consider standing for election and to vote.

Council is also committed to seeking diverse talented applicants for Council Controlled Organisations’ Board roles. In May 2019, Council signed an MOU with the Ministry of Pacific Peoples to support this initiative. We are also progressing discussions with the Ministry for Women and Office of Ethnic Communities on this work. We are gathering demographic data about the make-up of our CCO Boards as a baseline to track progress on this work.

Council partners with the State Services Commission and other government agencies to co-deliver the very successful Auckland Women in Public Sector Leadership summit – the third summit will be held in October 2019. We also partnered with the Police and Corrections to deliver the inaugural Government Rainbow Conference last year.

¹ The demographic characteristics of Auckland Council candidates and elected members, Auckland Council, Research and Evaluation Unit; 2017
Employment (in relation to Council staff) (Article 11)

- Women currently make up 60 per cent of Auckland Council’s total workforce and 30 per cent of our senior leaders. In the wider State Sector, women make up 60 per cent of the total workforce and 48 per cent of Tier 3 management and above.

- Council has set targets for diverse representation at tier three and above to help us improve on these numbers and meet our goal of matching Auckland’s diversity in our leadership. Council’s executive leadership team has approved changes to our recruitment process to help achieve these targets.

- Council has committed that all roles in Council will be able to be worked flexibly and we are trialling implementation pilots across the organization.

- In 2019, we are piloting He Ata - our Female Accelerated Leadership programme- to support emerging female executive leadership talent.

- We recently launched our Women’s Leadership Network to recognise and develop diverse talented women across the organisation. Council’s International Women’s day celebrations attract significant numbers of women staff each year.

- We are the first Council in New Zealand to receive both the YWCA Gender Tick accreditation and Rainbow Tick accreditation.

Economic and Social Benefits (Article 13)

Housing

- Auckland Council is a partner in the Housing First initiative, with government and other agencies. This initiative has placed 964 people (512 adult participants and 452 children) into permanent homes across the Auckland region since March 2017.

- 50per cent of all adults housed are women.

Jobs and skills programmes

- Council’s Southern Initiative (TSI) is a place-based initiative working with whānau, local social change agents, grassroots entrepreneurs, businesses, agencies and various organisations to explore, create and test new solutions to social and economic challenges. TSI’s priorities are shared prosperity, resilience and thriving children and whānau and empowering communities to unlock their own strengths and assets to design solutions to these challenges.

- The TSI is leading several work programmes which actively contribute to improving economic and social outcomes for women. TSI’s goal is to have 30 per cent participation of women in these initiatives.

- Some of these work programmes are:
  - A consortium of private training establishments delivering the Māori and Pasifika Trades Training programme in construction, infrastructure and allied trades, funded by the Tertiary Education Commission.
  - Social procurement initiatives to create new employment opportunities for South and West Aucklanders.
  - Employment Brokers and Coaches working directly with youth and adults to support people into quality employment.
• Auckland Tourism Events and Economic Development (ATEED) is a key partner in Auckland’s Jobs and Skills Hubs network. Employment and progression opportunities for women is a priority for jobs and skills hubs. Over 150 women have been placed into employment through the hubs since 2017. Māori (37 per cent) and Pasifika (36 per cent) peoples comprise a large share of people employed through the hubs.

**Engagement**

• Women are the majority of submitters to council consultations. The proportion of submissions from women in all major consultations has increased every year since 2016, when demographic information began being recorded.

• Submissions on our major strategies (Annual Budget, 10 Year Budget, Auckland Plan, Local Board Plans) are fairly balanced regarding the gender of submitters. Over the past three years, the proportion for women submitters has ranged between 46 per cent and 58 per cent for these consultations.

• However, consultations on other strategies and bylaws have attracted a greater proportion of women submitters e.g.
  - Notice of Motion to prohibit the sale of fireworks to the public (73 per cent)
  - Public Safety and Nuisance Bylaw (68 per cent)
  - Dog Policy and Bylaw (68 per cent)
  - Waste Management and Minimisation Bylaw (67 per cent)
  - Regional Pest Management Plan (67 per cent).

**Closing**

• This is just a snapshot of some of the work we have underway and we know there is more to do. If you would like to read the report that went to the Community Development and Safety Committee in July – it’s available on our website. Many thanks to Head of Diversity & Inclusion Deborah James and team at Council for this report and their own commitment to CEDAW.

• In closing I would like to thank everyone here for their efforts to deliver on the critical CEDAW goals and kaupapa and I would encourage other councils to get on board with this and help build more support for CEDAW across Aotearoa.
Board member reports

File No.: CP2018/18698

Whakarāpopototanga matua / Executive summary
1. An opportunity is provided for board members to update the board on projects/issues they have been involved with since the last meeting.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:
a) receive the written report from member R Northey and the tabled and verbal board member reports for August 2019.

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Member R Northey report for August 2019</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Richard Northey (ONZM) - Waitematā Local Board Member,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Board Member Richard Northey’s Report to the 20 August 2019 Waitematā Local Board Meeting

Events Portfolio Activities

31 July Meeting with Screen Auckland about the proposed filming of two major multi-year series in Auckland.

Events Applied for or Occurring During This Period

19 June–3 Sept Elemental/AKL and Restaurant Month lighting in trees on the edge of Aoea Square and in Lower Vulcan Lane.

16 July Filming for Puma Clothing Mentorship programme in the Downtown Carpark Building, Customs Street West.

16-20 July In association with the Sephora Queen Street Store opening on 20 July, there will be a display of giant letters spelling out SEPHORA on Lumsden Green, Western Park and Te Wero Island to raise brand awareness and publicise the Sephora store.

20 July Sephora Cosmetics Queen Street store opening outside 152-162 Queen Street. The requirement for an adequate waste management plan was included with operational details to be the responsibility of the applicants. All confetti used was biodegradable, apparently, but it was expected to be swept up rather than into the wastewater system.

24 July Filming of student short film SYM in Exchange Lane and at the spiral staircase at its end.

25-28 July ATEED Winter Festival with elements including interactive light pieces, performing groups and food stalls in Albert Park. I raised concerns about noise levels arising from nearby residents’ negative experiences of the Laneways Festival, and received adequate assurances.

1 August Filming stock footage by drone for ATEED Tourism over the Viaduct Harbour Basin and surrounds.

1 and 2 August AUT Winter Graduation Procession from Princes Street to the Town Hall. Such processions were subject to Police review on security grounds but are now going ahead.

2 and 31 August Musashi Challenge Workout Circuit promotion for Rock Radio in the Victoria Park passive area. The application has been withdrawn.
4 August Filming by drone for sci-fi Netflix TV series "Jazz Band" in Lower Albert Park, Kitchener Street, Hobson Street, St Matthew's, Federal Street, Wellesley Street West, Queen Street and Karangahape Road outside the Baptist Tabernacle. Filming for this series will be a frequent occurrence over the next four years.

5 August Filming for a web series of "I Date Rejects" in Albert Park.

5 August Filming for social media by time-lapse photography of the proposed installation of a Mercedes Neon Sign above existing posters in Douglas Street next to the corner of Ponsonby Road.

6-8 August Get2Go School Outdoor Activity Day run by Hillary Outdoors on the Arch Hill Mountain Bike Trail and on Western Springs Park.

12-13 August An artist will be painting a decoration on the hoarding outside the Central Library to promote Fashion Week and activities in the Library, in Lorne Street.

12 August – 2 Sept Lightboxes highlighting designers work for NZ Fashion Week on Bledisloe Lane and Freyberg Place.

15 August India’s 73rd Anniversary of Independence Day Celebration in Auckland Domain and Auckland Museum.

18 August Filming by TVNZ of their promotional commercial in the Lower Greys Avenue carpark.

19 August to 8 Sept, including a fashion walk in Freyberg Place on 29 August, installation of Fashion Week Lightboxes in Bledisloe Lane and Freyberg Place.

22 August Launch of the Steve Adams’ Sports Pathways Charity with a truck parked all day in the tram stop outside Bayley’s House, 30 Gaunt Street.

29 August Jimmy D Fashion Collection Launch at 448 and outside in Karangahape Road.

31 August University of Auckland Open Day occurring on Princes Street, Alfred Street and the City University Campus.

31 August AUT Live Open Day for prospective students involving closure of traffic for St Paul Street, Governor Fitzroy Place and AUT Campus.

31 August to 15 September The Walking in Trees Event in the Himalayan Cedar Tree above the flower clock in Albert Park. I have been assured of 24/7 security for this to protect both people and the tree.

5 September Red Carpet Walkway for opening night of the "School of Rock" musical on Queen Street outside the Civic Theatre.
8 and 9 September Filming of the Grand Finale of the TV Series The Block late at night at the Grand Millennium Hotel and in Mayoral Drive and Vincent Street.

15 September Battle of Britain Parade at the Cenotaph, Auckland Museum, Auckland Domain.

18 September Unitec Graduation Procession from Princes Street to the Town Hall.

19 September Suffrage Day commemoration, Te Ha o Hine Place.

21 September Ponsonby Market Day in Ponsonby Road and some of Jervois Road.


29 September Distinguished Gentleman’s Charity Ride on custom and vintage motorcycles from Fowlds Park through Bond Street, Great North Road, Surrey Crescent, Old Mill Road, Garnet Road, West End Road, Jervois Road, Ponsonby Road, Hopetoun Street, Beresford Square, Pitt Street, Karangahape Road, Grafton Bridge, Park Road, Carlton Gore Road, Auckland Domain, George Street, Parnell Road, The Strand and Tamaki Drive to Penrose. I have suggested it starting an hour later than 10am as it is the first morning of daylight saving.

3-6 October ATEED’s Auckland on Water Boat Show with marquees and pontoons in the Eastern Viaduct, Te Wero Island, Karanga Plaza, Eastern Hardstand and the Viaduct Harbour Basin.

5 October F45 Boot Camp in Albert Park.

6 October Pink Ribbon Ride, annual motorcycle charity ride to raise funds for breast cancer, occurring from the Mt Wellington Netball centre via The Strand, Grafton Road, Grafton Bridge, Karangahape Road, and Great North Road to Western Springs Stadium.

11-12 October ATEED’s Diwali Festival with marquees and music, with proposed sound levels for six hours louder than allowed in the unitary plan in Queen Street and Aotea Square. I have asked for more information about the extent and timing of the proposed louder noise levels and for ATEED to meet with the Central City Residents Group.

12-20 October Artweek in the City Centre - Changing Lanes installations by leading New Zealand artists in Durham Lane East and Upper Vulcan Lane.

12-20 October Lightboxes in Artweek of local artists’ work in Freyberg Place and Bledisloe Lane.

13 October Why Women Run Event in Grandstand Road and other streets in the Auckland Domain.
15 October Artweek Urban Village pop up creative and interactive arts installations in O’Connell Street and High Street Art Market with 10 gazebos and 20 tables on the road in High Street.

15 October StreetArtDeg free festival of art and food in Te Hä o Hine Place.

15 October High Street Art Market pop-up art market in High Street.

19 October Targeting Cancer Fun Run associated with the radiologists’ conference, in the Viaduct Basin.

20 October Festival Italiano in Kent, Teed and Osborne Streets, Newmarket. This has been extended a further 50 metres along Kent and Teed Streets to reduce crowding.

31 October Nature Valley Out of Auckland Event to get people out of their offices for recreation activities in the Victoria Park passive area.

1 November Ponsonby Primary School Fundraising Fireworks Event at Point Erin Park.

2 November Breast Cancer Foundation Pink Star Walk in the Domain.

17 November Parnell Festival of Roses in Dove Myer Robinson Reserve.

17 November Beca Kids Christmas Carnival in Western Springs Park Quarry

20 November Corporate Challenge 5km Fun Run on Auckland Domain Sportsfields.

23 November Walking Stars Cancer Society Fundraising Walk in the Auckland Domain.

24 November Farmers Santa Parade in Queen Street, Hobson Street and Mayoral Drive.

29 November -8 Dec Night Noodle Markets in Victoria Park. There was a major problem with mud and grass damage on site during, and for long time following, last time which would need measures to ensure contractors repair this more quickly in future.

30 November Grey Lynn Park Festival.

13-24 December SKYCITY’s 12 Days of Christmas. An ATEED sponsored event involving craft markets, roaming entertainment, ambient DJ Music, a pop-up bar, outside stage, marquee, and food stalls, including the closure of Federal Street in the shared space from 11am to midnight each day. This will need a thorough and good waste management plan, noise control, security and traffic management.

14 December Christmas in the Park, Auckland Domain.
31 December Britomart Block Party in Britomart area, particularly Galway Street. I have said there needs to be a co-ordinated transport and traffic management plan for all the central city New Year’s Eve events. ATEED have since reported to us that they have set up a working group including Auckland Police, Auckland Transport and Auckland Council for large-scale road closures and traffic management and laying on more of all forms of public transport including ferries.

2020

15 Jan to 16 Feb open-air cinemas in Western Springs Quarry.

21 Jan The 8 Continent Marathon and Half Marathon in the Auckland Domain, particularly Grandstand Road.

24-27 Jan Auckland International Buskers Festival in Karanga Plaza, Market Square, Princes Wharf and Queens Wharf.

27 Jan St. Jerome's Laneway Annual Music Festival in Albert Park, Alfred Street, Wellesley Street East and Princes Street, with packing in and packing out from 23 to 30 January. This will need careful consideration to minimise noise levels and the time up to which PA and packing in and out noise is permitted, given complaints from residents last time. I have requested our events staff talk well in advance with the Central City Residents Group about this event.

3 Feb ACG College Annual Families Picnic at the Domain Band Rotunda.

26 Feb Wotton and Kearney Annual Corporate Staff and Client Cricket Games and Day on Victoria Park Cricket Fields.

12-15 March A major Auckland Arts Festival event, Place Des Anges, in the Upper Sportsfields, Auckland Domain.

Arts and Culture Portfolio Activities

11 July opening of Dawn Ngaamo Exhibition at Gallery 2, Studio 1.

13 July Pot Luck lunch with staff, actors and volunteers at Basement Theatre.

18 July Opening of the International Film Festival and showing the film La Belle Epoque. Also, saw Peterloo, Capital in the 21st Century, Meeting Gorbachev, Mrs Lowry and Son, Portrait of a Lady on Fire, Non-Fiction, Working Woman, and Sorry We Missed You.

21 July World Premiere of New Zealand made documentary “Capital in the 21st Century” based on the work of, and including substantial interviews with, Thomas Picketty.

1 August Opening of Play “The Children” at the Herald Theatre, courtesy of Auckland Live.
8 August APO Concert “Reimagined” at the Town Hall. This included a compelling concerto for Pipa, an ancient Chinese stringed instrument played by hand, with the world’s leading Pipa player, Wu Man.

9 August Nightsong Theatre group event - at the Westpoint Performing Arts Centre. This was to be a celebration of their recent achievements and a prelude to their coming season of Mr Red Light at the Herald Theatre. However, the sudden unheralded withdrawal of most of their funding by Creative New Zealand cast a huge pall over the proceedings. We may need to give them more help with projects in the future.

10 August Tom Sainsbury Comedy Show at TAPAC.

**Community Portfolio Activities**

4 July Participated in Karangahape Road Business Association First Thursday’s Event. Photo below of me being framed by drag queens in St Kevin’s Arcade.

11, 12, 15, 16, 18, 19, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 29 30 and 31 July and 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 12 August Exercise Programme and Pilates workouts at the Pitt Street YMCA.

15 July Meeting of the Housing Issues Committee of Tenants Protection Association; and Meeting of the Auckland Central Labour Party.

17 July Interview a projected member of the Problem Gambling Foundation Board; take part in University of Auckland Society Executive Meeting.

18 July Karangahape Road Business Association meeting and meeting with the CRL Alliance re the Karangahape Road station construction.

25 July Participated in the Central City Network Meeting re the issue of Children in the Central City.

26 July Collect for Dementia Auckland outside the Richmond Road Countdown.


29 July Ponsonby Community Centre Board Meeting.

31 July Fabian Society Meeting about Why Wages are Depressed.

1 August Grey Lynn Business Association Event at the Surrey Hotel.

5 August City Centre Residents Group Meeting

8 August Tour of Auckland Community Housing Trust properties and meeting up with their tenants and then I Chaired the Auckland Community Housing Trust Board Meeting. One grandmother we met in Takanini was bearing up after the recent suicide of her 14-year-old granddaughter just two years after her grandson was blinded in a ferocious attack by his now gaolied father and with her daughter still meth addicted. Most of the other families we have housed have come from sleeping in the streets or from sleeping in cars. The failure of our Council also directly to build and provide housing for these vulnerable people in need, in spite of the regular advocacy for it by our Local Board, is a continuing source of shame for me.

11 August Grey Lynn Market. I was the first speaker at the Hiroshima / Nagasaki Commemoration Event. See the photo, and a copy of my speech, attached.

Waitematā Local Board General Activities

12 July Farewell to Corina and welcome back to Trina.

16 July Meeting with Mana Whenua Representatives on the Te Wai Orea / Western Springs Park Plan. Waitematā Local Board Monthly Meeting

17 July Meeting about the provision of safe outdoor recreation space for Kadimah School Pupils; Presentation by the Westfield Company on their Newmarket Development progress.

22 July Meeting with Generus Living Group on their proposal to develop, jointly with the Blind Institute, two five-story retirement villages on the Maunsell Road section of their holdings. They are proposing to clear the cherry trees on that boundary to enable deliveries and construction from that side of their development.

23 July Waitematā Local Board Workshop.

30 July Waitematā Local Board Workshop.

31 July Briefing by Screen Auckland re extensive upcoming filming for two major series.
2 August I wrote the bulk of the Waitematā Local Board’s feedback on the Productivity Commission’s draft report on Local Government Funding and Financing.

6 August Waitematā Local Board weekly workshop.

7 August Meeting re the 254 Ponsonby Plaza project.

9 August I worked on the Board submission on the Government’s proposed Clean Cars and Feebate Scheme.

**Auckland Council and National Activities**

11 July Participated in the AGM of Living Wage Aotearoa.

14 July A Function, hosted by Trevor Richards, to celebrate the meeting 50 years ago of 14 people including Trevor and myself, to establish the Halt All Racist Tours organisation.

15 July Auckland Transport quarterly briefing to local boards.

24 July Chaired PGFNZ Group Board Executive Meeting; took part in Auckland City Centre Advisory Board workshop and meeting.

26 July Present the Waitematā Local Board’s Submission on the proposed Waste Management Bylaw.

30 July Run Through for the Joint Governance Working Party Workshop and 31 July Workshop where we approved the policy and principles for local board participation in regional policy and bylaw development in which local boards will take part as part of Council’s governance structure rather than as stakeholders.

7 August Central Rail Link Open Day presentation, particularly regarding their Albert Street Works.

12 August Citizenship Ceremony at the Auckland Town Hall. This successfully had the usual air of real celebration and joy.
Local Government New Zealand Conference in Wellington 7-9 July

7 July After flying in to Wellington early that morning, I went to the Civil Defence Centre, supposedly at the Michael Fowler Centre, to join a guided tour of Wellington Laneways. No one was there apart from a big church congregation, none of whom knew anything about the tour and were sure it must have been moved elsewhere, as indeed, the Civil Defence Centre had been. After a search of the area, including of the closed new Civil Defence Centre, and initiating phone conferences with Conference organisers I went back to the Michael Fowler Centre. Our guide, the local ward councillor, and the other participants finally gathered there and we set off to view some of the 76 Wellington central city laneways. We concentrated on those around Cuba Street, some developed, some being developed and some to be developed and was suitably impressed although someone from Tauranga said some of ours in Waitematā were better. We also visited a boutique gin distillery, including a strong room with amazing safety protection, a peanut butter maker with infinite varieties selling from their windowsill, a brownie maker, and a chocolate manufacturer, all with delightful wares to sample.

The Local Government New Zealand Annual meeting followed. There was President David Cull’s Speech, an annual report and balance sheet and very well-deserved life memberships awarded to long-term Mayor and National Council Member John Forbes of Opotiki and our own Councillor Penny Hulse. Then there was a vast assortment of proposed remits from member Councils, with an admonition from the Chair to keep the speeches rare and brief. Speakers took this request too seriously and the speaking and voting finished well within the 3 hours allowed for the AGM. The remits were generally sensible and progressive and most passed comfortably. One of the few exceptions was the motion to enforce a ban on parking on street berms where the rural and provincial Council delegates could not understand what all the fuss was about.

Following that, the Conference was opened with a Powhiri. The Prime Minister graced the assembly with a positive speech. Dave Cull then spoke on behalf of LGNZ. Bravely seeking to promote localism at this time when government, business and most media commentators are generally advocating for more centralisation and nationwide uniformity. Bonita Bigham as Chair of Te Maruata, the Māori Elected Members group, addressed the same theme. Hon. Dame Taniana Turia made a thoughtful address on a Māori view of local government issues and of localism. Then there was the traditional Jonathan Salter welcome speech to the Simpson Grierson cocktail reception with its annual special cocktail, which had a devastating effect on some of those attending.

8 July Alex Walker, the Mayor of the Central Hawkes Bay District Council, spoke on their active community engagement and empowerment initiatives. Dr Lance O’Sullivan spoke on advancing more digitally enabled effective local health initiatives and said that Local Councils should supersede and take over from District Health Boards. Phil O’Reilly, formerly of Business New Zealand and now of Iron Duke Partners, addressed
incentivising communities to take a more proactive approach to local development. The only Auckland Council speaker at the Conference, John Mauro, our Chief Sustainability Officer, spoke on Council action on climate change. Sophie Handford (who is now standing for the Kapiti District Council) and Raven Maerder, who are School Strike 4 Climate organisers, and James Parker, CEO of Hawkes Bay Regional Council, joined him on a panel. Jacqui Dean MP spoke for the National Party on some well thought out ideas on a relatively minor aspect of local government. Pippa Coom was one of our Zone 1’s four participants in a "crocodile bike" race where our Zone 1 team was soundly trounced by the Waikato-Bay of Plenty Region.

After lunch, three backbench MPs: Paul Eagle, Chloe Swarbrick and Lawrence Yule, who had previously been active in local government, spoke of what they were endeavouring to achieve concerning local government issues in Parliament. I remain bewildered by why Lawrence, as the Mayor of a major Council, should have sought out such obscurity in Parliament instead. Nanaia Mahuta made some soothing and positive noises in her speech as Local Government Minister but clearly controversial changes to water regulation and provision were still going to be pursued. Justin Lester, Mayor of Wellington, made a good speech on housing provision and issues but Adrian Orr of the Reserve Bank was largely obscure on the same topic.

That afternoon we split up and visited various parts of Wellington to immerse ourselves in one of each of the four wellbeings. I chose social well-being, a workshop that addressed housing issues. We heard clear expositions on the problems of providing affordable housing in New Zealand from Andrew McKenzie of Housing New Zealand, Andrew Crisp of the Housing and Urban Development Authority and Stephanie McIntyre of the Downtown Ministry. The small-scale and inefficiency of most of the house building industry was put forward as a major issue causing inadequate affordable housing provision, together with ten years of ineffective policies. We then visited the Downtown Ministry to see their practical work with homeless people first-hand.

The Conference Dinner and Awards Ceremony was again a grand and enjoyable occasion. Auckland was not a finalist for any of the awards and the winners were Wellington (twice), Palmerston North, Taranaki Region and Gisborne. After dinner, like last year I again joined in the dancing to mid- and late-20th Century tunes.

9 July I heard a very interesting panel on freshwater issues, made up of Doug Leeder, the Chair of the LGNZ Regional Councils Group, Terry Copeland, the CEO of Federated Farmers and Geoff Simmons, the Former CE of the My River programme. My wife Robyn and I then took the opportunity for a morning tea catch up with our grandson Benji who is commencing a B Sc in Psychology at Victoria University. Then I returned for an encouraging meeting of the Mayors’ Task Force on Jobs, which now has government contracts for some skill development roles for young people, before flying back to Auckland.
Richard Northey's Speech at Hiroshima / Nagasaki Commemoration, Pioneer Women’s Hall, 11 August 2019

Greetings, Kia Orana and Konnichiwa

Tena kotou, tēna kotou, tēna kotou katoa

My name is Richard Northey and I am a Patron of the Peace Foundation and an elected member of the Waitematā Local Board.

We are here to make sure that that the memory of the death and devastation caused by the nuclear bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki on the 6th and 9th August 1945 is not forgotten, and to stop it ever happening again.

Last week, in the letters to the Herald, someone again used our climate change emergency to advocate building nuclear power stations here. However, nuclear power remains very dangerous, not only because Chernobyl and Fukushima have shown it to be unsafe but also because its waste products remain radioactive for hundreds of thousands of years. More particularly, the source of its fuel remains integrally connected with, and is essentially a by-product of, nuclear weapons production. I am concerned that the ANZ and some of our other Australian-owned banks and KiwiSaver products are helping to finance companies that produce both nuclear power and nuclear weapons.

Nuclear weapons need to be eliminated from this Earth because they continue to threaten the survival of human civilisation, they can indiscriminately kill millions of people at a time, and the radiation they produce creates a lingering agonising death from radiation sickness and cancers for many survivors and horribly mutated children for generation after generation after generation.

In 1964 the French were forced out of Algeria by the independence movement and announced they would move their nuclear testing programme to French Polynesia. I, and others in the Auckland Youth Campaign for Nuclear Disarmament, immediately organised the world’s first demonstration against this. American and British nuclear testing in the South Pacific had already killed people at Bikini and Rongelap and fishermen on the Lucky Dragon. Now our region was to continue to be an integral part of the development of the nuclear war machine. Protests continued, we sent boats into the testing zone from 1972, protested by land and Peace Squadron against nuclear warship visits from 1976, we declared our local schools and Councils to be nuclear free, we passed the Nuclear Free Zone Act in 1987, and finally the French stopped testing in 1995, only 31 years after our first protest.
The campaign to eliminate nuclear weapons will require continuing vigilance and persistence. Many of us here will not live to see its successful conclusion. New Zealand’s ratification of the Nuclear Weapons Ban Treaty was welcome, but it must be followed up on.

New Zealand’s reputation for courageous independent action for nuclear disarmament needs to be used to campaign for a denuclearised Korean peninsula and creating nuclear weapon free zones in North East Asia and the Middle East; the dearming of all those nuclear weapons currently on a dangerous hair trigger alert; a ban on killer robots and on the weaponisation of satellites and outer space; support for the Swedish Government’s proposed “stepping stones” to nuclear disarmament; and a sustained campaign for a Nuclear Weapons Convention which would see the nuclear weapons states steadily destroying all their nuclear weapons under international supervision.

All of us can play a part in creating a nuclear weapon free, peaceful and just world - in our families, our communities and our Councils. One of the first decisions of the new Auckland Council was to declare Auckland a Peace City. Mayor Phil Goff, who has sent his apologies today, has acted in that spirit both before and after March 15th by opposing hate speech and promoting diversity, tolerance and empathy. The Waitematā Local Board has acted to make the Peace City a reality locally. We resolved to implement a policy to ban all events that promote, market or sell weapons of war from any of our facilities. We have formally advocated to the Council’s Governing Body that it, and its CCOs, adopt the same policy universally.

As with our Local Board’s resolution to declare, and take action on, the climate change emergency, none of us can leave these issues just to others who seem more powerful than us. We must claim and assert the power over our own future and take what action we can to achieve a peaceful, just, diverse and empathetic society locally and world-wide – that is the responsibility we must all share.
Waitematā Local Board  
20 August 2019

Governance Forward Work Calendar

File No.: CP2018/18724

Whakarāpopototanga matua / Executive summary
1. Attached is a copy of the governance forward work calendar for the Waitematā Local Board which is a schedule of items that will come before the board at business meetings.

Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s
That the Waitematā Local Board:

a) receive the governance forward work calendar August 2019 attached to the agenda.

Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A0</td>
<td>Governance Forward Work Calendar at August 2019</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ngā kaihaina / Signatories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Liz Clemm - Democracy Advisor - Waitematā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Governance Forward Work Calendar August 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Governance Role</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Local decision making</td>
<td>Waitematā Local and Multiboard Grants Round One 2019/2020</td>
<td>Define local board position and feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Input into regional decision making</td>
<td>Animal Management Bylaw Review</td>
<td>Define local board position and feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Input into regional decision making</td>
<td>Open Space Network Plan</td>
<td>Provide direction on preferred approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Input into regional decision making</td>
<td>Play Network Gap Analysis</td>
<td>Provide direction on preferred approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>Auckland Transport September Report</td>
<td>Receive report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>Regional Facilities Auckland Quarter 4 Report 2018/2019</td>
<td>Receive report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Local decision making</td>
<td>Ferry Basin Open Space Naming</td>
<td>Provide direction on preferred approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September 2019</td>
<td>Local decision making</td>
<td>Last business meeting report (delegations for election period)</td>
<td>Formal adoption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 October 2019</td>
<td>Election period and new term</td>
<td>2019-2022 term Waitematā Local Board Members’ Inauguration</td>
<td>Inaugurate Waitematā Local Board Members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November 2019</td>
<td>Local decision making</td>
<td>First business meeting report</td>
<td>Formal adoption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 2019</td>
<td>City Centre Masterplan Refresh</td>
<td>Input to regional decision-making</td>
<td>Define local board position and feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 2019</td>
<td>Input into regional decision making</td>
<td>Auckland Climate Action Plan (previously Low Carbon Auckland</td>
<td>Define local board position and feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item 29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachment A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting direction, priorities, budget</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal adoption</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signage Bylaw 2015</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

February 2020
**Waitematā Local Board Workshop Records**

**File No.:** CP2018/18713

---

**Te take mō te pūrongo / Purpose of the report**

1. The purpose of this report is to present the Waitematā Local Board workshop records to the board. Attached are copies of the proceeding records taken from the workshops held on:
   - 23 July 2019
   - 30 July 2019
   - 6 August 2019
   - 13 August 2019

**Ngā tūtohunga / Recommendation/s**

That the Waitematā Local Board:

- receive the workshop proceeding records for the meetings held on 23 July 2019, 30 July 2019, 6 August 2019 and 13 August 2019.

**Ngā tāpirihanga / Attachments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>20190723 Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>20190730 Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>20190806 Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>20190813 Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ngā kaihaina / Signatories**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Liz Clemm - Democracy Advisor - Waitematā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorisers</td>
<td>Trina Thompson - Relationship Manager/Senior Advisor Waitematā Local Board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record

Workshop record of the Waitematā Local Board held in the Waitematā Local Board Office, 52 Swanson Street, Auckland Central on **Tuesday 23 July 2019**, commencing at 9.40am.

**PRESENT**

**Chair:** Pippa Coom  
**Members:** Adriana Avendano Christie  
Richard Northey  
Denise Roche  
Vernon Tava  
Rob Thomas  
**Apologies:** Deputy Chair Shale Chambers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workshop Item</th>
<th>Governance role</th>
<th>Summary of Discussions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Auckland Transport, Regional Facilities**  
Auckland, MOTAT – Western Springs Precinct Parking | Oversight and monitoring | To discuss the Western Springs Parking Management Plan and integrated approach across the precinct. |
| **Parks, Sport and Recreation** – Play Space Network Analysis | Local initiatives and specific decisions | To present the final draft of the Waitematā play network assessment for approval. |
| **Parks, Sport and Recreation** – He Urunga Activation Planning | Local initiatives and specific decisions | To present He Urunga (pilot activation planning tool) developed for the Waitematā Local Board area and the proposed ‘Waitematā Activation of parks, places and open spaces’ for summer 2020. |
| **Parks, Sport and Recreation** – Urban Ngāhere Local Implementation | Local initiatives and specific decisions | To discuss and to seek feedback on the style, the content and the details of the planting action plan and update on progress with the urban forest work in-house by council, the tree database work and the “Tree Trails” project. |
### Attachment A

**Item 30**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workshop Item</th>
<th>Governance role</th>
<th>Summary of Discussions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auckland Design Office</strong> – City Centre Masterplan Refresh</td>
<td>Local initiatives and specific decisions</td>
<td>To provide an update on the consultation and engagement plan for refreshing the Auckland City Centre Masterplan (CCMP) and seek local board feedback on the consultation material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arts, Community and Events</strong> – monthly update and 2019 Parnell Festival of Roses</td>
<td>Local initiatives and specific decisions</td>
<td>To provide an update on the events since previous workshop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To discuss the Event Delivery Plan for the 2019 Parnell Festival of Roses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Service, Strategy and Integration – Parnell Service Provision</strong></td>
<td>Setting direction, priorities and budgets</td>
<td>To present findings from the Parnell service provision assessment and seek feedback on options to be developed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record**

Workshop record of the Waitematā Local Board held in the Waitematā Local Board Office, 52 Swanson Street, Auckland Central on **Tuesday 30 July 2019**, commencing at 9.40am.

**PRESENT**

Chair: Pippa Coom  
Members: Richard Northey  
Denise Roche  
Vernon Tava  
Rob Thomas  
Apologies: Deputy Chair Shale Chambers  
Adriana Avendaño Christie

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workshop Item</th>
<th>Governance role</th>
<th>Summary of Discussions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local Board Services</strong> – quarter four report</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>To provide an opportunity to discuss the 2018/2019 work programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ponsonby Community Centre</strong> – annual update</td>
<td>Community engagement</td>
<td>To report on Ponsonby Community Centre outcomes for the 2018/2019 year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plans and Places monitoring progress</strong> – Karangahape Road, Newton and Eden Terrace and Ponsonby Road Plans</td>
<td>Keeping informed</td>
<td>To discuss progress on actions from the Karangahape Road, Newton and Eden Terrace, Ponsonby and Parnell plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parnell Plan</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parks, Sports and Recreation</strong> – Te Kete Rukuruku</td>
<td>Setting direction, priorities, budgets</td>
<td>To agree the scope of tranche 1 of the naming project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Community Facilities – SMART Procurement reporting</strong></td>
<td>Setting direction, priorities, budgets</td>
<td>To report on the year two outcome of the SMART (Social) Procurement Contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workshop Item</td>
<td>Governance role</td>
<td>Summary of Discussions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Facilities – Operational Management and Maintenance</td>
<td>Keeping informed</td>
<td>To present the monthly operational and maintenance update for July 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Facilities – Project Delivery and Work Programme</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>To present project delivery and Community Facilities work programme updates for July 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dashboard Report June 2019</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Heard Park</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey Lynn Community Centre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record

Workshop record of the Waitematā Local Board held in the Waitematā Local Board Office, 52 Swanson Street, Auckland Central on **Tuesday 06 August 2019**, commencing at 9.45am.

**PRESENT**
Chair: Pippa Coom  
Deputy Chair: Shale Chambers  
Members: Adriana Avendaño Christie, Richard Northey  
Apologies: Denise Roche, Vernon Tava, Rob Thomas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workshop Item</th>
<th>Governance role</th>
<th>Summary of Discussions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parks, Sport and Recreation</strong> – Bird feeding at Western Springs Lakeside Park</td>
<td>Local initiatives and specific decisions</td>
<td>To discuss removing the option of bird feeding platforms from the Western Springs Lakeside Te Wai Ōrea draft development plan prior to formal approval in August 2019.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auckland Transport</strong> – Newmarket Precinct</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>To discuss a proposed traffic management response to the forecasted additional visitor numbers to Westfield Shopping Centre in Broadway, Newmarket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auckland Transport</strong> – Newmarket and Remuera Residential Parking Zones</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>To present a proposal for a residential parking zone for some streets in Remuera and Newmarket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auckland Transport</strong> – Local Board Transport Capital Fund and the Community Safety Fund</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>To discuss allocation of the Local Board Transport Capital Fund and the Community Safety Fund.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workshop Item</td>
<td>Governance role</td>
<td>Summary of Discussions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development Programme Office</td>
<td>Setting direction, priorities and budgets</td>
<td>To provide an update on the Access for Everyone concept pilot – High Street being undertaken as part of the development of the Access for Everyone concept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Access for Everyone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Victoria Street Linear Park</td>
<td></td>
<td>To provide an update on recent progress with the Victoria Street Linear Park business case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Public Amenity Project</td>
<td></td>
<td>To provide an update on the progress of the city centre public amenity project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Rail Link Ltd – two-monthly update</td>
<td>Engagement</td>
<td>To provide an update on the City Rail Link project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arts, Community and Events – Arts Space Coordinator</td>
<td>Setting direction, priorities and budgets</td>
<td>To provide an update on the Arts Space Coordinator role for 2019/2020.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arts, Community and Events – Digital Art Wall</td>
<td>Setting direction, priorities and budgets</td>
<td>To provide an update on site selection for the Digital Art Wall in Auckland Central.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Waitematā Local Board Workshop Record

Workshop record of the Waitematā Local Board held in the Waitematā Local Board Office, 52 Swanson Street, Auckland Central on Tuesday 13 August 2019, commencing at 12.45pm.

PRESENT
Chair: Pippa Coom (from 2pm)
Deputy Chair: Shale Chambers
Members: Adriana Avendaño Christie, Richard Northey, Denise Roche, Vernon Tava, Rob Thomas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workshop Item</th>
<th>Governance role</th>
<th>Summary of Discussions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arts, Community and Events</td>
<td>Setting direction, priorities and budgets</td>
<td>To provide an update on the events since previous workshop held 23 July 2019 and to review permitted or facilitated events in Waitematā in August 2019 to October 2019. To discuss how a community empowerment approach can be applied to community events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Events monthly update</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Community empowerment approach to community events</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auckland Tourism Events and Economic Development</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>To report back on the outcomes of the ElementalAKL Festival.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– ElementalAKL Festival Report</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Facilities Auckland</td>
<td>Oversight and monitoring</td>
<td>To inform the local board about work to date on proposals for future enhancements to Aotea Square and its immediate surrounds and to enable members to have early input to the plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Aotea Precinct Plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workshop Item</td>
<td>Governance role</td>
<td>Summary of Discussions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community and Social Policy</td>
<td>Local initiatives and specific decisions</td>
<td>To finalise the content of the Waitematā Open Space Network Plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Open Space Network Plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exclusion of the Public: Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987

That the Waitematā Local Board
a) exclude the public from the following part(s) of the proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution follows.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter</th>
<th>Particular interest(s) protected (where applicable)</th>
<th>Ground(s) under section 48(1) for the passing of this resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
<td>s7(2)(j) - The withholding of the information is necessary to prevent the disclosure or use of official information for improper gain or improper advantage. In particular, the report contains.</td>
<td>s48(1)(a) The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter</th>
<th>Particular interest(s) protected (where applicable)</th>
<th>Ground(s) under section 48(1) for the passing of this resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
<td>s7(2)(h) - The withholding of the information is necessary to enable the local authority to carry out, without prejudice or disadvantage, commercial activities. In particular, the report contains detailed financial adjustments, assumptions and judgements that have impact on the financial results of the Auckland Council group as at 30 June 2019 that require final Audit New Zealand sign-off and release to the New Zealand Stock Exchange.</td>
<td>s48(1)(a) The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## ATTACHMENTS

| Item 8.1 | Attachment A | Presentation to Judges Bay Beach - Sand Top-up | Page 351 |
Judges Bay Beach – Sand Top-up and other maintenance matters

Luke Niue
Mike Blackburn

Parnell Community Committee Inc
Key matters

- Sand top-up. Link in with Mission Bay, Kohi and St Helliers
- Better storm water control to reduce sand loss
- Consented dredging – 140m² per year???
- Mangrove removal
- Sea Wall repair
- Find lost Pontoon